Manual No.'21 • PAC-T-385

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES

TECHNICAL MANUAL

MICRO INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

DUCT CONNECTED-HIGH STATIC PRESSURE TYPE

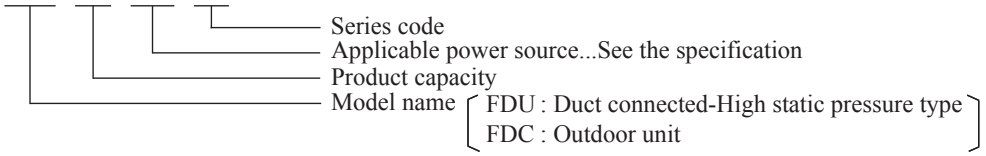
FDU200VSAVH
250VSAVH

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.

CONTENTS

■ **How to read the model name**

Example: FDU 200 VSA VH



1. SPECIFICATIONS

Item			Model	FDU200VSAVH	
				Indoor unit **FDU200VH**	Outdoor unit **FDC200VSA**
Power source				3 Phase 380-415V 50Hz / 380V 60Hz	
Operation data	Nominal cooling capacity (range)		kW	19.0 [5.2(Min.) - 22.4(Max.)]	
	Nominal heating capacity (range)		kW	22.4 [3.3(Min.) - 25.0(Max.)]	
	Power consumption	Cooling	kW	6.15	
		Heating		6.03	
	Max power consumption			12.0	
	Running current	Cooling	A	9.6 / 10.0	
		Heating		9.5 / 9.9	
	Inrush current, max current			5 , 25	
	Power factor	Cooling	%	92 / 93	
		Heating		92 / 93	
	EER	Cooling		3.09	
	COP	Heating		3.71	
	Sound power level	Cooling	dB(A)	78	72
		Heating			74
	Sound pressure level	Cooling		P-Hi : 52 Hi : 50 Me : 47 Lo : 45	58
		Heating		P-Hi : 52 Hi : 50 Me : 47 Lo : 44	59
	Silent mode sound pressure level			—	52
Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth)			mm	379 × 1600 × 893	1300 × 970 × 370
Exterior appearance (Munsell color)				—	Stucco white (4.2Y7.5/1.1) near equivalent
Net weight			kg	88	115
Compressor type & Q'ty				—	RMT5134MDE3 (Twin rotary type)×1
Compressor motor (Starting method)			kW	—	Direct line start
Refrigerant oil (Amount, type)			L	—	0.9(compressor) + 0.6(unit) (M-MA68)
Refrigerant (Type, amount, pre-charge length)			kg	R410A 5.6 in outdoor unit (Incl. the amount for the piping of 30m)	
Heat exchanger				Louver fin & inner grooved tubing	M shape fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control				Electronic expansion valve	
Fan type & Q'ty				Centrifugal fan ×3	Propeller fan ×2
Fan motor (Starting method)			W	130 + 350 < Direct line start >	86 ×2 < Direct line start >
Air flow		Cooling	m^3/min	P-Hi : 80 Hi : 72 Me : 64 Lo : 56	135
		Heating			
Available external static pressure			Pa	Standard : 72 Max : 200	—
Outside air intake				Possible	—
Air filter, Quality / Quantity				Procure locally	—
Shock & vibration absorber				Rubber sleeve(for fan motor)	Rubber sleeve(for compressor)
Electric heater			W	—	20 (Crank case heater)
Operation control	Remote control			(Option) Wired : RC-EX3A,RC-E5,RCH-E3 Wireless : RCN-KIT4-E2	
	Room temperature control			Thermostat by electronics	
	Operation display			—	
Safety equipments				Overload protection for fan motor Frost protection thermostat Internal thermostat for fan motor Abnormal discharge temperature protection	
Installation data	Refrigerant piping size (O.D.)	Liquid line	mm	I/U ϕ 9.52 (3/8")	Pipe ϕ 9.52 (3/8")x0.8 or ϕ 12.7 (1/2")x0.8 O/U ϕ 9.52 (3/8")
		Gas line		ϕ 25.4 (1")	Pipe ϕ 22.22 (7/8")x1.0 or ϕ 25.4 (1")x1.0 or ϕ 28.58 (1 1/8")x1.0 O/U ϕ 22.22 (7/8")
	Connecting method			Brazing	Liquid : Flare / Gas : Brazing
	Attached length of piping		m	—	—
	Insulation for piping			Necessary (both Liquid & Gas lines)	
	Refrigerant line (one way) length		m	Max.70m(Liquid piping: ϕ 12.7, Gas piping: ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58), Max.40m(Liquid piping: ϕ 9.52), Max.35m(Gas piping: ϕ 22.22)	
	Vertical height diff. between O/U and I/U		m	Max.30m (Outdoor unit is higher)	Max.15m (Outdoor unit is lower)
	Drain hose			Hose connectable VP25(I.D.25, O.D.32)	Hole size ϕ 20 x 3 pcs.
Drain pump, max lift height			mm	—	—
Recommended breaker size			A	—	
L.R.A. (Locked rotor ampere)			A	5	
Interconnecting wires	Size x Core number			ϕ 1.6mm × 3 cores + earth cable / Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
IP number				IPX0	IP24
Standard accessories				Mounting kit	Connecting pipe , Edging
Option parts				Motion sensor : LB-KIT2	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions. The pipe length is 7.5m.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	External static pressure of indoor unit	Standards
Cooling	27˚C	19˚C	35˚C	24˚C	72Pa	ISO5151-T1
Heating	20˚C	—	7˚C	6˚C		

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.
(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber. During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.
(4) Select the breaker size according to the own national standard.
(5) When wireless remote control is used, fan is 3 speed setting (Hi-Me-Lo) only.
(6) The operation data indicate when the air-conditioner is operated at 400V 50Hz or 380V 60Hz.
(7) The factory E.S.P. setting is set within the range of 80 - 150 Pa.If SW8-4 is turned to "ON", E.S.P. setting range can be changed to 10 - 200 Pa.(For RC-EX3A,RC-EXZ3A and RC-E5 only)
(8) Use 1/2H pipes having a 1.0mm or thicker wall for ϕ19.05 or larger pipes.

PJG000Z575 F

Item			Model	FDU250VSAVH	
				Indoor unit **FDU250VH**	Outdoor unit **FDC250VSA**
Power source				3 Phase 380-415V 50Hz / 380V 60Hz	
Operation data	Nominal cooling capacity (range)		kW	24.0 [6.9(Min.) - 28.0(Max.)]	
	Nominal heating capacity (range)		kW	27.0 [5.5(Min.) - 31.5(Max.)]	
	Power consumption	Cooling	kW	7.98	
		Heating		7.20	
	Max power consumption			13.7	
	Running current	Cooling	A	12.2 / 12.8	
		Heating		11.3 / 12.0	
	Inrush current, max current			5 , 27	
	Power factor	Cooling	%	94	
		Heating		92	
	EER	Cooling		3.01	
	COP	Heating		3.75	
	Sound power level	Cooling	dB(A)	78	73
		Heating			75
	Sound pressure level	Cooling		P-Hi : 52 Hi : 50 Me : 47 Lo : 45	59
		Heating		P-Hi : 52 Hi : 50 Me : 47 Lo : 44	62
	Silent mode sound pressure level			—	54
Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth)			mm	379 × 1600 × 893	1505 × 970 × 370
Exterior appearance (Munsell color)				—	Stucco white (4.2Y7.5/1.1) near equivalent
Net weight			kg	88	143
Compressor type & Q'ty				—	GTC5150NC40KF(-T) (Scroll type)×1
Compressor motor (Starting method)			kW	—	Direct line start
Refrigerant oil (Amount, type)			L	—	1.45 (M-MA32R)
Refrigerant (Type, amount, pre-charge length)			kg	R410A 7.2 in outdoor unit (Incl. the amount for the piping of 30m)	
Heat exchanger				Louver fin & inner grooved tubing	M shape fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control				Electronic expansion valve	
Fan type & Q'ty				Centrifugal fan ×3	Propeller fan ×2
Fan motor (Starting method)			W	130 + 350 < Direct line start >	86 ×2 < Direct line start >
Air flow		Cooling	m^3/min	P-Hi : 80 Hi : 72 Me : 64 Lo : 56	143
		Heating			151
Available external static pressure			Pa	Standard : 72 Max : 200	—
Outside air intake				Possible	—
Air filter, Quality / Quantity				Procure locally	—
Shock & vibration absorber				Rubber sleeve(for fan motor)	Rubber sleeve(for compressor)
Electric heater			W	—	20 (Crank case heater)
Operation control	Remote control			(Option) Wired : RC-EX3A,RC-E5,RCH-E3 Wireless : RCN-KIT4-E2	
	Room temperature control			Thermostat by electronics	
	Operation display			—	
Safety equipments				Overload protection for fan motor Frost protection thermostat Internal thermostat for fan motor Abnormal discharge temperature protection	
Installation data	Refrigerant piping size (O.D.)	Liquid line	mm	I/U ϕ 12.7 (1/2") Pipe ϕ 12.7 (1/2")x0.8 O/U ϕ 12.7 (1/2")	
		Gas line		ϕ 25.4 (1") Pipe ϕ 22.22 (7/8")x1.0 or ϕ 25.4 (1")x1.0 or ϕ 28.58 (1 1/8")x1.0 O/U ϕ 22.22 (7/8")	
	Connecting method			Brazing	Liquid : Flare / Gas : Brazing
	Attached length of piping		m	—	—
	Insulation for piping			Necessary (both Liquid & Gas lines)	
	Refrigerant line (one way) length		m	Max.70m(Gas piping: ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58), Max.35m(Gas piping: ϕ 22.22)	
	Vertical height diff. between O/U and I/U		m	Max.30m (Outdoor unit is higher)	Max.15m (Outdoor unit is lower)
	Drain hose			Hose connectable VP25(I.D.25, O.D.32)	Hole size ϕ 20 x 3 pcs.
Drain pump, max lift height			mm	—	—
Recommended breaker size			A	—	
L.R.A. (Locked rotor ampere)			A	5	
Interconnecting wires	Size x Core number			ϕ 1.6mm × 3 cores + earth cable / Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
IP number				IPX0	IP24
Standard accessories				Mounting kit	Connecting pipe , Edging
Option parts				Motion sensor : LB-KIT2	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions. The pipe length is 7.5m.

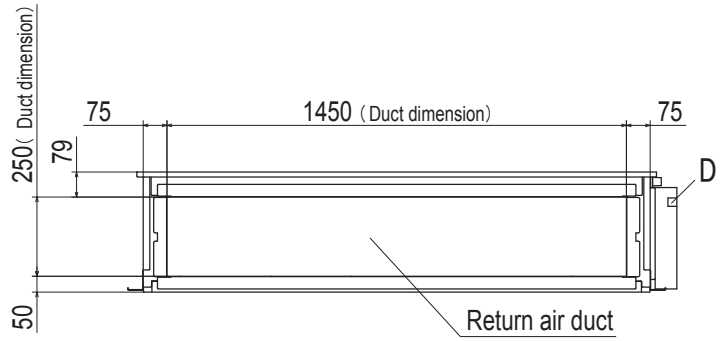
Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	External static pressure of indoor unit	Standards
Cooling	27°C	19°C	35°C	24°C	72Pa	ISO5151-T1
Heating	20°C	—	7°C	6°C		

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.
(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber. During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.
(4) Select the breaker size according to the own national standard.
(5) When wireless remote control is used, fan is 3 speed setting (Hi-Me-Lo) only.
(6) The operation data indicate when the air-conditioner is operated at 400V 50Hz or 380V 60Hz.
(7) The factory E.S.P. setting is set within the range of 80 - 150 Pa.If SW8-4 is turned to "ON", E.S.P. setting range can be changed to 10 - 200 Pa.(For RC-EX3A,RC-EXZ3A and RC-E5 only)
(8) Use 1/2H pipes having a 1.0mm or thicker wall for ϕ19.05 or larger pipes.

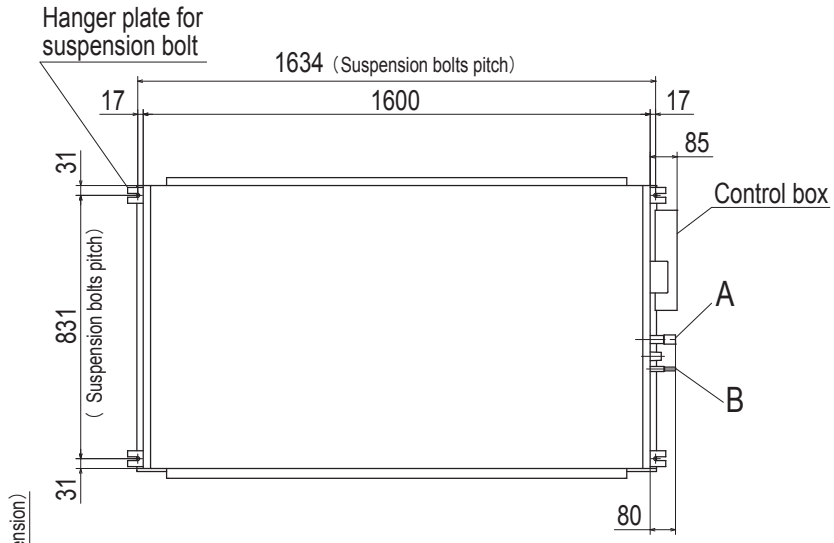
2. EXTERIOR DIMENSIONS

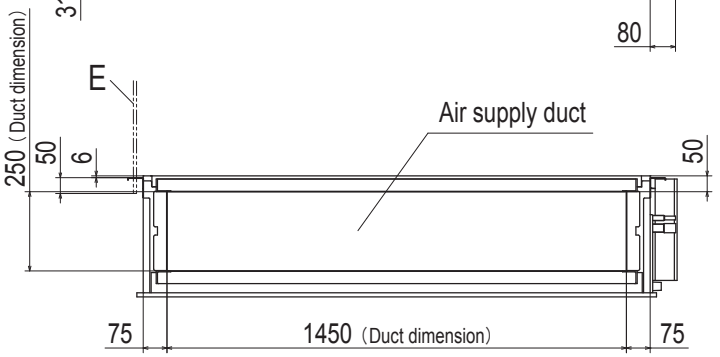
(1) Indoor units

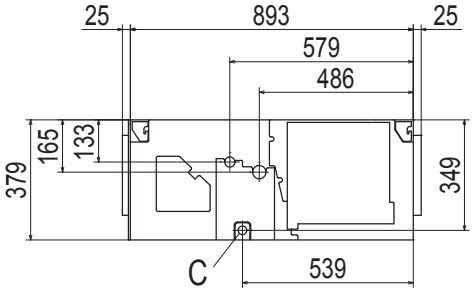
Models FDU200VH, 250VH



Symbol	Content		
	MODEL	200	250
A	Gas piping	ϕ25.4(1")(Brazing)	
B	Liquid piping	ϕ9.52(3/8")(Brazing)	ϕ12.7(1/2")(Brazing)
C	Drain piping (Gravity drainage)	VP25(O.D.32)	
D	Hole for wiring		
E	Suspension bolts	M10	
F	Inspection opening	(450×450)	





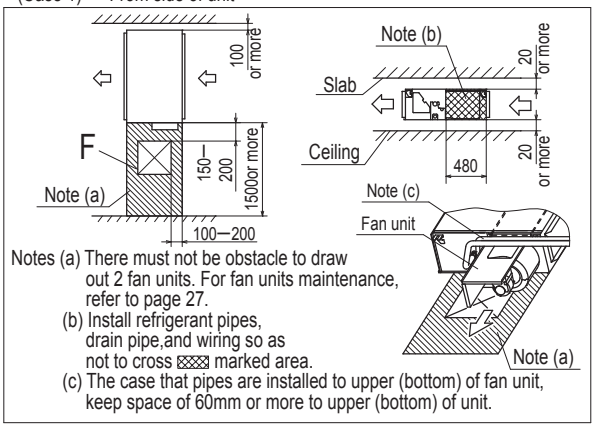


Unit:mm

Space for installation and service

Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

(Case 1) From side of unit

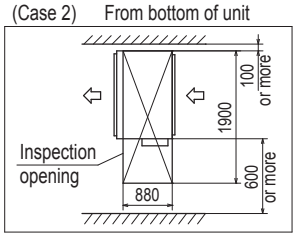


Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out 2 fan units. For fan units maintenance, refer to page 27.

(b) Install refrigerant pipes, drain pipe,and wiring so as not to cross ▨ marked area.

(c) The case that pipes are installed to upper (bottom) of fan unit, keep space of 60mm or more to upper (bottom) of unit.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit

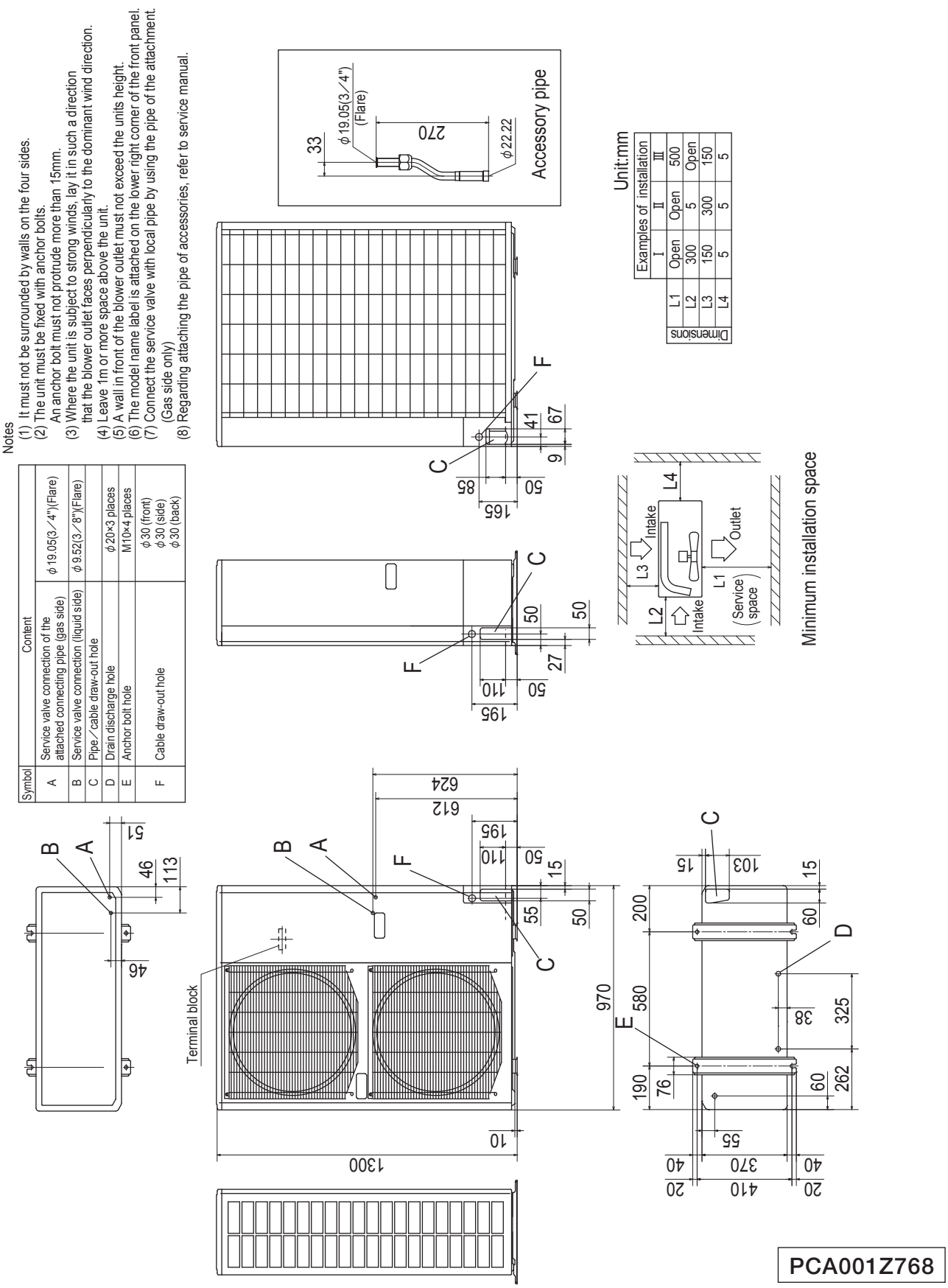


Note(1) The model name label is attached on the lid of the control box.

PJG000Z754

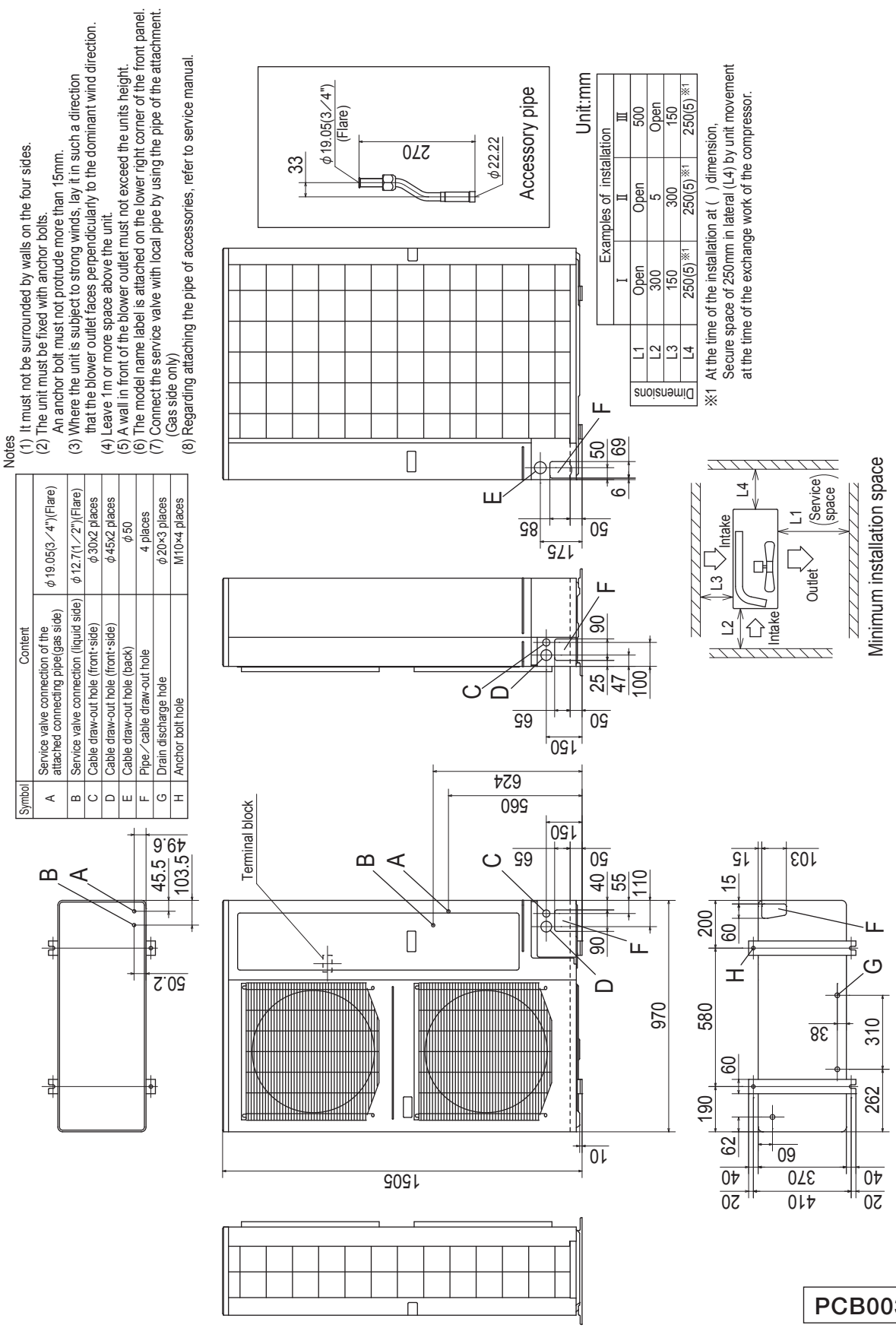
(2) Outdoor units

Model FDC200VSA



PCA001Z768

Model FDC250VSA

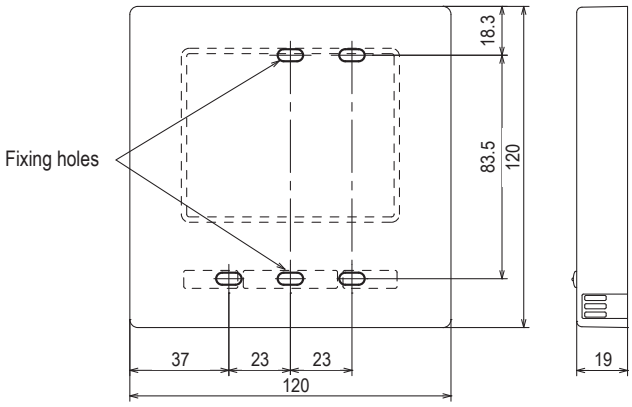


(3) Remote control (Option parts)

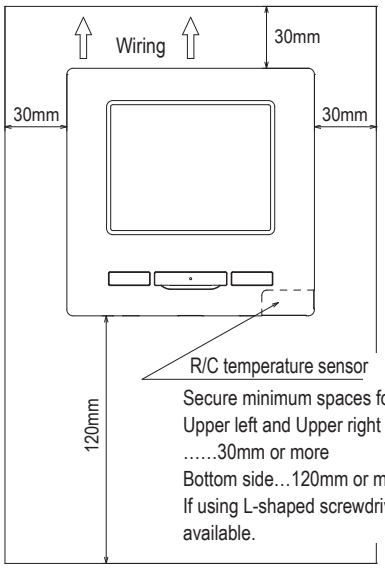
(a) Wired remote control

Model RC-EX3A

Dimensions (Viewed from front)



Installation space



Secure minimum spaces for disassembling the case.
Upper left and Upper right sides
……30mm or more
Bottom side…120mm or more
If using L-shaped screwdriver, 50mm or more is available.

● Do not install the remote control at following places.

1) It could cause break-down or deformation of remote control.
   - Where it is exposed to direct sunlight
   - Where the ambient temperature becomes 0 °C or below, or 40 °C or above
   - Where the surface is not flat
   - Where the strength of installation area is insufficient
2) Moisture may be attached to internal parts of the remote control, resulting in a display failure.
   - Place with high humidity where condensation occurs on the remote control
   - Where the remote control gets wet
3) Accurate room temperature may not be detected using the temperature sensor of the remote control.
   - Where the average room temperature cannot be detected
   - Place near the equipment to generate heat
   - Place affected by outside air in opening/closing the door
   - Place exposed to direct sunlight or wind from air-conditioner
   - Where the difference between wall and room temperature is large
4) When you are using the automatic grille up and down panel in the IU, you may not be able to confirm the up and down motion.
   - Where the IU cannot be visually confirmed

R/C cable:0.3mm^2 x 2 cores

When the cable length is longer than 100 m, the max size for wires used in the R/C case is 0.5 mm^2 . Connect them to wires of larger size near the outside of R/C. When wires are connected, take measures to prevent water, etc. from entering inside.

≦ 200 m	0.5 mm^2 x 2 cores
≦ 300m	0.75 mm^2 x 2 cores
≦ 400m	1.25 mm^2 x 2 cores
≦ 600m	2.0 mm^2 x 2 cores

● When installing the unit at a hospital, telecommunication facility, etc., take measures to suppress electric noises.

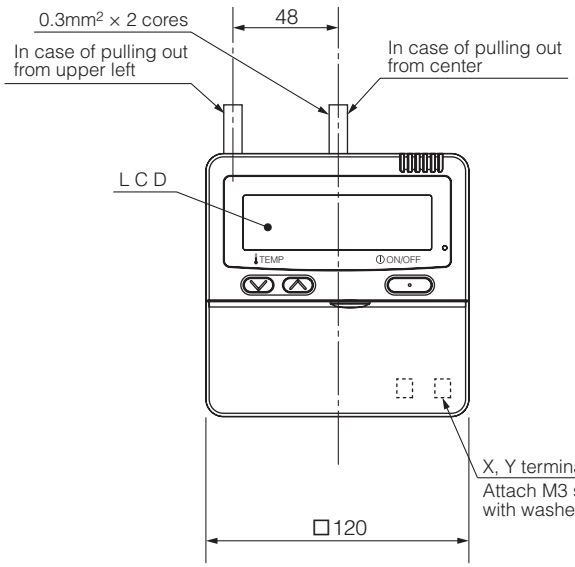
It could cause malfunction or break-down due to hazardous effects on the inverter, private power generator, high frequency medical equipment, radio communication equipment, etc.
The influences transmitted from the remote control to medical or communication equipment could disrupt medical activities, video broadcasting or cause noise interference.

Adapted RoHS directive

PJZ000Z333

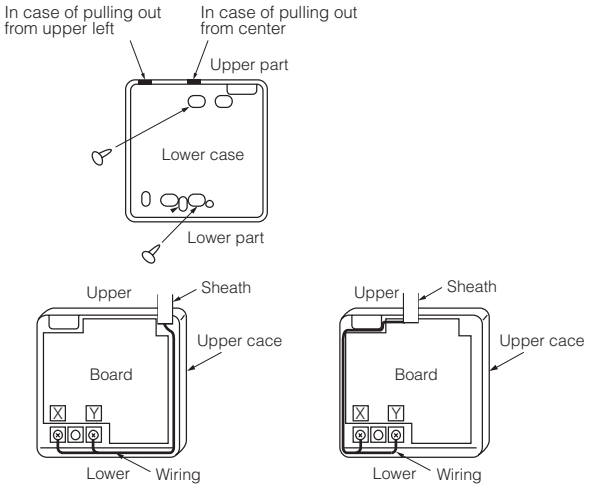
Model RC-E5

Exposed mounting



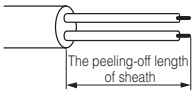
Exterior appearance (Munsell color)	Pearl white (N8.5) near equivalent

Wiring outlet
Cut off the upper thin part of remote control lower case with a nipper or knife, and grind burrs with a file etc.

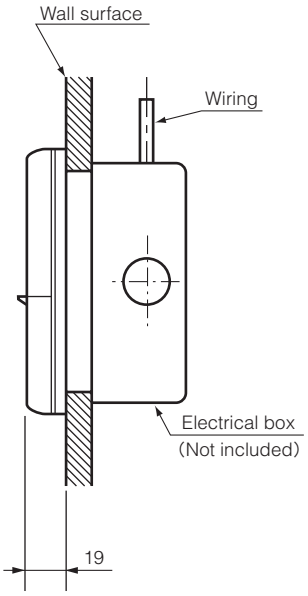


The peeling-off length of sheath

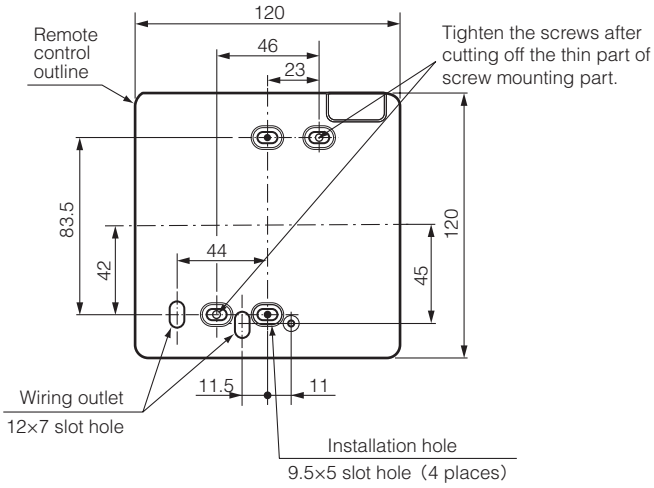
Pulling out from upper left	Pulling out from center
X wiring : 215mm Y wiring : 195mm	X wiring : 170mm Y wiring : 190mm



Embedded mounting



Remote control installation dimensions



1) Installation screw for remote control
M4 screw (2 pieces)

Unit:mm

Wiring specifications

1) If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm². Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.

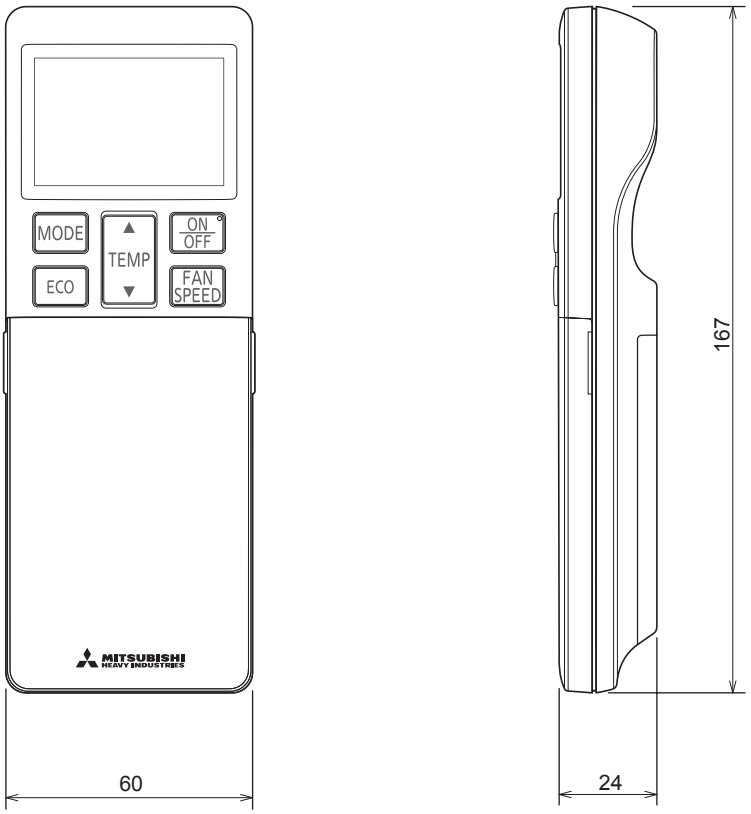
Length	Wiring thickness
100 to 200m	0.5mm² × 2 cores
Under 300m	0.75mm² × 2 cores
Under 400m	1.25mm² × 2 cores
Under 600m	2.0mm² × 2 cores

PJZ000Z295

(b) Wireless remote control

RCN-E2 (Option part)

Unit: mm



3. ELECTRICAL WIRING

(1) Indoor units

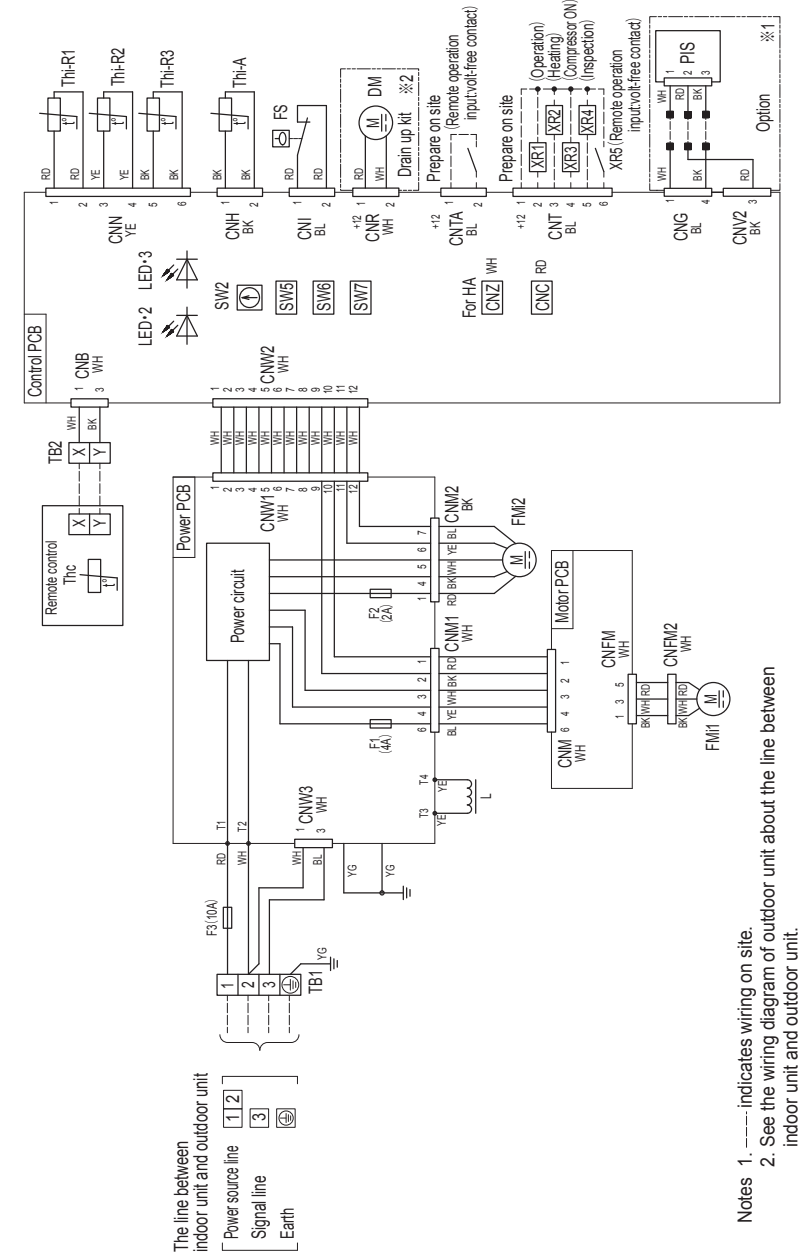
Models FDU200VH, 250VH

Meaning of marks

Item	Description
CNB-Z	Connector
DM	Drain pump motor
F1-3	Fuse
FMI1,2	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
L	Reactor
LED･2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED･3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
PIS	Motion sensor
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check,drain pump motor test run
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Temperature sensor (Remote control)
Thi-A	Temperature sensor (Return air)
Thi-R1,2,3	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)
■mark	Closed-end connector

Color Marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow Green

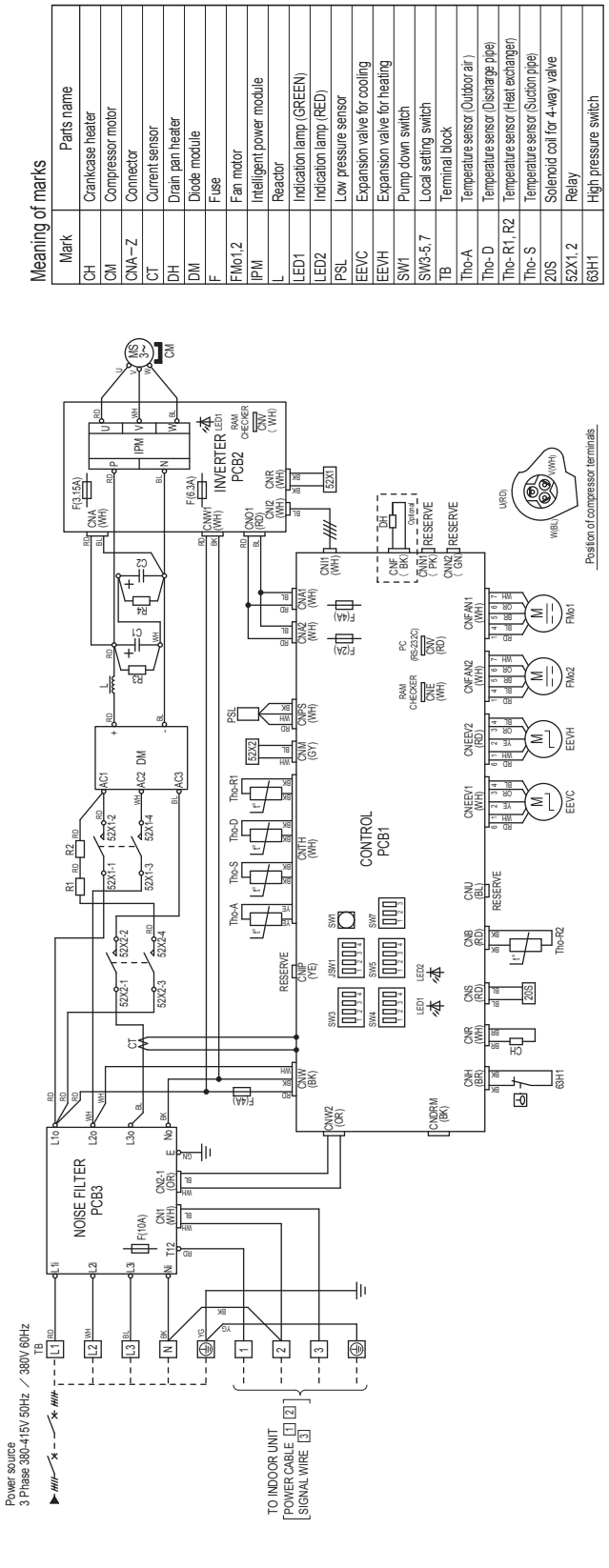


Notes 1. ------ indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outdoor unit about the line between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²) at remote control line. See spec sheet of remote control in case that the total length is more than 100m.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Section 1 (※1) shows electric circuit of motion sensor (Option).
6. Section 2 (※2) is not included as standard from factory. This circuit is an option when using drain up kit.

PJG000Z755

(2) Outdoor units

Model FDC200VSA



Meaning of marks

Mark	Parts name
CH	Crankcase heater
CM	Compressor motor
CNA~Z	Connector
CT	Current sensor
DH	Drain pan heater
DM	Diode module
F	Fuse
FMo1,2	Fan motor
IPM	Intelligent power module
L	Reactor
LED1	Indication lamp (GREEN)
LED2	Indication lamp (RED)
PSL	Low pressure sensor
EEVC	Expansion valve for cooling
EEVH	Expansion valve for heating
SW1	Pump down switch
SW3-5, 7	Local setting switch
TB	Terminal block
Tho-A	Temperature sensor (Outdoor air)
Tho- D	Temperature sensor (Discharge pipe)
Tho- R1, R2	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)
Tho- S	Temperature sensor (Suction pipe)
20S	Solenoid coil for 4-way valve
52X1, 2	Relay
63H1	High pressure switch

Color marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
GN	Green
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow/Green
GY	Gray
PK	Pink

Local setting switch SW3 (Set up at shipment OFF)

SW3-1	Defrost control change	The defrost operation interval becomes shorter by turning ON this switch. This switch should be turned ON in the area where outside temperature becomes below the freezing point.
SW3-2	Snow guard fan control	When this switch is turned ON, the outdoor unit fan will run for 30 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3°C or lower and the compressor is not running when the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.
SW3-3,4	Trial operation	Method of trial operation ① Trial operation can be performed by using SW3-3,4. ② Compressor will be in the operation when SW3-3 is ON. ③ Cooling trial operation will be performed when SW3-4 is OFF, and heating trial operation when SW3-4 is ON. ④ Be sure to turn OFF SW3-3 after the trial operation is finished.

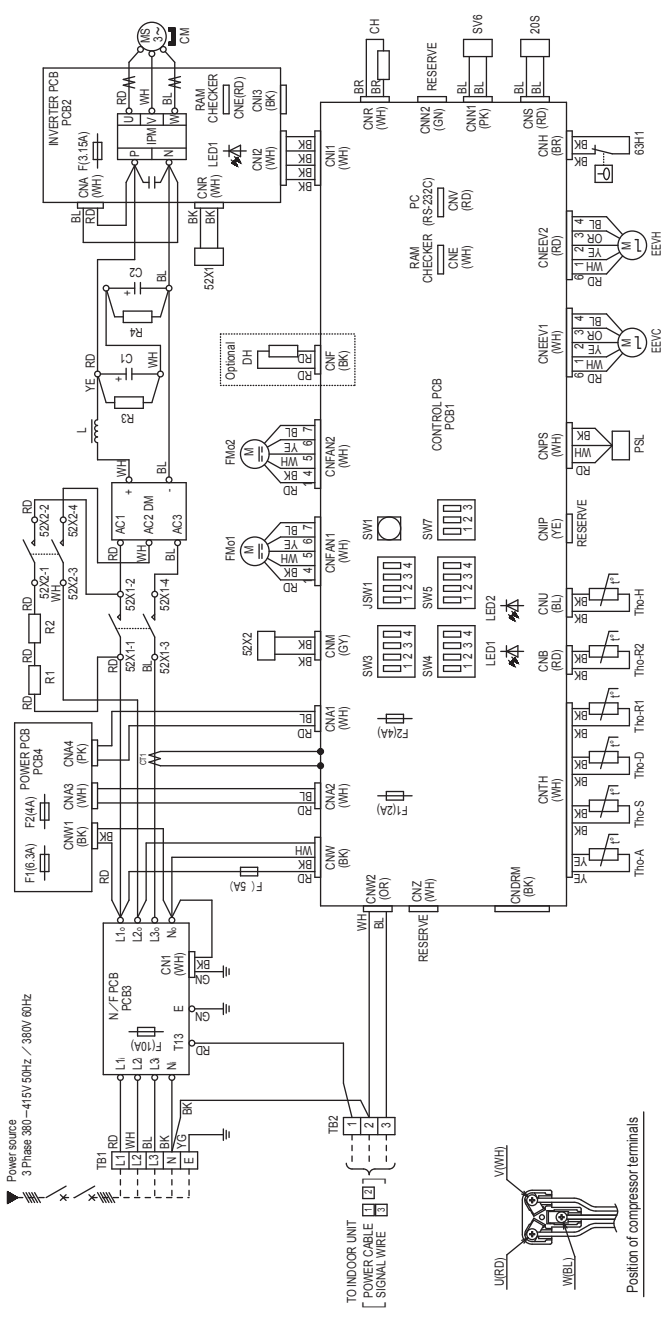
Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm²)	Power cable length (m)	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number	Earth wire size
25	5.5	43	ϕ 1.6mm × 3	ϕ 1.6mm

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear of circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

PCA001Z769

Model FDC250VSA



Meaning of marks

Mark	Parts name
CH	Crankcase heater
CM	Compressor motor
CNA–Z	Connector
CT	Current sensor
DH	Drain pan heater
DM	Diode module
F	Fuse
FMo1,2	Fan motor
IPM	Intelligent power module
L	Reactor
LED1	Indication lamp (GREEN)
LED2	Indication lamp (RED)
PSL	Low pressure sensor
EEVC	Expansion valve for cooling
EEVH	Expansion valve for heating
SW1	Pump down switch
SW3–5, 7	Local setting switch
TB	Terminal block
Tho-A	Temperature sensor (Outdoor air)
Tho- D	Temperature sensor (Discharge pipe)
Tho- R 1,R2	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)
Tho-H	Temperature sensor (Comp. under dome)
Tho-S	Temperature sensor (Suction pipe)
20S	Solenoid coil for 4-way valve
SV6	Solenoid coil for 2 way valve
52X1, 2	Relay
63H1	High pressure switch

Color marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
GN	Green
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow / Green
GY	Gray
PK	Pink

Local setting switch SW3 (Set up at shipment OFF)

SW3-1	Defrost control change	The defrost operation interval becomes shorter by turning ON this switch. This switch should be turned ON in the area where outside temperature becomes below the freezing point.
SW3-2	Snow guard fan control	When this switch is turned ON, the outdoor unit fan will run for 30 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3°C or lower and the compressor is not running when the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.
SW3-3,4	Trial operation	Method of trial operation ① Trial operation can be performed by using SW3-3,4. ② Compressor will be in the operation when SW3-3 is ON. ③ Cooling trial operation will be performed when SW3-4 is OFF, and heating trial operation when SW3-4 is ON. ④ Be sure to turn OFF SW3-3 after the trial operation is finished.

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm^2)	Power cable length (m)	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number	Earth wire size
27	5.5	40	ϕ 1.6mm × 3	ϕ 1.6mm

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear of circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

PCB003Z866

4. NOISE LEVEL

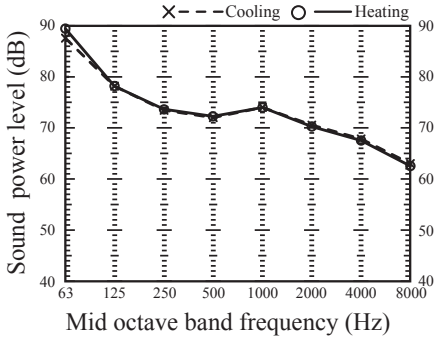
Notes(1) The data are based on the following conditions.
Ambient air temperature: Indoor unit 27℃WB. Outdoor unit 35℃DB.
(2) The data in the chart are measured in an anechoic room.
(3) The noise levels measured in the field are usually higher than the data because of reflection.

(1) Indoor units

(i) Sound power level

Models FDU200VH,250VH

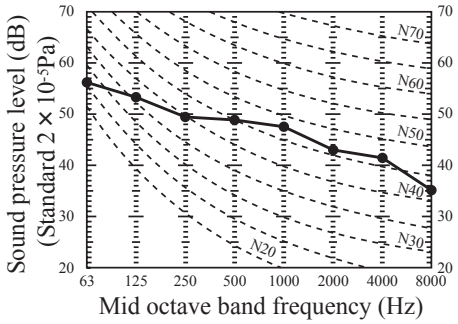
Noise level Cooling:78 dB (A)
Heating:78 dB (A)



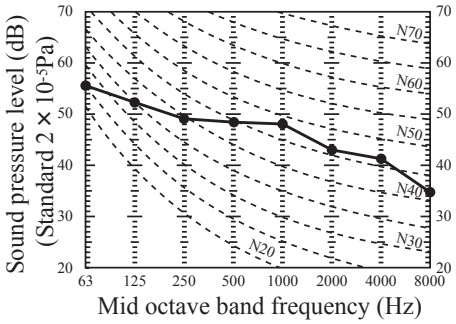
(ii) Sound pressure level

Models FDU200VH,250VH

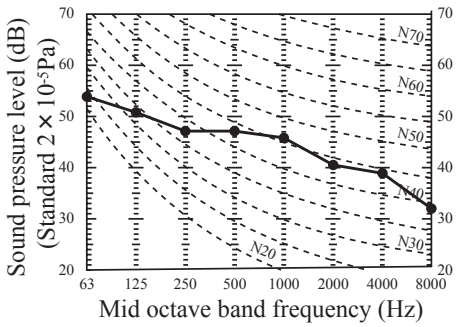
Noise level 52 dB (A) at P-Hi
Cooling



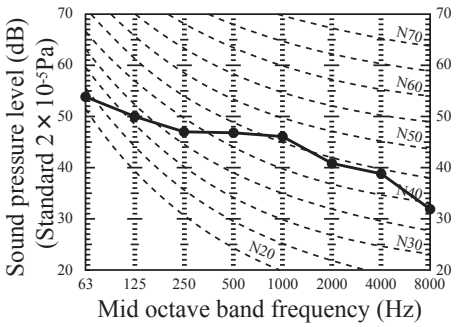
Noise level 52 dB (A) at P-Hi
Heating



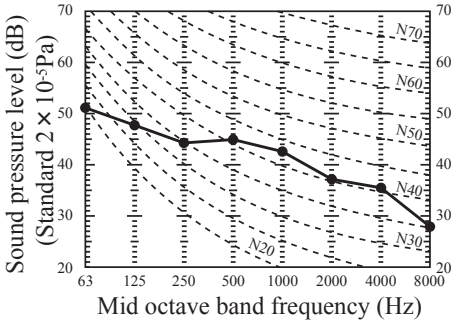
Noise level 50 dB (A) at Hi
Cooling



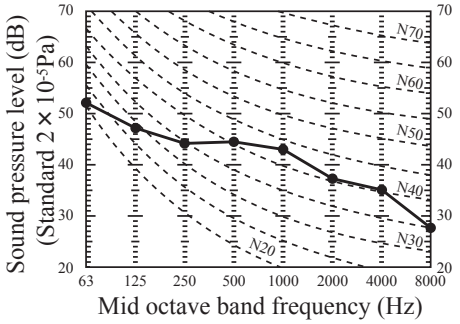
Noise level 50 dB (A) at Hi
Heating



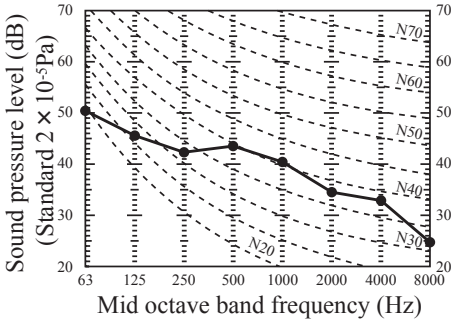
Noise level 47 dB (A) at Me
Cooling



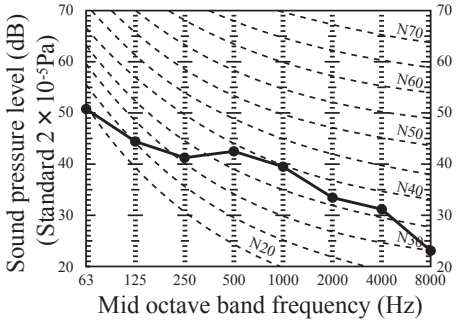
Noise level 47 dB (A) at Me
Heating



Noise level 45 dB (A) at Lo
Cooling



Noise level 44 dB (A) at Lo
Heating

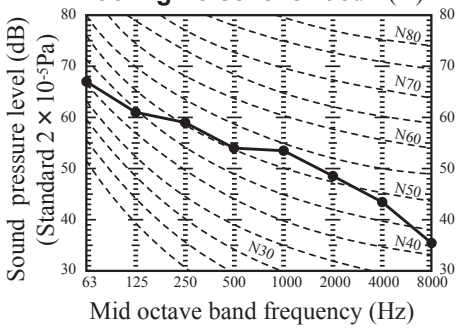


(2) Outdoor units

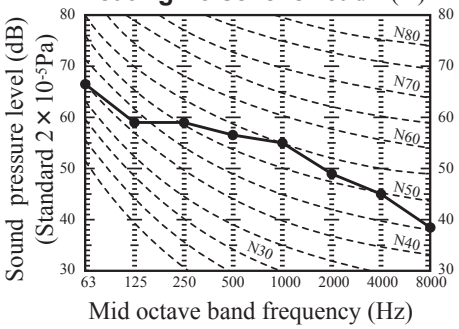
Measured based on JIS B 8616
Mike position: at highest noise level in position as mentioned below
Distance from front side 1m
Height 1m

Model FDC200VSA

Cooling noise level 58dB (A)

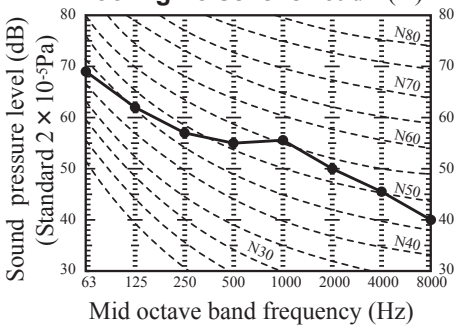


Heating noise level 59dB (A)

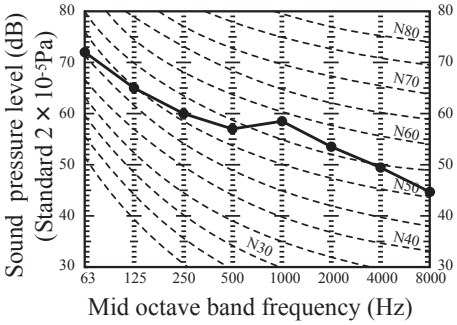


Model FDC250VSA

Cooling noise level 59dB (A)



Heating noise level 62dB (A)



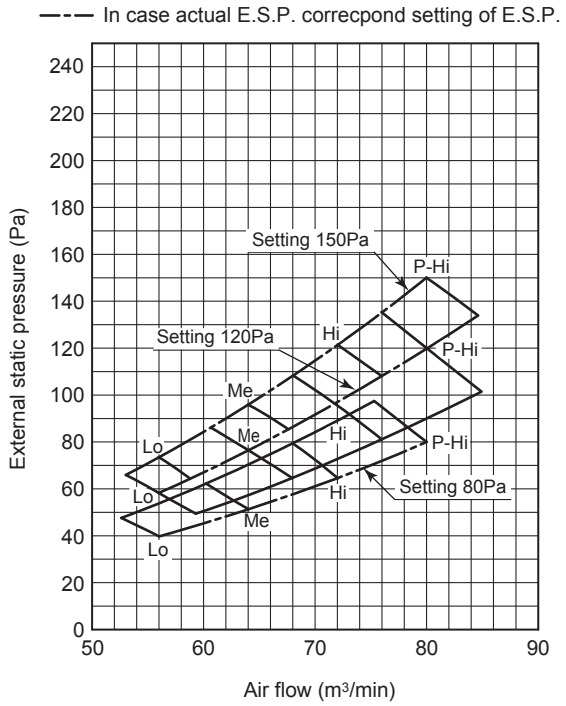
5. CHARACTERISTICS OF FAN

- Characteristic FAN (1) shows air flow vs. External Static Pressure (E.S.P.) range where settings of E.S.P. are maximum E.S.P. (SW8-4 OFF : 150Pa, SW8-4 ON : 200Pa), rated E.S.P., and minimum E.S.P. (SW8-4 OFF : 80Pa, SW8-4 ON : 10Pa)
- Characteristic FAN (2) shows air flow vs E.S.P. curve when set fan tap is set P-Hi with each setting of E.S.P. by remote control.
- External Static Pressure (E.S.P.) can be set by wired remote control.
- You can set required E.S.P. by wired remote control which calculate it with the set air flow rate and pressure loss of the duct connected.

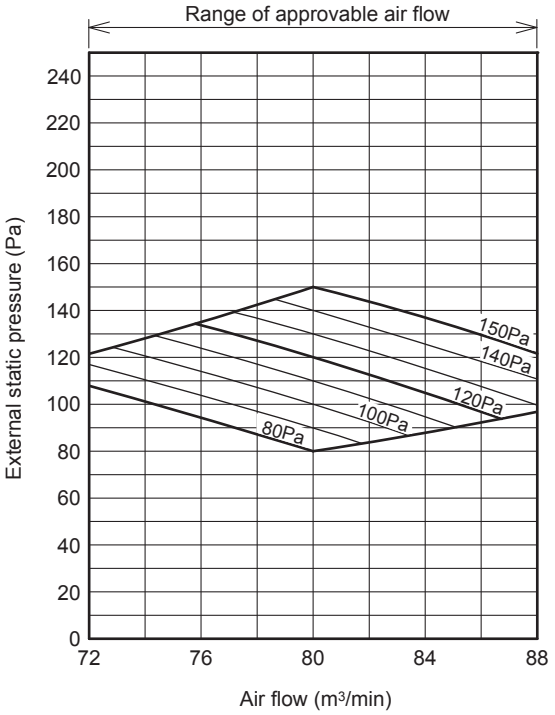
Models FDU200VH, 250VH

■SW8-4 : OFF (Range of use limitation : Setting 80Pa-150Pa)

Characteristic FAN (1)

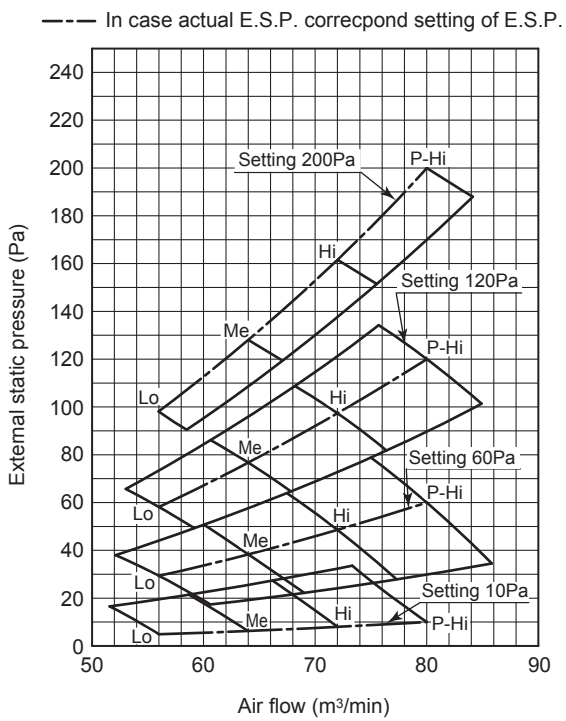


Characteristic FAN (2)

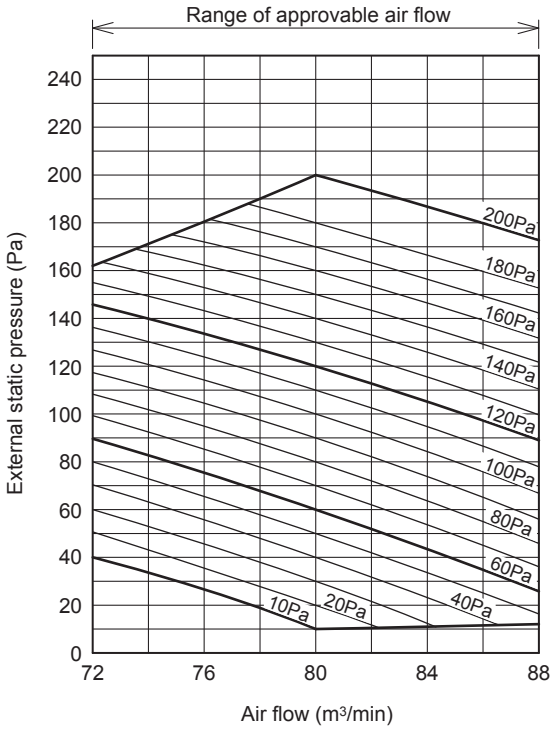


■SW8-4 : ON (Range of use limitation : Setting 10Pa-200Pa)

Characteristic FAN (1)



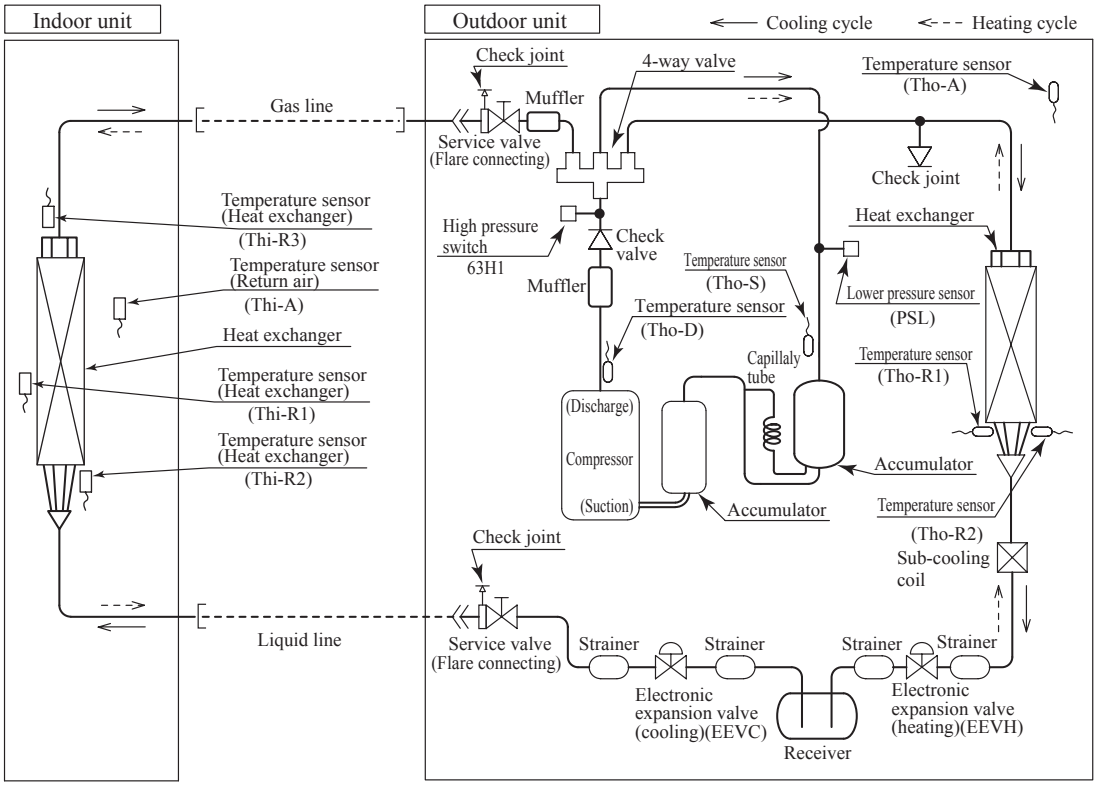
Characteristic FAN (2)



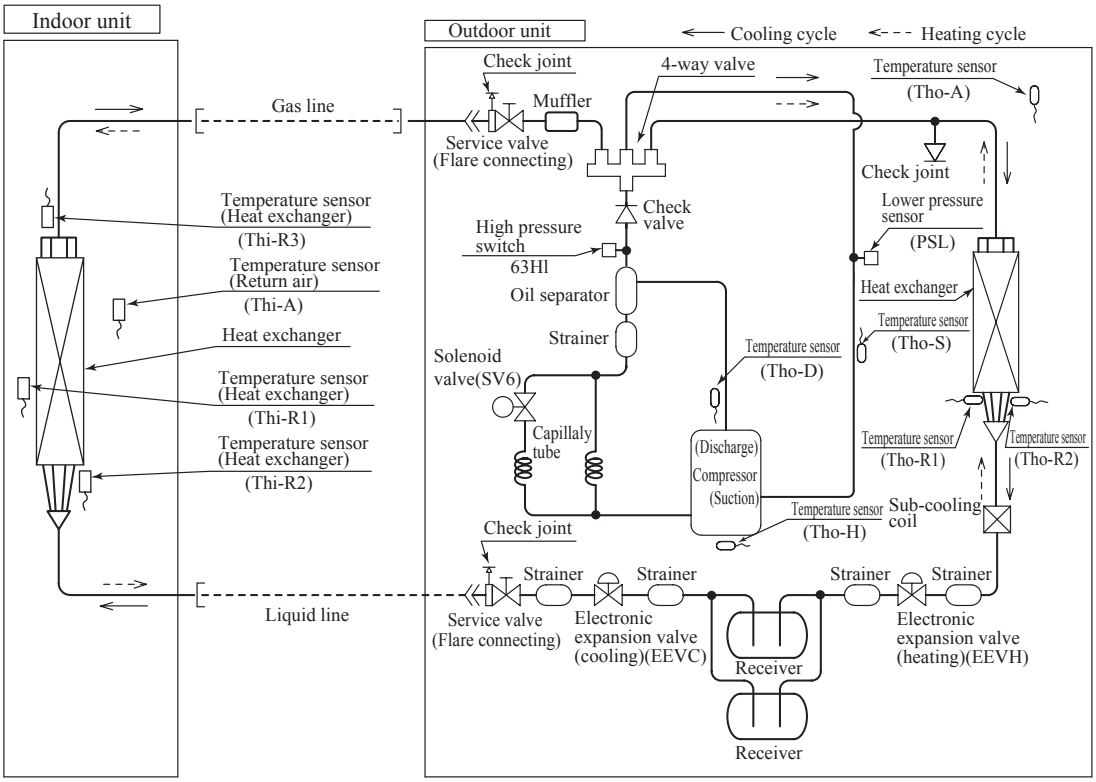
6. PIPING SYSTEM

(1) Single type

Model 200



Model 250



●Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size

Model	Gas line	Liquid line
200	In case of ϕ22.22 : 35m In case of ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58 : 70m	In case of ϕ9.52 : 40m In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m
250		In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m

Preset point of the protective devices

Parts name	Mark	Equipped unit	200, 250 model
Temperature sensor (for protection over-loading in heating)	Thi-R	Indoor unit	OFF 63˚C ON 56˚C
Temperature sensor (for frost prevention)	Thi-R		OFF 1.0˚C ON 10˚C
Temperature sensor (for protection high pressure in cooling)	Tho-R	Outdoor unit	OFF 65˚C ON 51˚C
Temperature sensor (for detecting dis-charge pipe temperature)	Tho-D	Outdoor unit	OFF 135˚C ON 90˚C
High pressure switch (for protection)	63H1	Outdoor unit	OFF 4.15MPa ON 3.15MPa
Low pressure sensor (for protection)	PSL	Outdoor unit	OFF 0.227MPa ON 0.079MPa

7. RANGE OF USAGE & LIMITATIONS

Operating temperature range		See next page.
		When used below -5˚C, install a snow hood.
Recommendable area to install		Considering to get sufficient heating capacity, the area where the averaged lowest ambient air temperature in day time during winter is above 0˚C, and it has no accumulation of snow.
Installation site		The limitations of installation space are shown in the page for exterior dimensions. Install the indoor unit at least 2.5m higher than the floor surface.
Temperature and humidity conditions surrounding the indoor unit in the ceiling (Note 2)		Dew point temperature : 28˚C or less, relative hummdity : 80% or less
Limitations on unit and piping installation		See page 21.
Compressor ON-OFF cycling	Cycle time	7 minutes or more (from OFF to OFF) or (from ON to ON)
	Stop time	3 minutes or more
Power source	Voltage range	Rating ±10%
	Voltage drop at start-up	Min.85% of rating
	Phase-to-phase umbalance	3% or less

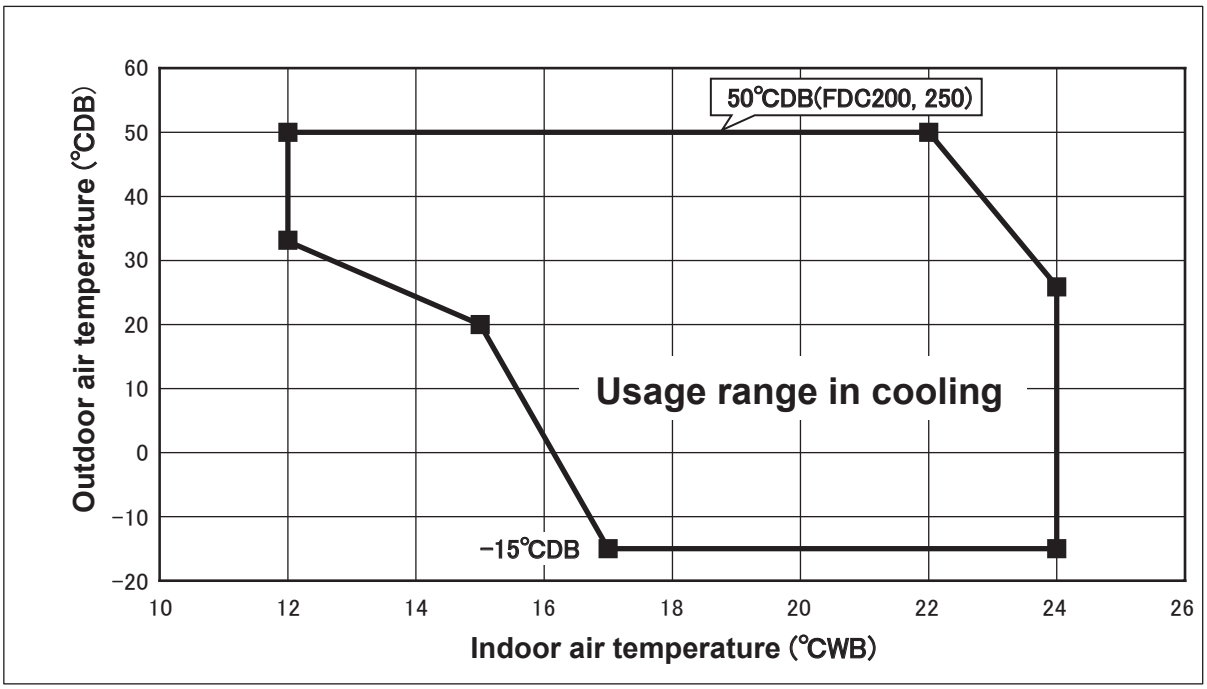
Note 1. Do not install the unit in places which :
1) Flammable gas may leak.
2) Carbon fiber, metal particles, powder, etc. are floating.
3) Cosmetic or special sprays are used frequently.
4) Exposed to oil splashes or steam (e.g. kitchen and machine plant).
5) Exposed to sea breeze (e.g. coastal area) or calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent).
6) Exposed to ammonia substance (e.g. organic fertilizer).
7) Matters affecting devices, such as sulfuric gas, chlorine gas, acid, alkali, etc. may generate or accumulate.
8) Chimney smoke is hanging.
9) Sucking the exhaust gas from heat exchanger.
10) Adjacent to equipment generating electromagnetic waves or high frequency waves.
11) There is light beams that affect the receiving device of indoor unit in case of the wireless specification.
12) Snow falls heavily.
13) At an elevation of 1000 meters or higher.
14) On mobile machine (e.g. vehicle, ship, etc.)
15) Splashed with water to indoor unit (e.g. laundry room).
16) Indoor units of twin, triple and double-twin specifications separately in a room with partition.

Note 2. If ambient temperature and humidity exceed the above values, add polyurethane foam insulation on the outer plate (10mm or thicker) of indoor unit.

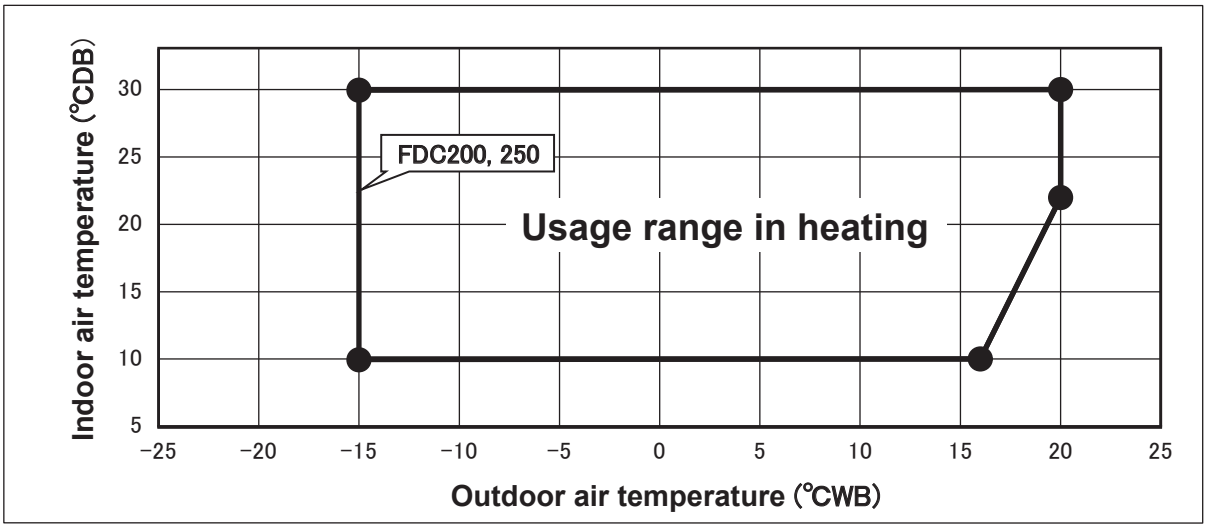
Note 3. Both gas and liquid pipes need to be coverd with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials at the place where humidity exceeds 70%.

Operating temperature range

■ Cooling



■ Heating



Decline in cooling and heating capacity or operation stop may occur when the outdoor unit is installed in places where natural wind can increase or decrease its design air flow rate.

"CAUTION" Cooling operation under low outdoor air temperature conditions

PAC models can be operated in cooling mode at low outdoor air temperature condition within above temperature range. However in case of severely low temperature conditions if the following precaution is not observed, it may not be operated in spite of operable temperature range mentioned above and cooling capacity may not be established under certain conditions.

[Precaution]

In case of severely low temperature condition

1) Install the outdoor unit at the place where strong wind cannot blow directly into the outdoor unit.
2) If there is no installation place where can prevent strong wind from directly blowing into the outdoor unit, mount the flex flow adapter (prepared as optional part) or like such devices onto the outdoor unit in order to divert the strong wind.

[Reason]

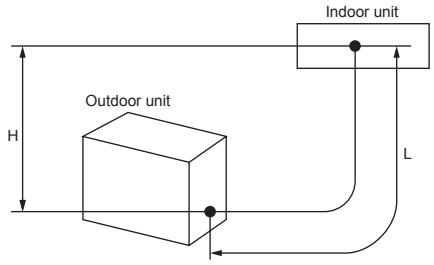
Under the low outdoor air temperature conditions of -5℃ or lower, the outdoor fan is controlled at lower or lowest speed by outdoor fan control, but if strong wind directly blow into the outdoor unit, the outdoor heat exchanger temperature will drop more.

This makes high and low pressures to drop as well. This low pressure drop makes the indoor heat exchanger temperature to drop and will activate anti-frost control at indoor heat exchanger at frequent intervals, that cooling operation may not be established for any given time.

Limitation on unit and piping installation - single

Descriptions	Model for outdoor units			Dimensional limitations	Marks appearing in the drawing Single type
One-way pipe length	FDC200	Liquid piping	ϕ9.52	≦ 40m	L
			ϕ12.7	≦ 40m L ≦ 70m	
	FDC250		ϕ12.7	≦ 70m	
	FDC200・250	Cas piping	ϕ22.22	≦ 35m	
			ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58	≦ 35m L ≦ 70m	
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher		FDC200・250	≦ 30m	H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower		FDC200・250	≦ 15m	

Single type



(1) Reduce refrigerant amount by according to table below from factory charge when refrigerant piping is shorter than 3m.

Model for outdoor units	Refrigerant to be reduced
FDC200・250	-1.0kg

8. SELECTION CHART

Correct the cooling and heating capacity in accordance with the operating conditions. The net cooling and heating capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown in the capacity tables (8.1) × Correction factors shown in the table (8.2) (8.3) (8.4).

Caution: In case that the cooling operation during low outdoor air temperature below -5°C is expected, install the outdoor unit where it is not influenced by natural wind. Otherwise protection control by low pressure will be activated much more frequently and it will cause insufficient capacity or breakdown of the compressor in worst case.

8.1 Capacity tables

Model FDU200VSAVH Indoor unit FDU200VH Outdoor unit FDC200VSA

Cooling mode (kW)

Outdoor air temp.	Indoor air temperature															
	18℃CDB		21℃CDB		23℃CDB		26℃CDB		27℃CDB		28℃CDB		31℃CDB		33℃CDB	
	12℃CWB		14℃CWB		16℃CWB		18℃CWB		19℃CWB		20℃CWB		22℃CWB		24℃CWB	
℃CDB	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC
11					19.36	14.17	20.45	15.09	20.99	14.93	21.67	14.81	23.02	15.51	24.37	15.18
13					19.46	14.21	20.57	15.14	21.13	14.98	21.78	14.85	23.09	15.54	24.40	15.19
15					19.55	14.25	20.69	15.19	21.26	15.04	21.90	14.90	23.16	15.56	24.43	15.20
17					19.56	14.25	20.77	15.22	21.37	15.08	21.99	14.93	23.23	15.59	24.47	15.21
19					19.64	14.29	20.84	15.25	21.48	15.12	22.09	14.97	23.30	15.61	24.51	15.22
21					19.34	14.16	20.50	15.11	21.11	14.98	21.72	14.83	22.92	15.48	24.13	15.11
23					19.04	14.03	20.16	14.98	20.74	14.84	21.35	14.69	22.55	15.36	23.76	14.99
25			17.82	14.37	18.89	13.96	19.99	14.91	20.56	14.77	21.16	14.63	22.37	15.30	23.57	14.94
27			17.68	14.31	18.74	13.90	19.82	14.84	20.38	14.70	21.25	14.66	22.13	15.22		
29			17.40	14.18	18.43	13.76	19.49	14.71	20.03	14.57	20.93	14.54	21.83	15.12		
31			17.11	14.04	18.11	13.63	19.15	14.58	19.69	14.44	20.60	14.42	21.52	15.02		
33	15.84	13.05	16.58	13.80	17.80	13.50	18.82	14.45	19.34	14.31	20.28	14.31	21.21	14.92		
35	15.73	12.99	16.37	13.71	17.49	13.37	18.49	14.32	19.00	14.18	19.95	14.19	20.91	14.82		
37	15.52	12.89	16.13	13.60	17.14	13.22	18.05	14.15	18.57	14.02	19.48	14.02	20.39	14.65		
39	15.31	12.79	15.89	13.49	16.78	13.07	17.61	13.98	18.13	13.86	19.00	13.85	19.87	14.49		
41	15.10	12.69	15.65	13.38	16.43	12.93	17.18	13.82	17.70	13.71	18.53	13.69	19.36	14.32		
43	14.89	12.59	15.41	13.28	16.07	12.78	16.74	13.65	17.26	13.55	18.05	13.52	18.84	14.16		
46	14.58	12.44	15.05	13.12	15.54	12.56	16.09	13.41	16.61	13.32	17.34	13.28	18.06	13.92		
50	11.25	10.89	11.78	11.54	12.39	11.32	12.68	12.19	12.88	12.04	13.08	11.88	13.28	12.50		

Heating mode:HC (kW)

Outdoor air temp.		Indoor air temperature ℃CDB				
℃CDB	℃CWB	16	18	20	22	24
-19.8	-20					
-17.7	-18					
-15.7	-16					
-13.5	-14	11.10	10.98	10.86	10.73	10.60
-11.5	-12	11.93	11.80	11.67	11.54	11.40
-9.5	-10	12.75	12.61	12.48	12.34	12.20
-7.5	-8	13.57	13.43	13.29	13.14	13.00
-5.5	-6	13.78	13.64	13.51	13.37	13.24
-3.0	-4	13.99	13.86	13.73	13.60	13.47
-1.0	-2	14.20	14.08	13.95	13.83	13.71
1.0	0	14.41	14.29	14.18	14.06	13.94
2.0	1	14.51	14.40	14.29	14.17	14.06
3.0	2	16.19	16.05	15.91	15.79	15.67
5.0	4	19.54	19.35	19.15	19.02	18.89
7.0	6	22.89	22.64	22.40	22.25	22.11
9.0	8	23.99	23.78	23.58	23.42	23.25
11.5	10	25.09	24.92	24.75	24.58	24.40
13.5	12	25.95	25.79	25.63	25.45	25.27
15.5	14	26.82	26.66	26.50	26.32	26.14
16.5	16	27.25	27.10	26.94	26.76	26.57

PJG000Z046 D

Model FDU250VSAVH Indoor unit FDU250VH Outdoor unit FDC250VSA

Cooling mode (kW)

Outdoor air temp.	Indoor air temperature															
	18℃CDB		21℃CDB		23℃CDB		26℃CDB		27℃CDB		28℃CDB		31℃CDB		33℃CDB	
	12℃CWB		14℃CWB		16℃CWB		18℃CWB		19℃CWB		20℃CWB		22℃CWB		24℃CWB	
℃CDB	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC	TC	SHC
11					24.64	19.66	26.08	21.18	26.80	20.97	27.60	20.77	29.20	21.89	30.80	21.40
13					24.67	19.67	26.11	21.19	26.83	20.98	27.63	20.78	29.23	21.90	30.83	21.41
15					24.69	19.68	26.14	21.20	26.86	20.99	27.66	20.79	29.26	21.91	30.86	21.42
17					24.70	19.68	26.23	21.23	26.99	21.04	27.78	20.83	29.34	21.93	30.91	21.43
19					24.81	19.73	26.33	21.27	27.13	21.09	27.90	20.87	29.43	21.96	30.96	21.44
21					24.43	19.57	25.90	21.11	26.67	20.92	27.43	20.72	28.96	21.81	30.48	21.31
23					24.05	19.42	25.47	20.95	26.20	20.76	26.96	20.56	28.49	21.67	30.01	21.18
25			22.51	19.96	23.86	19.35	25.25	20.87	25.97	20.68	26.73	20.48	28.25	21.60	29.77	21.12
27			22.33	19.88	23.67	19.27	25.04	20.79	25.74	20.60	26.85	20.52	27.96	21.51		
29			21.97	19.73	23.27	19.11	24.61	20.64	25.30	20.45	26.44	20.39	27.57	21.40		
31			21.61	19.57	22.88	18.96	24.19	20.49	24.87	20.30	26.03	20.25	27.18	21.28		
33	20.01	18.05	20.94	19.29	22.49	18.81	23.77	20.34	24.44	20.15	25.62	20.12	26.80	21.17		
35	19.87	17.99	20.68	19.18	22.10	18.65	23.35	20.19	24.00	20.00	25.21	19.98	26.41	21.05		
37	19.61	17.87	20.42	19.07	21.78	18.53	22.94	20.04	23.56	19.85	24.66	19.80	25.76	20.86		
39	19.51	17.82	20.33	19.03	21.65	18.48	22.72	19.96	23.30	19.76	24.30	19.69	25.30	20.73		
41	20.09	18.09	20.57	19.13	21.47	18.41	22.44	19.87	22.98	19.65	23.88	19.55	24.77	20.57		
43	19.02	17.60	19.85	18.83	21.05	18.25	21.92	19.68	22.41	19.46	23.19	19.33	23.96	20.34		
46	17.16	16.77	17.71	17.36	18.29	17.21	18.93	18.56	19.55	18.52	20.41	18.46	21.26	19.57		
50	11.31	11.08	11.84	11.60	12.45	12.20	12.74	12.49	12.94	12.69	13.14	12.88	13.35	13.08		

Heating mode:HC (kW)

Outdoor air temp.		Indoor air temperature ℃CDB				
℃CDB	℃CWB	16	18	20	22	24
-19.8	-20					
-17.7	-18					
-15.7	-16					
-13.5	-14	13.22	13.07	12.93	12.78	12.63
-11.5	-12	13.88	13.73	13.58	13.43	13.28
-9.5	-10	14.55	14.39	14.24	14.08	13.93
-7.5	-8	15.21	15.05	14.89	14.73	14.58
-5.5	-6	15.48	15.32	15.17	15.02	14.87
-3.0	-4	15.74	15.59	15.45	15.30	15.16
-1.0	-2	16.00	15.87	15.73	15.59	15.45
1.0	0	16.27	16.14	16.01	15.87	15.74
2.0	1	16.40	16.27	16.14	16.01	15.88
3.0	2	18.64	18.48	18.32	18.18	18.04
5.0	4	23.11	22.89	22.66	22.50	22.34
7.0	6	27.59	27.29	27.00	26.82	26.65
9.0	8	28.92	28.67	28.42	28.22	28.03
11.5	10	30.24	30.04	29.84	29.63	29.41
13.5	12	31.28	31.09	30.89	30.68	30.46
15.5	14	32.32	32.14	31.95	31.73	31.51
16.5	16	32.85	32.66	32.47	32.25	32.03

PJG000Z046 D

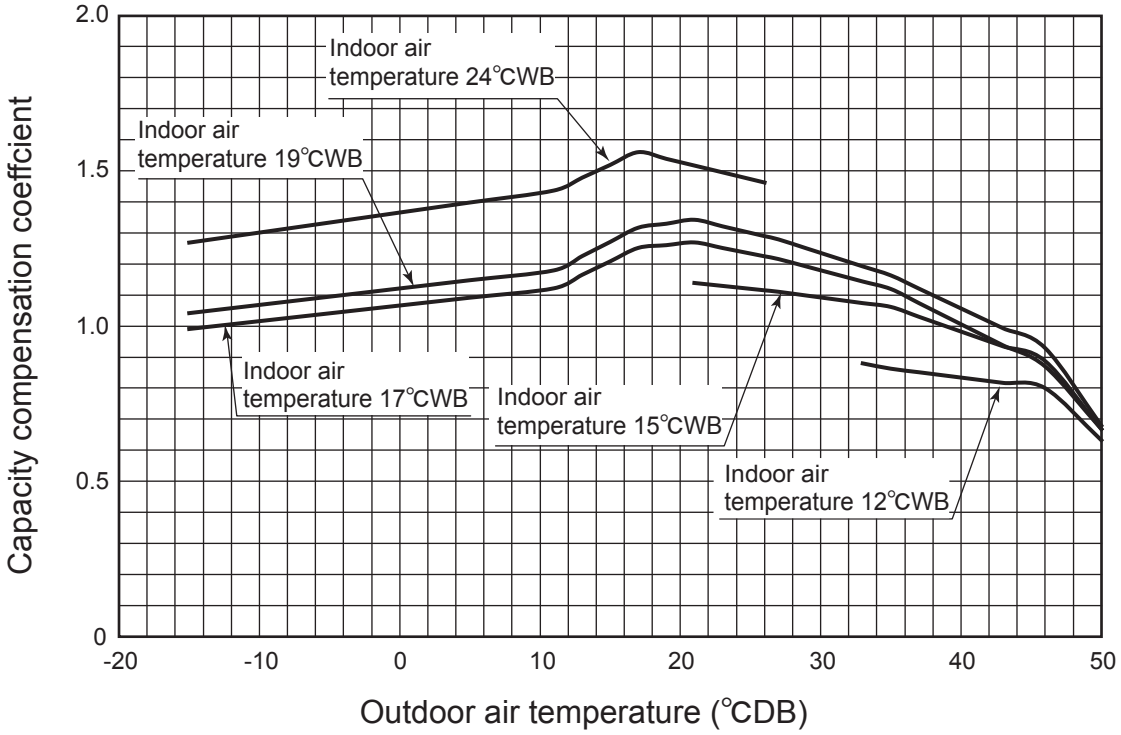
Notes (1) These data show average statuses.
Depending on the system control, there may be ranges where the operation is not conducted continuously.
These data show the case where the operation frequency of a compressor is fixed.
(2) Capacities are based on the following conditions.
Corresponding refrigerant piping length :7.5m
Level difference of Zero.
(3) Symbols are as follows.
TC : Total cooling capacity (kW)
SHC : Sensible heat capacity (kW)
HC : Heating capacity (kW)

[References data]

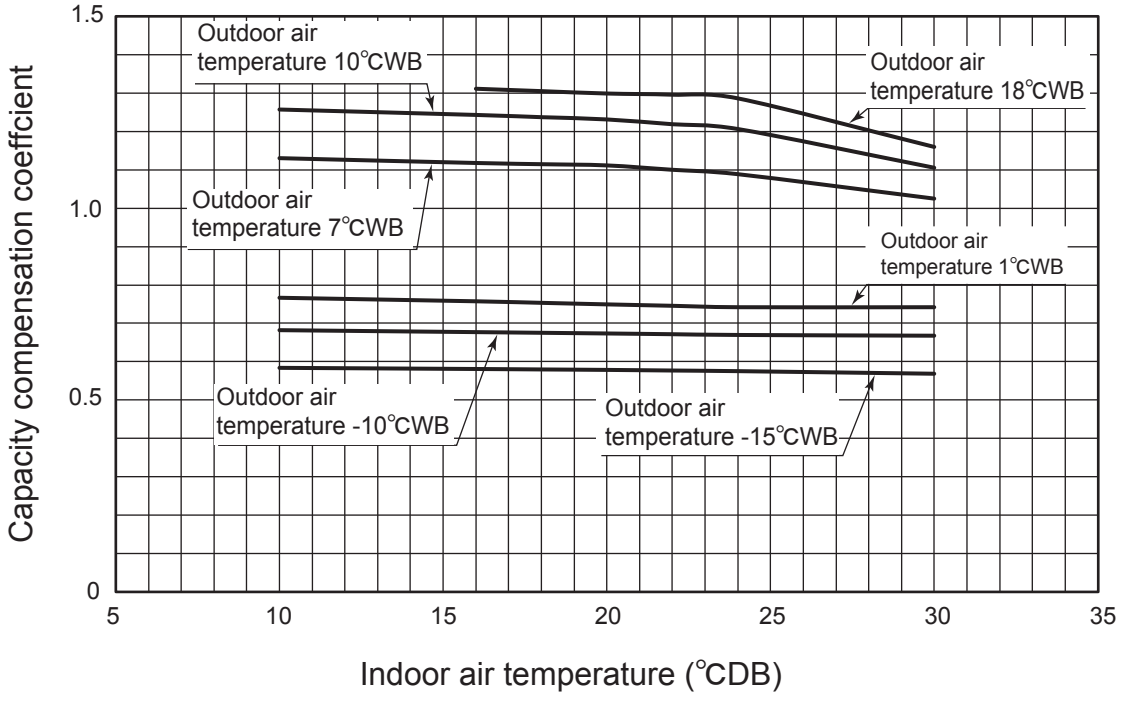
Capacity variation against outdoor and indoor temperature at rated capacity condition.

(I) Model FDC200VSA

① Cooling

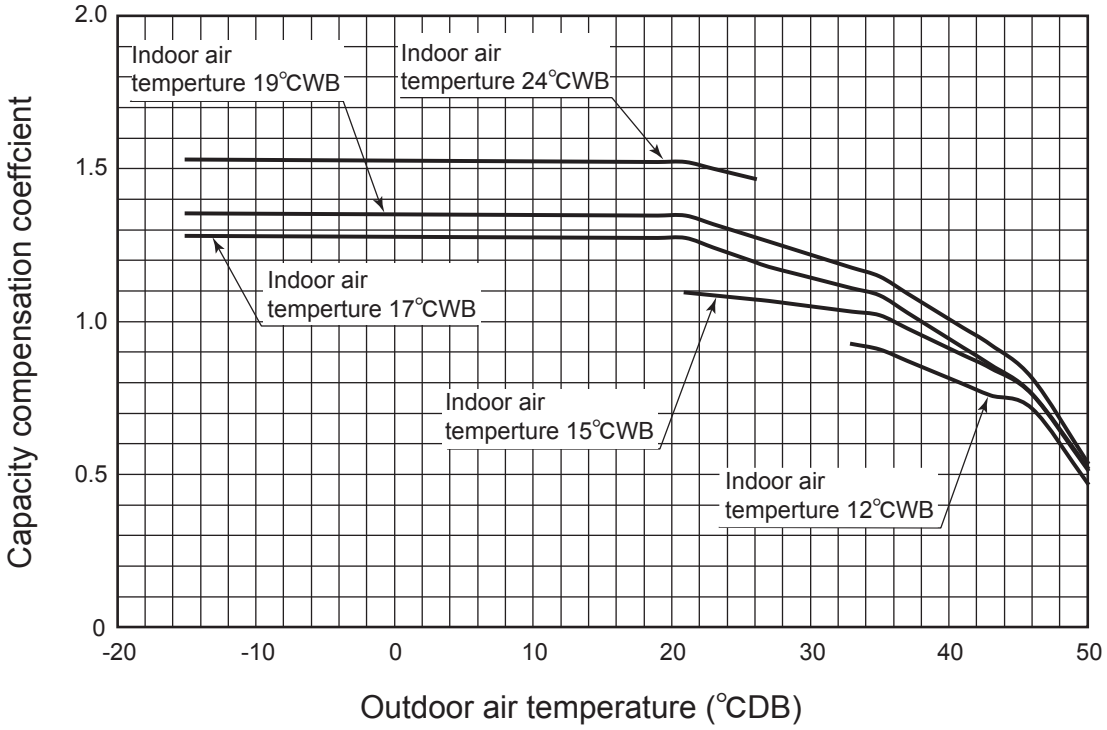


② Heating

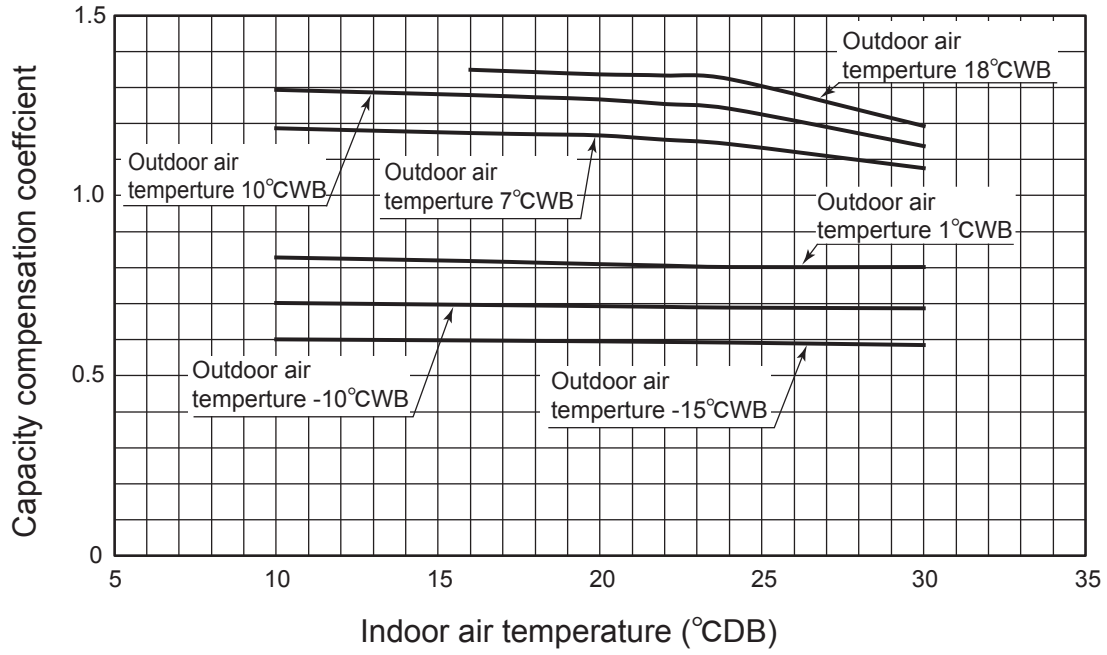


(II) Model FDC250VSA

① Cooling



② Heating



8.2 Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to air flow rate control (Fan speed)

Fan speed	P-Hi or Hi	Me	Lo
Coefficient	1.00	0.97	0.95

8.3 Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

It is necessary to correct the cooling and heating capacity in relation to the one way equivalent piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Models FDC200, 250

Equivalent piping length (1) (m)			7.5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75
Heating			1	0.998	0.995	0.991	0.988	0.984	0.981	0.977	0.974	0.970	0.967	0.963	0.960	0.956	0.953
Cooling	FDC200 model	ϕ22.22	1	0.997	0.991	0.984	0.978	0.971	0.965	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	FDC250 model		1	0.995	0.985	0.975	0.965	0.954	0.944	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	FDC200 model	ϕ25.4	–	–	–	–	–	–	0.988	0.984	0.981	0.977	0.974	0.970	0.967	0.963	0.960
	FDC250 model		–	–	–	–	–	–	0.978	0.972	0.966	0.960	0.953	0.947	0.941	0.935	0.929
	FDC200 model	ϕ28.58	–	–	–	–	–	–	0.999	0.997	0.995	0.993	0.991	0.989	0.987	0.985	0.983
	FDC250 model		–	–	–	–	–	–	0.997	0.994	0.990	0.987	0.983	0.980	0.976	0.973	0.969

Note (1) Calculate the equivalent length using the following formula.
However, install the piping so that the piping length is within +5 m of the limit length (actual length) for the respective types.

• Equivalent Length =Actual Length + (Equivalent bend length x number of bends in the piping.)
Equivalent length per bend.

Gas pipe diameter (mm)	ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ19.05	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58
Equivalent bend length	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45

8.4 Height difference between the indoor unit and outdoor unit

When the outdoor unit is located below indoor units in cooling mode, or when the outdoor unit is located above indoor units in heating mode, the correction coefficient mentioned in the below table should be subtracted from the value in the above table.

Height difference between the indoor unit and outdoor unit in the vertical height difference	5m	10m	15m	20m	25m	30m
Adjustment coefficient	0.99	0.98	0.97	0.96	0.95	0.94

Piping length limitations

Item \ Model	FDC200, 250
Max. one way piping length	70m
Max. vertical height difference	Outdoor unit is higher 30m Outdoor unit is lower 15m

Note (1) Values in the table indicate the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

How to obtain the cooling and heating capacity

Example : The net cooling capacity of the model FDU200VSAVH with the air flow "P-Hi", the piping length of 15m, the outdoor unit located 5m lower than the indoor unit, indoor wet-bulbtemperature at 19.0℃ and outdoor dry-bulb temperature 35℃ is

Net cooling capacity = 19.0 × 1.00 × 0.991 × 0.99 ≒ 18.6kW

- 19.0 : Net cooling total capacity of FDU200VSAVH (Outdoor temp. : 35℃DB Indoor temp. : 19℃WB) shown in 8.1
- 1.00 : Air flow : P-Hi shown in 8.2
- 0.991 : Piping length :15m (Gas pipe size is ϕ 22.22) shown in 8.3
- 0.99 : Height diff. : 5m (Outdoor unit : below) shown in 8.4

9. APPLICATION DATA

9.1 Installation of indoor unit

PJG012D039

Models FDU200VH, 250VH

(a) Indoor unit

- This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit and an outdoor air processing unit (FDU-F).
- For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 32. For remote control installation, refer to page 36. For wireless kit installation, refer to page 165. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 48.

The case of FDU-F

- The total connection capacity of the other air conditioning units and the outdoor air processing f units must be from 50% to 100% (the total includes the outdoor air processing unit).

The connection capacity of the outdoor air processing unit must not exceed 30% of the capacity o the outdoor unit.

- Single outdoor air processing unit can be used alone. The connection capacity of the outdoor air processing unit must be from 50% to 100% of the total capacity of the outdoor unit. Maximum number of outdoor air processing units that can be connected to the outdoor unit is 2units.
- Capacities of the suction air processing units can be calculated with the forllowing formulas. FDU1800FKXZE1 = 224, FDU2400FKXZE1 = 280

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
  In case of R32, the refrigerant could be ignited because of its flammability.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air-conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R32 or R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short-circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air-conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air-conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air-conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  Do not install the motion sensor mounting panel at following places. It could cause detection error, incapacity of detection, or characteristic degradation.
  • Place where vibration is applied to it for a long period of time.
  • Place where static electricity or electromagnetic wave generates.
  • Place where it is exposed to high temperature or humidity for a long period of time.
  • Dusty place or where the lens face could be fouled or damaged.
  It can affect performance or function and etc.
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air-conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air-conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

○This model is middle static ducted type air-conditioning unit. Therefore, do not use this model for direct blow type air-conditioning unit.

①Before installation

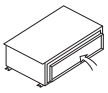
●Install correctly according to the installation manual.

●Confirm the following points:

○Unit type/Power source specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For hanging	For drain pipe					
	FDU - FDU-F		FDUA			
Flat washer (M10)	Hose clamp	Soket	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
						
8	2	1	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For drain soket mounting	For drain pipe mounting	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting



Accessory parts are stored inside this suction side.

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air-conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.

  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air-conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above. If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.

  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air-conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air-conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

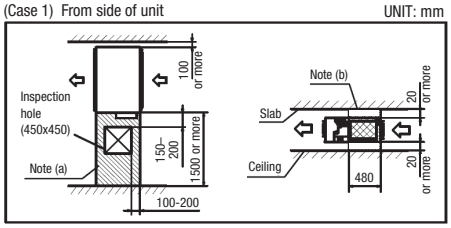
Space for installation and service

●Make installation altitude over 2.5m.

(Indoor Unit)

Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

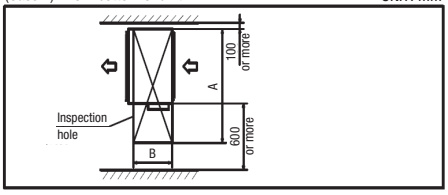
(Case 1) From side of unit UNIT: mm



Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out fan motor. (marked area)

(b) Install refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and wiring so as not to cross marked area.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit UNIT: mm

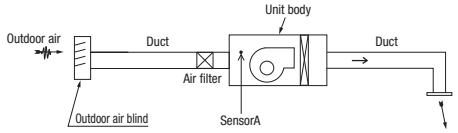


(Size of inspection hole) UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1900
B	880

③Cautions for the handling and installation place of outdoor air processing unit

①This unit monitors the outdoor air temperature at the position of sensor A in the figure, and controls the start and stop with the thermostat based on the value of sensor A and the setting temperature by the remote control.



Remote control's setting temperature indicates the outdoor air temperature that controls the start and stop of operation by the thermostat.

When the thermostat is turned off, the operation is changed to the fan mode so that the outdoor air is blown out directly into the room. For example if the remote control is set to 22°C in cooling operation, and if the outdoor air temperature is 22°C or lower at that time, the unit will go into fan operation.

②When there is a difference between the air-conditioning temperature in the room during cooling operation and the temperature of air blown out from the outdoor air processing unit, dewing water may drip from the unit. To prevent the dewing, provide a sufficient heat insulation means at the air blow outlet.

③Since the air blow outlet on the outdoor air processing unit may blow out the outdoor air directly, orient the outlet in such a way that it will not blow air directly to persons in the room.

④Since the unit controls the thermostat start and stop by monitoring the outdoor air temperature, it is prohibited to monitor the room temperature by means of the room temperature monitoring by changing the thermostat setting at the remote control side and the optional remote thermistor. Otherwise, dewing water may drip from the unit at lower outdoor air temperatures during cooling operation.

⑤Install the remote control of the outdoor air processing unit at a place closer to the administrator to avoid the end user from using the remote control.

When handing over the unit to the end user, make sure to explain sufficiently about the foregoing cautions, the installation place of the remote control for the outdoor air processing unit and the position of air blow outlet.

④Preparation before installation

●If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.

○For grid ceiling

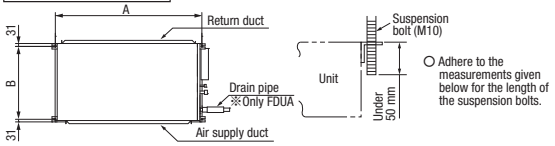
When the suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.

When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

●Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

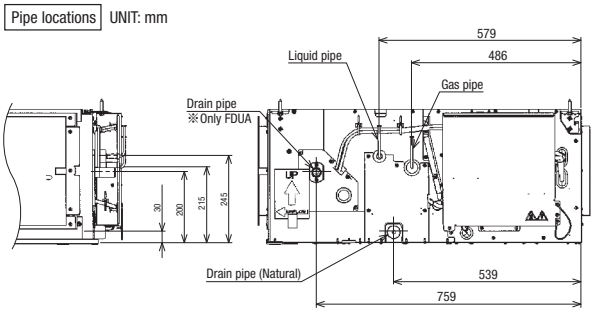
Suspension Bolt Location



UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1634
B	831

Pipe locations UNIT: mm



⑤Installation of indoor unit

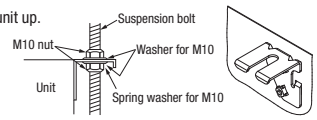
Work procedure

1. Prepare a hole of specified size on the ceiling.
2. Install suspension bolts at specified positions.
3. Make sure to use four suspension bolts.
4. Adjust the indoor unit position in order to fit with it.
5. Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally. Confirm the levelness of the indoor unit with a level gauge or transparent hose filled with water. Keep the height difference at both ends of the indoor unit within 3mm.
6. Tighten four upper nuts and fix the unit after height and levelness adjustment.

Installation

[Hanging]

Hang the unit up.

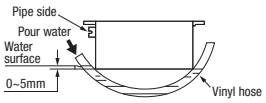


If the measurements between the unit and the ceiling hole do not match upon installation, it may be adjusted with the long holed installation tool.

Adjustment for horizontality

○Either use a level vial, or adjust the level according to the method below.

●Adjust so the bottom side of the unit will be leveled with the water surface as illustrated below.



Let the pipe side be slightly sloped.

○If the unit is not leveled, it may cause malfunctions or inoperation of the float switch.

⑥Duct Work

①A corrugated board (for preventing sputtering) is attached to the main body of the air-conditioner (on the outlet port). Do not remove it until connecting the duct.

●An air filter can be provided on the main body of the air conditioner (on the inlet port). Remove it when connecting the duct on the inlet port.

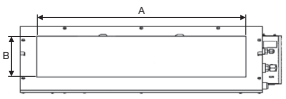
②Blowout duct

●Use rectangular duct to connect with unit.

●Duct size for each unit is as shown below.

UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1450
B	250



●Duct should be at their minimum length.

●We recommend to use sound and heat insulated duct to prevent it from condensation.

●Connect duct to unit before ceiling attachment.

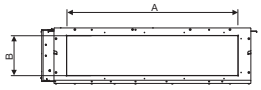
③Inlet port

●When connecting the duct to the inlet port, remove the air filter if it is fitted to the inlet port.

●Inlet port size for each unit is as shown below.

UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1450
B	250

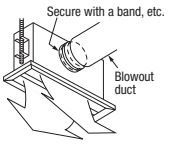


●Make sure to insulate the duct to prevent dewing on it.

④Install the specific blowout duct in a location where the air will circulate to the entire room.

●Conduct the installation of the specific blowout hole and the connection of the duct before attaching them to the ceiling.

●Insulate the area where the duct is secured by a band for dew condensation prevention.

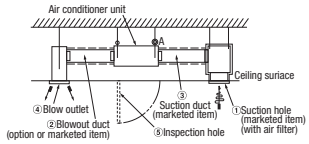


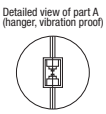
⑤Make sure provide an inspection hole on the ceiling. It is indispensable to service electric equipment, motor, functional components and cleaning of heat exchanger.

⑥Make sure to insulate ducts, in order to prevent dewing on them.

⑦Connect the duct with care not to touch the blower (fan motor) with fingers. Or, when inhaling air directly from the suction side, install an air filter at the air suction inlet.

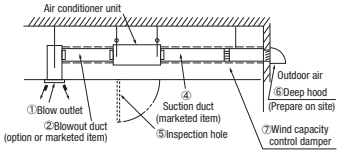
FDU · FDUA





⑥Duct Work (continued)

FDU-F



Bad example of duct work

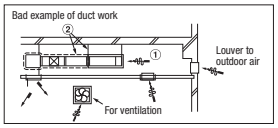
①If a duct is not provided at the suction side but it is substituted with the space over the ceiling, humidity in the space will increase by the influence of capacity of ventilation fan, strength of wind blowing against the out door air louver, weather (rainy day) and others.

a)Moisture in air is likely to condense over the external plates of the unit and to drip on the ceiling. Unit should be operated under the conditions as listed in the above table and within the limitation of wind volume. When the building is a concrete structure, especially immediately after the construction, humidity tends to rise even if the space over the ceiling is not substituted in place of a duct. In such occasion, it is necessary to insulate the entire unit with glass wool (25mm). (Use a wire net or equivalent to hold the glass wool in place.)

b)It may run out the allowable limit of unit operation (Example: When outdoor air temperature is 35°C DB, suction air temperature is 27°C WB) and it could result in such troubles as compressor overload, etc..

c)There is a possibility that the blow air volume may exceed the allowable range of operation due to the capacity of ventilation fan or strength of wind blowing against external air louver so that drainage from be heat exchanger may fall to reach the drain pan but leak outside (Example: drip on to the ceiling) with consequential water leakage in the room.

②If vibration damping is not conducted between the unit and the duct, and between the unit and the slab, vibration will be transmitted to the duct and vibration noise may occur. Also, vibration may be transmitted from the unit to the slab. Vibration damping must be performed.



⑦Refrigerant pipe

Caution

●Use the new refrigerant pipe.
When re-using the existing pipe system for R22 or R407C, pay attention to the following items.
・Change the flare nuts with the attached ones, and reprocess the flare parts.
・Do not use thin-walled pipes.

●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.

●Do not use any refrigerant other than the designated refrigerant.
Using other refrigerant except R32 or R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.

●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.

●Use special tools for R32 or R410A refrigerant.

●The indoor unit pipes allow the maintenance panel to be removed. Therefore, regardless of the piping direction, there should be a straight section of 400 mm or more.

Work procedure

1. When brazing work, perform it while cool down around the brazing port with wet towels to prevent the overheating.
2. After check the gas leak test, install the heat insulation (prepare on site) to the brazing port of the indoor unit.
   ●Be sure to perform the heat insulation both of gas side piping with liquid side piping.
   ※If heat insulation does not install to the pipes, dew condensation may occurs and it may cause the water leakage.
   The thickness of the heat insulation should be more than 20mm.
3. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.
   ○The brazing port size of the indoor unit.

Single unit	Liquid/Gas	Size	Multi unit	Liquid/Gas	Size
Type 200	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52	Type 224	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52
	Gas piping	ϕ 25.4		Gas piping	ϕ 19.05
Type 250 280	Liquid piping	ϕ 12.7	Type 280	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52
	Gas piping	ϕ 25.4		Gas piping	ϕ 22.22

※Please refer to the installation sheet of outdoor units for details.

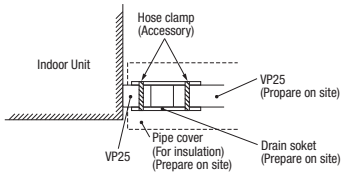
⑧Drain pipe

Caution

- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

1. Insert the supplied drain hose (the end made of soft PVC) to the step of the drain socket on the indoor unit and fix it securely with the clamp.
   - ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.

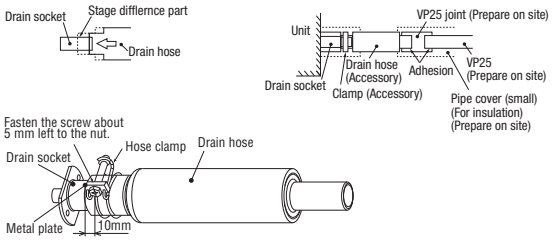


○The cases of FDUA and mouting a Drain-up KIT (optional parts)

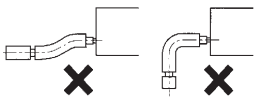
Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.

Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw about 5mm left to the nut.

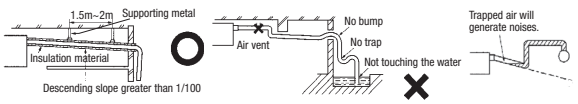
- ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.
- ●Do not use acetone-based adhesives to connect to the drain socket.



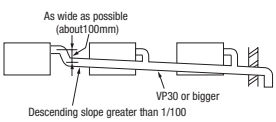
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   - ● Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose. It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   - ● The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   - ●Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   - ●Do not set up air vent.



●When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



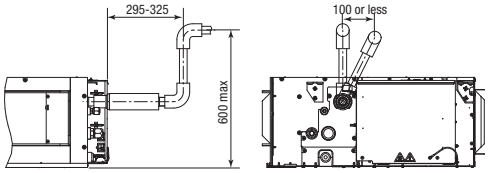
⑧Drain pipe (continued)

4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   - ●Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.

Drain up

○The cases of FDUA and mounting a drain-up KIT (optional parts)

- ● The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



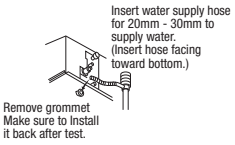
Otherwise, the construction point makes it same as drain pipe construction.

Drain test

1. Conduct a drain test after completion of the electrical work.
2. During the trail, make sure that drain flows properly through the piping and that no water leaks from connections.
3. In case of a new building, conduct the test before it is furnished with the ceiling.
4. Be sure to conduct this test even when the unit is installed in the heating season.

Procedures

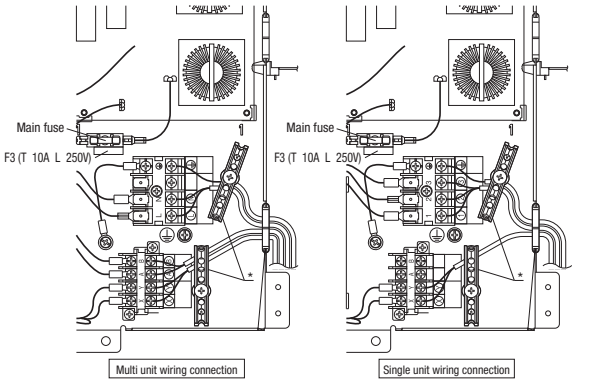
1. Supply about 2000 cc of water to the unit through the air outlet by using a feed water pump.
2. Check the drain while cooling operation.



⑨Wiring-out position and wiring connection

- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.



* Please fix the wiring in the band not to move even if it pulls.

Main fuse specification

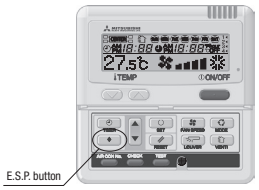
Specification	Part No.
T 10A L 250V	SSA 564A149AL

⑩External static pressure setting

You can set External Static Pressure (E.S.P.) by method of MANUAL SETTING on remote control.
Indoor unit will control fan-speed to keep rated air flow volume at each fan speed setting (Lo-Uhi)
You can set required E.S.P. by wired remote control that calculated with the set air flow rate and pressure loss of the duct connected.

- How to set E.S.P. by wired remote control
  ① Push "◆" marked button(E.S.P. button).
  ② Select indoor unit No. by using ◆ button.
  ③ Select setting No. by using ◆ button and set E.S.P. by ( ) button.
  See detailed procedure in technical manual.

Notice
You can not set E.S.P. by wireless remote control.



With E.S.P. setting, confirm that actual E.S.P. agrees with E.S.P. setting.
When E.S.P. setting is higher than actual E.S.P., the air flow rate becomes excessively higher. This will cause water leakage if water splashes.
When E.S.P. setting is lower than actual E.S.P., the air flow rate becomes excessively lower and the cooling or heating may become ineffective.
In order to reduce the risk above the factory E.S.P. setting is set within the range of 80 – 150 Pa (E.S.P. setting No. 8 – 15). Be sure to use within the range of 80 – 150 Pa in actual operations. If actual E.S.P. is lower than 80 Pa, it may cause water leakage.

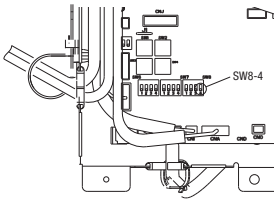
Setting No.	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
E.S.P (Pa)	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150

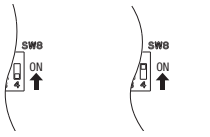
※ If 1 – 7 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 8.
If 16 – 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 15.
Factory default is No. 8.

The Case of FDU-F

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
E.S.P. (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120

※ If 13-20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 12.
※ Factory default is No. 8.





SW8-4:OFF (E.S.P. setting No. 8-15)
SW8-4:ON (E.S.P. setting No. 1-19)

⑩External static pressure setting

If SW8-4 is turned to "ON", E.S.P. setting range can be changed to 10 – 200 Pa (E.S.P. setting No. 1 – 19). This should not be used when actual E.S.P. cannot be confirmed, because the risk above becomes higher.

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
E.S.P. (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	200

※ If 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 19.

⑪Check list after installation

●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

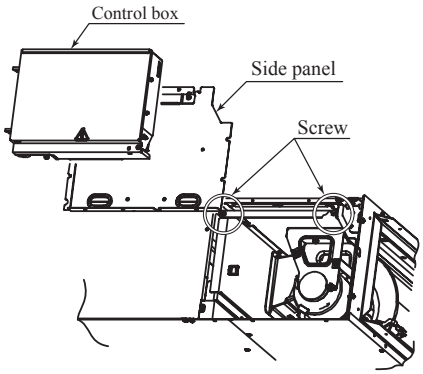
Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Power source voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate ?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
No mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	
Is setting of E.S.P finished?	Excessive air flow, water drop blow out	

(b) Replacement procedure of the fan unit

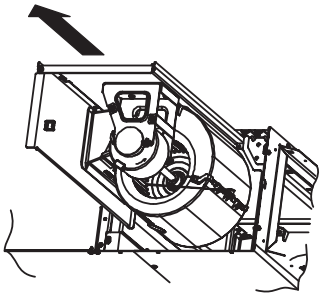
Notes(1) The unit is a heavy item. It must be supported securely and handled with care not to drop when it is necessary to replace.
(2) For the maintenance space, refer to page 27.

Models FDU200VH, 250VH

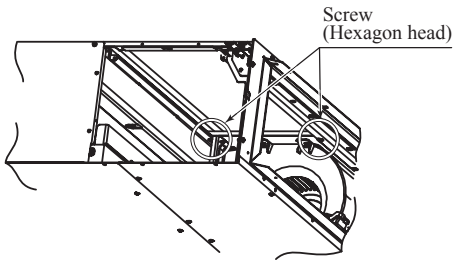
(i) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the unit located at the near side.



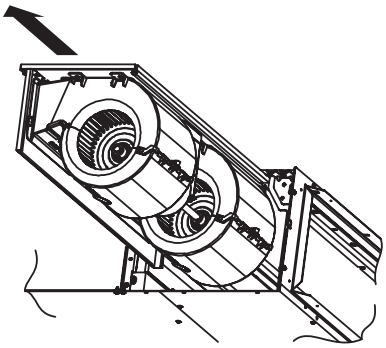
(ii) Take out the fan unit located at the near side in the arrow direction.



(iii) Remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the fan unit located at the far side.



(iv) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.



9.2 Electric wiring work installation

PSC012D117A B

Models FDU200VH, 250VH

Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electrician qualified by a local power provider according to the electrical installation technical standards and interior wiring regulations applicable to the installation site.

Security instructions

- **Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.**
- **The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .**
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- **The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:**
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- **Accord with following items. Otherwise, there will be the risks of electric shock and fire caused by overheating or short-circuit.**

⚠WARNING

- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire. ❗
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire. ❗
- **Use the genuine option parts. And installation should be performed by a specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it could cause water leakage, electric shock and fire. ❗
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ⃠
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire. ❗
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan. ❗
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running. ❗

⚠CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short-circuit. ⏚
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks. ❗
- **Make sure to install earth leakage breaker on power source line. (countermeasure thing to high harmonics.)**
  Absence of breaker could cause electric shock. ❗
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire. ❗
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire. ⃠
- **Use power source line of correct capacity.**
  Using incorrect capacity one could cause electric leak, abnormal heat generation and fire. ❗
- **Do not mingle solid cord and stranded cord on power source and signal side terminal block.**
  In addition, do not mingle difference capacity solid or stranded cord.
  Inappropriate cord setting could cause loosing screw on terminal block, bad electrical contact, smoke and fire. ⃠
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown. ⃠
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury. ⃠

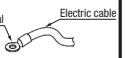
Control mode switching

- The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way. ( ) is the default setting)

Switch No.	Control Content	
SW2	Indoor unit address (0-Fh)	
SW5-1	Master/Slave Switching (plural /Slave unit Setting)	
SW5-2		
SW6-1–4	Model capacity setting	
SW7 —1	ON	Operation check, Drain pump motor test run
	OFF	Normal operation

①Electrical Wiring Connection

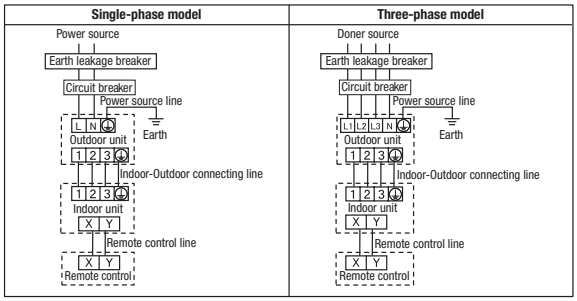
- Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electlician an qualified by a local power provider. These wiring specifications are determined on the assumption that the following instructions are observed:
  ① Do not use cords other than copper ones.
  Do not use any supply line lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  – braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51), if allowed in the relevant part 2;
  – ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53);
  – flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);
  – ordinary polyvinyl chloride sheathed cord (code designation 60227 IEC 53);
  ② Connect the power source to the outdoor unit.
  ③ Pay extra attention so as not to confuse signal line and power source line connection, because an error in their connection can be burn all the boards at once.
- Connect ground wires before connecting wires between the indoor and outdoor units and between indoor units. The ground wires need to be longer than the wires between the indoor and outdoor units, and protected from undue stress.
- Do not turn on the power source before completing the work.
- The ground wires must be connected by the Class D grounding connection.
- Use the round crimp terminals for connections to the terminal block.



- Use dedicated branch circuits, avoiding combination with other devices. Otherwise, it could trip the power source breaker, resulting in secondary accidents.
- Install the overcurrent and earth leakage breakers (sensitivity current: 30 mA) specified to respective models.
- Do not connect indoor and outdoor signal cables to extension cables on the way. If the joint is wetted with intruding water, it could cause a ground insulation failure or poor connection, resulting in communication errors. (If it is inevitable to connect cables on the way, make sure to prevent the water intrusion completely.)
- When running wires (wires for power source, remote control, connecting between indoor and outdoor units, or other) behind the ceiling, protect them using copper or other pipes against assault by rat, or other.
- It is up to 3.5 mm² the size of power source cables connected to indoor units. When using cables of 5.5 mm² or larger, provide a dedicated pull box for branching connection to indoor units.
- If signal and power source cables are connected mistakenly, it could burn down all PCBs.
  ① Even if the power source of 220/240/380/415 V is connected mistakenly to A-B signal cable, it is protected at initial occasion only.
  ② If the remote control fails to detect the unit No. (address) at 15 minutes after turning the power on, check and repair all signal cables for misconnection.
  ③ Cut the jumper wire J10SL1 of burnt PCB, and reconnect connectors CnK (yellow) and CnK1 (white) to CnK2 (black).
  ④ If any anomaly is found on wires between the A-B terminal block and the PCB, replace them.
- At the outside of indoor and outdoor units, take care to avoid direct contacts between remote control and power source cables.
- In no event connect the power source of 220/240/380/415 V to the remote control terminal block. It could cause failures.
- Connections of wiring between units, ground wire and remote control cable
  ① When connecting wires between units, ground wire or remote control wire, connect them according to the number of terminals on the power source terminal block or signal terminal block in the control box. Connect the ground wire to the ground terminal on the power source terminal block.
  ② Make sure to install an earth leakage breaker for the power source. Select a breaker for inverter circuit.
  ③ When the earth leakage breaker is exclusive for the earth leakage protection, it is necessary to connect also an isolating switch (Switch + Class B fuse) or wiring circuit breaker in series to the earth leakage breaker.
  ④ Install the isolating switch close to the unit.
- Connect wires securing by tightening screws firmly. Confirm also no connector or wire (from terminal) is disconnected in the control box.
- When installing an auxiliary electric heater, consult the electric heater manual or technical data.

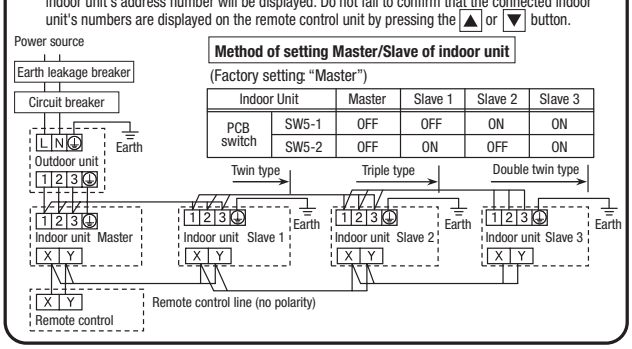
Cable connection for single unit installation

①As for connecting method of power source, select from following connecting patterns. In principle, do not directly connect power source line to inside unit.
※As for exceptional connecting method of power source, discuss with the power provider of the country with referring to technical documents, and follow its instruction.
②For cable size and circuit breaker selection, refer to the outdoor unit installation manual.



Cable connection for a V multi configuration installation

①Connect the same pairs number of terminal block "①, ②, and ③"and " ⓧ and ⓨ " between master and slave indoor units.
②Do the same address setting of all inside units belong to same refrigerant system by rotary switch SW2 on indoor unit's PCB (Printed circuit board).
③Set slave indoor unit as "slave 1" through "slave 3" by address switch SW5-1, 5-2 on PCB.
④When the AIR CON No. button on the remote control unit is pressed after turning on the power, an indoor unit's address number will be displayed. Do not fail to confirm that the connected indoor unit's numbers are displayed on the remote control unit by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.



Method of setting Master/Slave of indoor unit

(Factory setting: "Master")

Indoor Unit		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
PCB switch	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON

②Remote Control, Wiring and functions

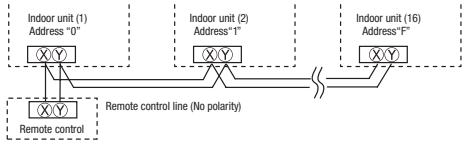
●Do not install it on the following places
①Places exposed to direct sunlight
②Places near heat devices
③High humidity places
④Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
⑤Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
⑥Uneven surface

Installation and wiring of remote control

①Install remote control referring to the attached installation manual.
②Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm²×2 cores wires or cables.
The insulation thickness is 1mm or more. (on-site configuration)
③Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm². Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m ..... 0.5mm² × 2 cores
Under 300m ..... 0.75mm² × 2 cores
Under 400m ..... 1.25mm² × 2 cores
Under 600m ..... 2.0mm² × 2 cores
④Avoid using multi-core cables to prevent malfunction.
⑤Keep remote control line away from earth (frame or any metal of building).
⑥Make sure to connect remote control line to the remote control and terminal block of indoor unit. (No polarity)

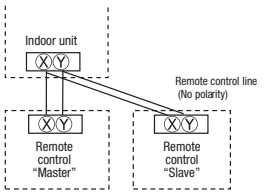
Control plural indoor units by a single remote control

①A remote control can control plural indoor units (Up to 16).
In above setting, all plural indoor units will operate under same mode and temperature setting.
②Connect all indoor units with 2 cores remote control line.
③Set unique remote control communication address from "0" to "F" to each inside unit by the rotary switch SW2 on the indoor unit's PCB.



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote control unit are used

A maximum of two remote control units can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)
The air-conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/slave setting of it.
Acceptable combination is "two (2) wired remote control", "one (1) wired remote control and one (1) wireless kit" or "two (2) wireless kits".
Set one to "Master" and the other to "Slave".
Note:The setting "Remote control unit sensor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control unit in the position where you want to check room temperature.

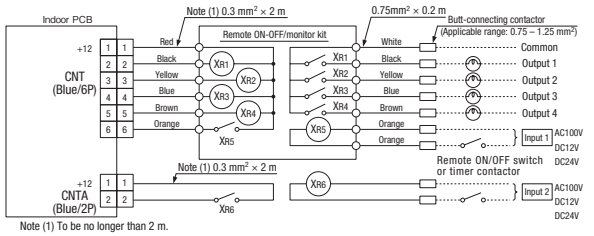


③Operation and confirmation from remote control

No.	Item	Operation from the eco touch remote controller (RC-EX series)	Operation from the standard remote control (RC-E series)
1	Check the number of units connected in the multi remote control system.	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [IU address]	① Press the AIR CON NO button to display the IU address. ② Press the ▲ or ▼ button and check addresses of connected indoor units one by one.
2	Check if each unit is connected properly in the remote control system.	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [IU address] ⇒ [Check run mode]	① Press the AIR CON NO button to display the IU address. ② Press the ▲ or ▼ button and select one of IU addresses. ③ Press the (MODE) button. The unit starts to blow air.
3	Setting main/sub remote controls	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [R/C function settings] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Main/Sub of R/C]	Set SW1 to "Sub" for the sub remote control unit.
4	Checking operation data	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Operation data]	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ "OPER DATA ▼" is displayed. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Select one of addresses for connected indoor units by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Select data by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.
5	Checking inspection display	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Error display]	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ "OPER DATA ▼" is displayed. ⇒ Press the ▼ button. ⇒ "ERROR DATA ▲" is displayed. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Data is displayed.
6	Cooling test run from remote control	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Installation settings] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Test run] ⇒ [Cooling test run] ⇒ [Start]	① Start the system by pressing the ON/OFF button. ② Select "❄ (Cool)" with the (MODE) button. ③ Press the TEST button for 3 seconds or longer. The screen display will switch to "❄ TEST RUN ▼". ④ Pressing the (SET) button, while the "❄ TEST RUN ▼" is displayed, starts the cooling test run. The screen display will switch to "❄ TEST RUN".
7	Trial operation of drain pump from remote control	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Installation settings] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Test run] ⇒ [Drain pump test run] ⇒ [Run]	① Start the system by pressing the ON/OFF button. The display will change to "❄ TEST RUN ▼". ② Press the ▼ button once to display "DRAIN PUMP ⇕". ③ Pressing the (SET) button starts the drain pump operation. The display will show "STOP TO STOP".

The menu configuration may vary depending on models of the remote control. If the model of your remote control is different, refer to the installation manual attached to the remote control.

④ Function of CNT connector of indoor printed circuit board



●XR1-4 are DC 12 V relays. (Equivalent to Omron's LY2F)
●XR5 is a DC 12 V, 24 V or 100 V relay. (Equivalent to Omron's MY2F)
●Maker and model of CnT connector (Site side)
Connector : Molex 5264-06
Terminal : Molex 5263T
●CnTA connector is used on FDT, or other. <Check with the specifications.> (Site side) Maker and model
Connector : J.S.T. Mfg. XAP02V-1-E
Terminal : J.S.T. Mfg. SXA-01T-P0.6
●Output 1 – 4 and input1/2 can be selected/set as required from following items.
Factory default is set as shown below.

Output

①	RUN output	⑧	Fan ON output 3
②	Heating output	⑨	Defrost/oil return output
③	Compressor ON output	⑩	Ventilation output
④	Inspection (error) output	⑪	Heater output
⑤	Cooling output	⑫	Free cleaning output
⑥	Fan ON output 1	⑬	Indoor overload error output
⑦	Fan ON output 2		

Input

①	RUN/STOP	⑤	Setting temp. shift
②	RUN permit prohibition	⑥	Compulsory thermostat OFF
③	Emergency stop	⑦	Temporary stop
④	Cooling/Heating	⑧	Silent mode

Factory default setting

CNT-2	Output 1	RUN output	CNT-5	Output 4	Inspection (error) output
CNT-3	Output 2	Heating output	CNT-6	Input 1	RUN/STOP
CNT-4	Output 3	Compressor ON output	CNTA	Input 2	RUN/STOP

●For the setting method, refer to the technical data.

⑤ Operation and setting from remote controller

A : Refer to the instruction manual for RC-EX series ○ : Nearly same function setting and operations are possible. *1: Remote controls before RC-EX1A don't have this function.
B : Refer to the installation manual for RC-EX series △ : Similar function setting and opperations are possible. *2: Remote controls before RC-EX3 don't have this function.
C : Loading a utility software vie Internet

Setting & display item			Description	RC-EX3A	RC-E5
1.Remote Controller network					
1	Control plural indoor units by a single remote controller		A remote control can control plural indoor units up to 16 (in one group of remote control network). An address is set to each indoor unit.		○
2	Main/sub setting of remote controllers		A pair of remote controls (including option wireless remote control) can be connected within the remote control network. Set one to "Main" and the other to "Sub".	B	○
2.TOP scrren, Switch manipulation					
1	Menu		"Control","State", or "Details" can be selected. (3-8)	A	
2	Operation mode		"Cooling","Heating","Fan","Dry" or "Auto" can be set.	A	○
3	Set temp.		"Set temperature" can be set by 0.5˚C interval.	A	○
4	Air flow direction		"Air flow direction" [Individual flap control] can be set. Select Enable or Disable for the "3D AUTO" (in case of FDK). *1	A	△
5	Fan speed		"Fan speed" can be set.	A	○
6	Timer setting		"Timer operation" can be set.	A	○
7	ON/OFF		"On/Off operation of the system" can be done.	A	○
8	F1 SW	*1	The system operates and is controlled according to the function specified to the F1 switch.	A	
9	F2 SW	*1	The system operates and is controlled according to the function specified to the F2 switch.	A	
10	Select the language	*2	Select the language to display on the remote control. ・ Select from English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Turkish, Portuguese, Russian,Polish, Japanese and Chinese.	A	
11	Zone ON/OFF operation		"On/Off for each zone" can be set.	A	
3.Useful functions					
1	Individual flap control		The moving range (the positions of upper limit and lower limit) of the flap for individual flap can be set. Set also the left and right limit positions for FDK. *1	A	△
2	Anti draft setting When the panel with the anti-draft function is assembled.	*1	・ Details .....You can set Enable or Disable for anti draft motion performed at each blow outlet in each operation mode. ・ ON/OFF setting .....You can set ON/OFF (operation/stop) of anti draft function for the enabled blow outlet set in Details. *2	A	
3	Timer settings	Set On timer by hour	The period of time to start operation after stopping can be set. ・ The period of set time can be set within range of 1 hour-12 houres (1hr interval). ・ The operation mode, set temp. and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
		Set Off timer by hour	The period of time to stop operation after starting can be set. ・ The period of set time can be set within range of 1 hour-12 houres (1hr interval).	A	△
		Set On timer by clock	The clock time to start operation can be set. ・ The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・ [Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched. ・ The operation mode, set temp. and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
		Set Off timer by clock	The clock time to stop operation can be set. ・ The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・ [Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched.	A	△
		Confirmation of timer settings	Status of timer settings can be seen.	A	
4	Favorite setting [Administrator password]	*1	Set the operation mode, setting temperature, air flow capacity and air flow direction for the choice setting operations. Set them for the Favorite set 1 and the Favorite set 2 respectively.	A	
5	Weekly timer		On timer and Off timer on weekly basis can be set. ・ 8-operation patterns per day can be set at a maximum. ・ The setting clock time can be set by 5-minute intervals. ・ Holiday setting is available. ・ The operation mode, set temp. and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
6	Home leave mode [Administrator password]		When leaving home for a long period like a vaction leave, the unit can be operated to maintain the room temperature not to be hotter in summer or not to be colder in winter. ・ The judgment to switch the operation mode (Cooring ⇔ Heating) is done by the both factors of the set temp. and outdoor air temp. ・ The set temp. and fan speed can be set.	A	
7	External Ventilation When the ventilator is combined.		On/Off operation of the external ventilator can be done. It is necessary to set from [Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [R/C function settings] ⇒ [Ventilation setting]. ・ If the "Independent" is selected for the ventilation setting, the ventilator can be operated or stopped.	A	○
8	Select the language		Select the language to display on the remote control. ・ Select from English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Turkish, Portuguese, Russian,Polish, Japanese and Chinese. *1	A	
9	Silent mode control	*2	The period of time to operate the unit by prioritizing the quietness can be set. ・ Start and end can be set for the silent mode	A	
4.Energy-saving setting			Administrator password		
1	Sleep timer		To prevent the timer from keeping ON, set hours to stop operation automatically with this timer. ・ The selectable range of setting time is from 30 to 240 minutes. (10 miuutes interval) ・ When setting is "Enable", this timer will activate whenever the ON timer is set.	A	△
2	Peak-cut timer		Power consumption can be reduced by restructing the maximum capacity. Set the [Start time], the [End time] and the capacity limit % (Peak-cut %). ・ 4-operation patterns per day can be set at maximum. ・ The setting time can be changed by 5-minute intervals. ・ The selectable range of capacity limit % (Peak-cut %) is from 0% to 40-80% (20% interval) ・ Holiday setting is available.	A	
3	Automatic temp set back		After the elapse of the set time period, the current set temp. will be set back to the [Set back time.] ・ The setting can be done in cooling and heating mode respectively. ・ Selectable range of the set time is from 20 min. to 120 min. (10 min. interval). ・ Set the [Set back temp.] by 1˚C interval.	A	△
4	Motion sensor control When the panel with the motion sensor is assembled.	*1	When the motion sensor is used, it is necessary to set Enable or Disable for the "Power control" and the "Auto-off".	A	
5.Filter					
1	Filter sign reset	Filter sign reset	The filter sign can be reset.	A	
		Setting next cleaning date	The next cleaning date can be set.	A	
6.User setting					
1	Internal settings	Clock setting	The current date and time can be set or revised. ・ If a power failure continues no longer than 80 hours, the clock continues to tick by the built-in power source.	A	△
		Date and time display	[Display] or [Hide] the date and/or time can be set, and [12H] or [24H] display can be set.	A	
		Summer time	When select [Enable], the +1hour adjustment of current time can be set. When select [Disable], the [Summer time] adjustment can be reset.	A	
		Contrast	The contrast of LCD can be adjusted higher or lower.	A	
		Backlight	Switching on/off a light can be set and period of the lighting time can be set within the range of 5 sec.-90 sec. (5 sec. interval).	A	
		Controller sound	It can set with or without [Control sound (beep sound)] at touch panel.	A	
		Operation lamp luminance *1	This is used to adjust the luminance of operation lamp.	A	
2	Administrator settings [Administrator password]	Permission/Prohibition setting	・ Permission/Prohibition setting of operation can be set. [On/Off] [Change set temp] [Change operation mode] [Change flap direction] [Change fan speed] [High power operation] [Energy-saving operation] [Timer] Request for administrator can be set. [Individual flap control] [Weekly timer] [Select the language] [Anti draft setting] *1	A	△
		Outdoor unit silent mode timer	The period of time to operate the outdoor unit by prioritizing the quiteness can be set. ・ The [Start time] and the [End time] for operating outdoor unit in silent mode can be set. ・ The period of the operation time can be set once aday by 5 minutes interal.	A	△
		Setting temp range	The upper/lower limit of temp. setting range can be set. ・ The limitation of indoor temp. setting range can be set for each operation mode in cooling and heating.	A	△

⑤ Operation and setting from remote controller (continued)

Setting & display item			Description	RC-EX3A	RC-E5
2	Administrator settings	Temp increment setting	The temp increment setting can be changed by 0.5˚C or 1.0˚C.	A	
		Set temp display	Ways of displaying setting temperatures can be selected.	A	
	[Administrator password]	R/C display setting	Register [Room name] [Name of I/U] [Zone name] Display [Indoor temp display] or not. Display [Error code display] or not. Display [Heating stand-by display] [Defrost operation display] [Auto cooling/heating display] [Display temp of R/C, Room, Outdoor] or not	A	△
		Change administrator password	The administrator password can be changed. (Default setting is "0000")	A	
			The administrator password can be reset.	B	
		F1/F2 function setting *1	Functions can be set for F1 and F2. Selectable functions: [Anti draft ON/OFF] *2 [High power operation], [Energy-saving operation], [Silent mode cont.], [Home leave mode], [Favorite set 1], [Favorite set 2] and [Filter sign reset].	A	
7.Service setting					
1	Installer settings	Installation date	The [Installation date] can be registed. ・When registering the [Instaration date], the [Next service date] is displayed automatically. (For changing the [Next service date], please refer the item of [Service & Maintenance])	B	
	[Service password]	Company information	The [Company information] can be registed and can be displayed on the R/C. ・The [Company] can be registered within 26 characters. ・The [Phone No.] can be registed within 13 digits.	B	
		Test run	On/Off operation of the test run can be done.	B	○
		Cooling test run	The [Cooling test run] can be done at 5˚C of set temp. for 30 minutes.		
		Drain pump test run	Only drain pump can be operated.		
		Duct unit settings		B	
		Static pressure adjustment	In case of combination with only the ducted indoor unit which has a function of static pressure adjustment, the static pressure is adjustable. ・It can be set for each indoor unit individually.		
		Zone settings	Set when performing zone control.		
		Zone settings reset	Resets all zone control settings.		
		Change auto-address	The set address of each indoor unit decided by auto-address setting method can be changed to any other address. (For multiple KX units only)	B	△
		Address setting of main IU	Main indoor unit address can be set. ・Only the Main indoor unit can change operation mode and the Sub indoor units dominated by the Main indoor shall follow. ・The Main indoor unit can domain 10 indoor units at a maximum.	B	△
		IU back-up function	When a pair of indoor units (2 groups) is connected to one unit of remote control, it can be set Enable or Disable for the [IU rotation], [IU capacity back-up] and [IU fault back-up]	B	
		Motion sensor setting *1 When the panel with the motion sensor is assembled.	Set Enable or Disable for the infrared sensor detectors of indoor units connected to the remote control. If Disable is selected, it cannot be control the motion sensor control for the energy-saving setting.	B	
2	R/C function setting	Main/Sub R/C	The R/C setting of [Main/Sub] can be changed.	B	○
	[Service password]	Return air temp	When two or more indoor units are connected to one unit of remote control, suction sensors, which are used for the judgement by thermostat, can be selected. ・It can be selected from [Individual], [Master IU] and [Average temp].	B	
		R/C sensor	It can be set the mode to switch to the remote control sensor. It can be selected from cooling and heating.	B	△
		R/C sensor adjustment	The offset value of [R/C sensor] sensing temp. can be set respectively in heating and cooling.	B	△
		Operation mode	Enable or Disable can be set for each operation mode.	B	△
		ºC / ºF	Set the unit for setting temperatures. ・°C or °F can be selected.	B	
		Fan speed	Fan speeds can be selected.	B	○
		External input	When two or more indoor units are connected to one unit of remote control, the range to apply CNT inputs can be set.	B	○
		Upper/lower flap control	[Stop at fixed position] or [Stop at any position] can be selected for the upper and lower louvers.	B	○
		Left/right flap control *1	[Fixed position stop] or [Stop at any position] can be selected for the right and left louvers.	B	
		Ventilation setting	Combination control for ventilator can be set.	B	○
		Auto-restart	The operation control method after recovery of power failure happened during operation can be set.	B	○
		Auto temp setting	[Enable] or [Disable] of [Auto temp setting] can be selected.	B	
		Auto fan speed	[Enable] or [Disable] of [Auto fan speed] can be selected.	B	
3	IU settings	Fan speed setting	The fan speed for indoor units can be set.	B	○
		Filter sign	The setting of filter sign display timer can be done from following patterns.	B	○
	[Service password]	External input 1	The connect of control by external input 1 can be changed.	B	○
		External input 1 signal	The type of external input 1 signal can be changed.	B	○
		External input 2	The connect of control by external input 2 can be changed.	B	
		External input 2 signal	The type of external input 2 signal can be changed.	B	
		Heating thermo-OFF temp adjustment	The judgement temp. of heating themo-off can be adjusted within the range from 0 to +3˚C (1˚C interval)	B	△
		Return temperature adjustment	The sensing temp. of return air temp. sensor built in the indoor unit can be adjusted within the range of ±2˚C.	B	△
		Fan control in cooling thermo-OFF	Fan control, when the cooling thermostat is turned OFF, can be changed.	B	○
		Fan control in heating thermo-OFF	Fan control, when the heating thermostat is turned OFF, can be changed.	B	○
		Anti-frost temp	Judgment temperature for the anti-frost control during cooling can be changed.	B	○
		Anti-frost control	When the anti-frost control of indoor unit in cooling is activated, the fan speed can be changed.	B	○
		Drain pump operation	In any operation mode in addition to cooling and dry mode, the setting of drain pump operation can be done.	B	○
		Keep fan operating after cooling is stopped	The time period residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in cooling mode can be set.	B	○
		Keep fan operating after heating is stopped	The time period residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
		Intermittent fan operation in heating	The fan operation rule following the residual fan operation after stopping or themo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
		Fan circulator operation	In case that the fan is operated as the circulator, the fan control rule can be set.	B	
		Control pressure adjust	When only the OA processing units are operated, control pressure value can be changed.	B	
		Auto operation mode	The [Auto rule selection] for switching the operation mode automatically can be selected from 3 patterns.	B	
		Thermo. rule setting	When selecting [Outdoor air temp. control], the judgment temp can be offset by outdoor temp..	B	
		Auto fan speed control	Auto switching range for the auto fan speed control can be set.	B	
		IU overload alarm	If the difference between the setting temperature and the suction temperature becomes larger than the temperature difference set for the overload alarm, at 30 minutes after the start of operation, the overload alarm signal is transmitted from the external output (CNT-5).	B	
		External output setting *1	Functions assigned to the external outputs 1 to 4 can be changed.	B	
4	Service & Maintenance	IU address	Max 16 indoor units can be connected to one remote control, and all address No. of the connected indoor units can be displayed. ・The indoor unit conforming to the address No. can be identified by selecting the address No. and tapping [Check] to operate the indoor fan.	B	○
	[Service password]	Next service date	The [Next service date] can be registered. ・The [Next service date] and [Company information] is displayed on the message screen.	A B	○
		Operation data	The [Operation data] for indoor unit and outdoor unit can be displayed.	B	○
		Error display		B	△
		Error history	The error history can be displayed.		
		Display anomaly data	The operation data just before the latest error stop can be displayed.		
		Erase anomaly data	Anomaly operation data can be erased.		
		Reset periodical check	The timer for the periodical check can be reset.		
		Saving IU settings	The I/U settings memorized in the indoor PCB connected to the remote control can be saved in the memory of the remote control.	B	
		Special settings	[Erase IU address] [CPU reset] [Restore of default setting] [Touch panel calibration]	B	△
		Indoor unit capacity display *1	Address No. and capacities of indoor units connected to the remote control are displayed.	B	
8.Contact company			Shows registered [Contact company] and [Contact phone].		
9.Inspection					
	Confirmation of Inspection		This is displayed when any error occurs.	A	△
10.PC connection					
	USB connection		Weekly timer setting and etc., can be set from PC.	C	

◆ Listed items may not function depending on the specifications of indoor and outdoor units which are combined.

9.3 Installation of wired remote control (Option parts)

(1) Model RC-EX3A

1. Safety precautions

PJZ012A171 Ⓐ

●Please read this manual carefully before starting installation work to install the unit properly.
Every one of the followings is important information to be observed strictly.

⚠WARNING	Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in serious consequences such as death, severe injury, etc.
⚠CAUTION	Failure to follow these instructions properly may cause injury or property damage.

It could have serious consequences depending on the circumstances.

●The following pictograms are used in the text.

⃠	Never do.	❗	Always follow the instructions given.

●Keep this manual at a safe place where you can consult with whenever necessary. Show this manual to installers when moving or repairing the unit. When the ownership of the unit is transferred, this manual should be given to a new owner.

⚠WARNING

❗ **Consult your dealer or a professional contractor to install the unit.**
Improper installation made on your own may cause electric shocks, fire or dropping of the unit.

❗ **Installation work should be performed properly according to this installation manual.**
Improper installation work may result in electric shocks, fire or break-down.

❗ **Be sure to use accessories and specified parts for installation work.**
Use of unspecified parts may result in drop, fire or electric shocks.

❗ **Install the unit properly to a place with sufficient strength to hold the weight.**
If the place is not strong enough, the unit may drop and cause injury.

❗ **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
Power source with insufficient and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.

❗ **Shut OFF the main power source before starting electrical work.**
Otherwise, it could result in electric shocks, break-down or malfunction.

⃠ **Do not modify the unit.**
It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.

❗ **Be sure to turn OFF the power circuit breaker before repairing/ inspecting the unit.**
Repairing/inspecting the unit with the power circuit breaker turned ON could cause electric shocks or injury.

⚠WARNING

Do not install the unit in appropriate environment or where inflammable gas could generate, flow in, accumulate or leak.

If the unit is used at places where air contains dense oil mist, steam, organic solvent vapor, corrosive gas (ammonium, sulfuric compound, acid, etc) or where acidic or alkaline solution, special spray, etc. are used, it could cause electric shocks, break-down, smoke or fire as a result of significant deterioration of its performance or corrosion.

Do not install the unit where water vapor is generated excessively or condensation occurs.

It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.

Do not use the unit in a place where it gets wet, such as laundry room.

It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.

Do not operate the unit with wet hands.

It could cause electric shocks.

Do not wash the unit with water.

It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.

Use the specified cables for wiring, and connect them securely with care to protect electronic parts from external forces.

Improper connections or fixing could cause heat generation, fire, etc.

Seal the inlet hole for remote control cable with putty.

If dew, water, insect, etc. enters through the hole, it could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

If dew or water enters the unit, it may cause screen display anomalies.

When installing the unit at a hospital, telecommunication facility, etc., take measures to suppress electric noises.

It could cause malfunction or break-down due to hazardous effects on the inverter, private power generator, high frequency medical equipment, radio communication equipment, etc.

The influences transmitted from the remote control to medical or communication equipment could disrupt medical activities, video broadcasting or cause noise interference.

Do not leave the remote control with its upper case removed.

If dew, water, insect, etc. enters through the hole, it could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

⚠CAUTION

Do not install the remote control at following places.

(1) It could cause break-down or deformation of remote control.
- Where it is exposed to direct sunlight
- Where the ambient temperature becomes 0 ˚C or below, or 40 ˚C or above
- Where the surface is not flat
- Where the strength of installation area is insufficient

(2) Moisture may be attached to internal parts of the remote control, resulting in a display failure.
- Place with high humidity where condensation occurs on the remote control
- Where the remote control gets wet

(3) Accurate room temperature may not be detected using the temperature sensor of the remote control.
- Where the average room temperature cannot be detected
- Place near the equipment to generate heat
- Place affected by outside air in opening/closing the door
- Place exposed to direct sunlight or wind from air-conditioner
- Where the difference between wall and room temperature is large

To connect to a personal computer via USB, use the dedicated software.
Do not connect other USB devices and the remote control at the same time.

It could cause malfunction or break-down of the remote control/personal computer.

2 . Accessories & Prepare on site

Following parts are provided.

Accessories	R/C main unit, wood screw (ϕ 3.5 x 16) 2 pcs., Quick reference

Following parts are arranged at site. Prepare them according to the respective installation procedures.

Item name	Q'ty	Remark
Switch box For 1 piece or 2 pieces (JIS C 8340 or equivalent)	1	These are not required when installing directly on a wall.
Thin wall steel pipe for electric appliance directly on a wall. (JIS C 8305 or equivalent)	As required	
Lock nut, bushing (JIS C 8330 or equivalent)	As required	
Lacing (JIS C 8425 or equivalent)	As required	Necessary to run R/C cable on the wall.
Putty	Suitably	For sealing gaps
Molly anchor	As required	
R/C cable (0.3 mm^2 x 2 pcs)	As required	See right table when longer than 100 m

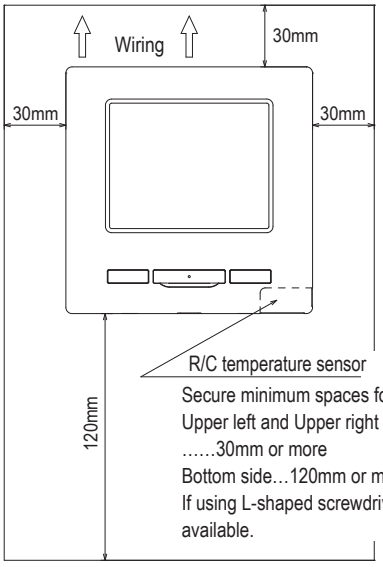
When the cable length is longer than 100 m, the max size for wires used in the R/C case is 0.5 mm^2 . Connect them to wires of larger size near the outside of R/C. When wires are connected, take measures to prevent water, etc. from entering inside.

≦ 200 m	0.5 mm^2 x 2 cores
≦ 300m	0.75 mm^2 x 2 cores
≦ 400m	1.25 mm^2 x 2 cores
≦ 600m	2.0 mm^2 x 2 cores

3 . Installation place

Secure the installation space shown in the figure.
For the installation method, “embedding wiring” or “exposing wiring” can be selected.
For the wiring direction, “Backward”, “Upper center” or “Upper left” can be selected.
Determine the installation place in consideration of the installation method and wiring direction.

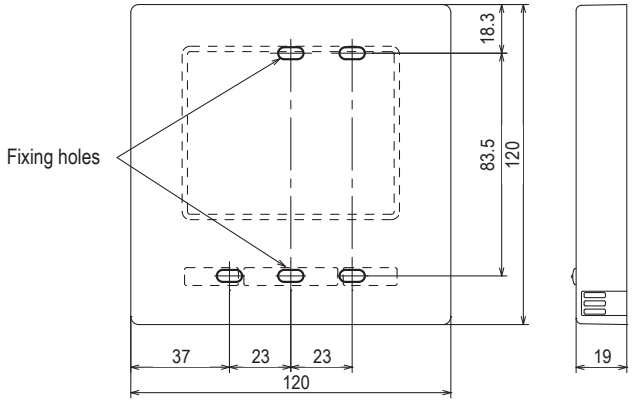
Installation space



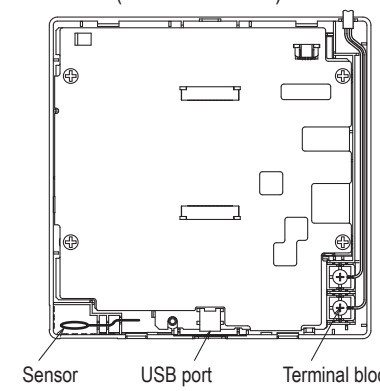
Secure minimum spaces for disassembling the case.
Upper left and Upper right sides
……30mm or more
Bottom side…120mm or more
If using L-shaped screwdriver, 50mm or more is available.

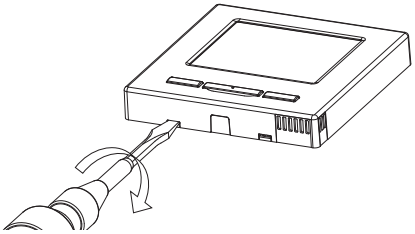
4 . Installation procedure

Perform installation and wiring work for the remote control according to the following procedure.
Dimensions (Viewed from front)



PCB side (Viewed from rear)





To disassemble the R/C case into the upper and lower pieces after assembling them once

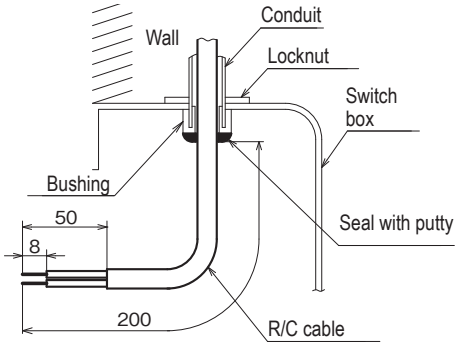
· Insert the tip of flat head screwdriver or the like in the recess at the lower part of R/C and twist it lightly to remove. It is recommended that the tip of the screwdriver be wrapped with tape to avoid damaging the case.

Take care to protect the removed upper case from moisture or dust.

In case of embedding wiring

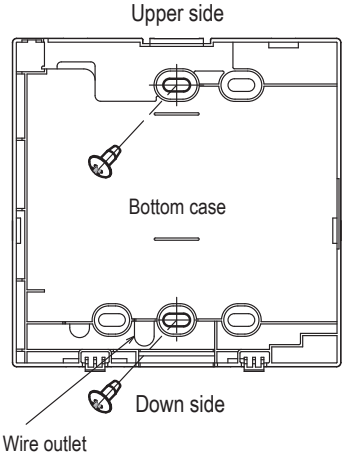
(When the wiring is retrieved “Backward”)

① Embed the switch box and the R/C wires beforehand.
Seal the inlet hole for the R/C wiring with putty.

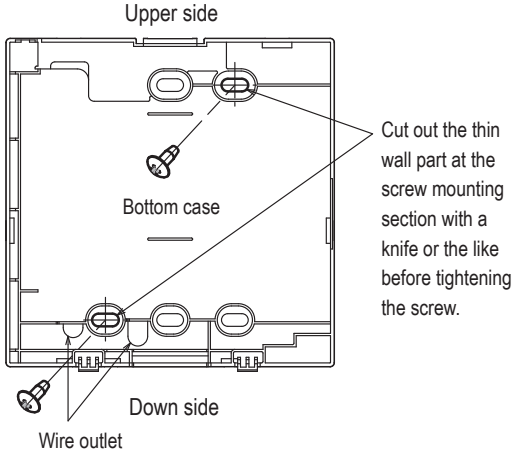


② When wires are passed through the bottom case, fix the bottom case at 2 places on the switch box.

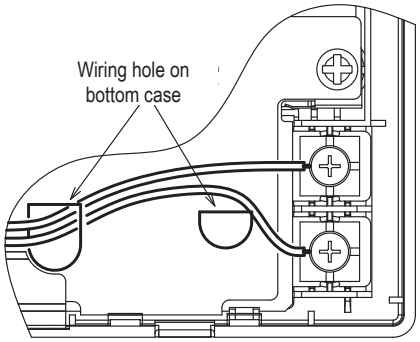
Switch box for 1 pc.



Switch box for 2 pcs.

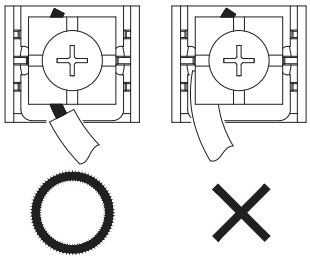


③ Connect wires from X and Y terminals of R/C to X and Y terminals of indoor unit. R/C wires (X, Y) have no polarity. Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screws on the top case of R/C.
④ Install the upper case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.



Cautions for wire connection

Use wires of no larger than 0.5 mm² for wiring running through the remote control case. Take care not to pinch the sheath.
Tighten by hand (0.7 N·m or less) the wire connection. If the wire is connected using an electric driver, it may cause failure or deformation.

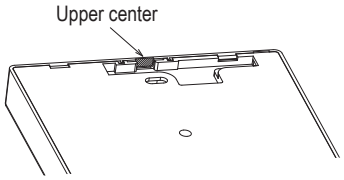


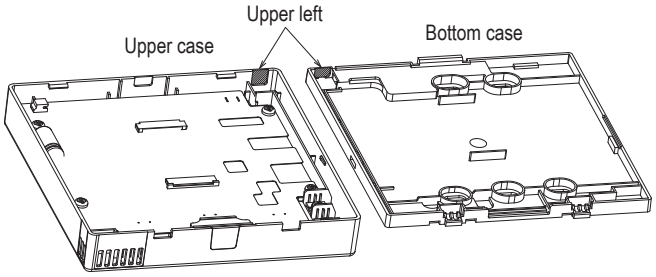
In case of exposing wiring

(When the wiring is taken out from the "upper center" or "upper left" of R/C)

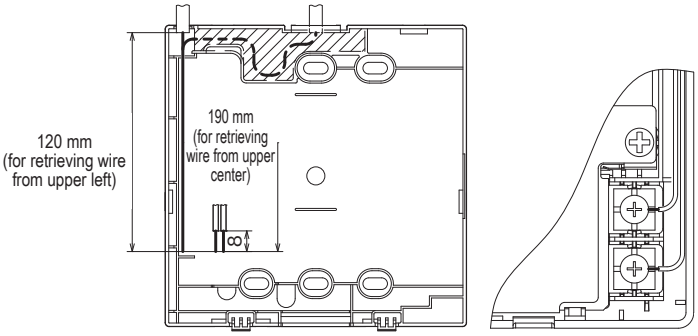
① Cut out the thin wall sections on the cases for the size of wire.

When taking the wiring out from the upper center, open a hole before separating the upper and bottom cases. This will reduce risk of damaging the PCB and facilitate subsequent work.
When taking the wiring out from the upper left, take care not to damage the PCB and not to leave any chips of cut thin wall inside.



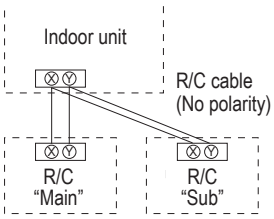


② Fix the bottom R/C case on a flat surface with two wood screws.
③ In case of the upper center, pass the wiring behind the bottom case. (Hatched section)
④ Connect wires from X and Y terminals of R/C to X and Y terminals of indoor unit. R/C wires (X, Y) have no polarity. Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screws on the top case of R/C.
⑤ Install the top case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.
⑥ Seal the area cut in ① with putty.



5 . Main/Sub setting when more than one remote control are used

Up to two units of R/C can be used at the maximum for 1 indoor unit or 1 group.
One is main R/C and the other is sub R/C.
Operating range is different depending on the main or sub R/C.



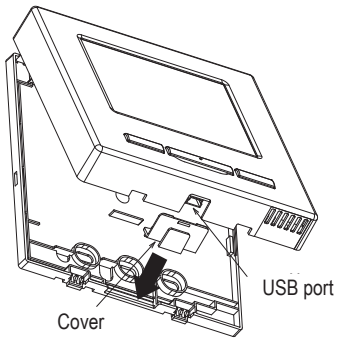
R/C operations			Main	Sub
Run/Stop, Change set temp, Change flap direction, Auto swing, Change fan speed operations			○	○
High power operation, Energy-saving operation			○	○
Silent mode control			○	×
Useful functions	Individual flap control		○	×
	Anti draft setting		○	×
	Timer		○	○
	Favorite setting		○	○
	Weekly timer		○	×
	Home leave mode		○	×
	External ventilation		○	○
	Select the language		○	○
	Silent mode control		○	×
Energy-saving setting			○	×
Filter	Filter sign reset		○	○
User setting	Initial settings		○	○
	Administrator settings	Permission/ Prohibition setting	○	×
		Outdoor unit silent mode timer	○	×
		Setting temp range	○	×
		Temp increment setting	○	×
		Set temp display	○	○
		R/C display setting	○	○
		Change administrator password	○	○
		F1/F2 function setting	○	○

○: operable ×: not operable

R/C operations				Main	Sub
Service setting	Installation settings	Installation date		○	×
		Company information		○	○
		Test run		○	×
		Duct unit settings		○	×
		Change auto-address		○	×
		Address setting of main IU		○	×
		IU back-up function		○	×
		Motion sensor setting		○	×
	R/C function settings	Main/Sub of R/C		○	○
		Return air temp		○	×
		R/C sensor		○	×
		R/C sensor adjustment		○	×
		Operation mode		○	×
		℃ / ℉		○	×
		Fan speed		○	×
		External input		○	×
		Upper/lower flap control		○	×
		Left/right flap control		○	×
		Ventilation setting		○	×
		Auto-restart		○	×
		Auto temp setting		○	×
		Auto fan speed		○	×
	IU settings			○	×
	Service & Maintenance	IU address		○	○
		Next service date		○	×
		Operation data		○	×
		Error display	Error history	○	○
			Display/erase anomaly data	○	×
			Reset periodical check	○	○
		Saving IU settings		○	×
		Special settings	Erase IU address	○	×
			CPU reset	○	○
			Restore of default setting	○	×
			Touch panel calibration	○	○
		Indoor unit capacity display		○	×

Advice: Connection to personal computer

It can be set from a personal computer via the USB port (mini-B).
Connect after removing the cover for USB port of upper case.
Replace the cover after use.
Special software is necessary for the connection.
For details, view the web site.

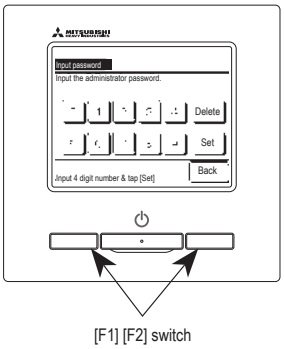


Advice: Initializing of password

Administrator password (for daily setting items) and
service password (for installation, test run and maintenance) are used.

○ The administrator password at factory default is "0000". This setting can be changed (Refer to User's Manual).
If the administrator password is forgotten, it can be initialized by holding down the [F1] and [F2] switches together for five seconds on the administrator password input screen.

○ Service password is "9999", which cannot be changed.
When the administrator password is input, the service password is also accepted.



PJA012D730B

(2) Model RC-E5

Read together with indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠WARNING

- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
  Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.
- Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work.
  Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.

⚠CAUTION

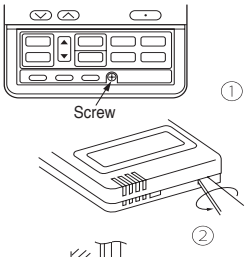
- Do not install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.
  (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
  (2) Places near heat devices
  (3) High humidity places
  (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
  (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
  (6) Uneven surface
- Do not leave the remote control without the upper case.
  In case the upper cace needs to be detached, protect the remote control with a packaging box or bag in order to keep it away from water and dust.

Accessories	Remote control, wood screw (ø3.5×16) 2 pieces
Prepare on site	Remote control cord (2 cores) the insulated thickness in 1mm or more. [In case of embedding cord] Erectrical box, M4 screw (2 pieces) [In case of exposing cord] Cord clamp (if needed)

Installation procedure

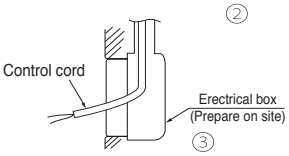
① Open the cover of remote control, and remove the screw under the buttons without fail.

② Remove the upper case of remote control.
Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the dented part of the upper part of the remote control, and wrench slightly.

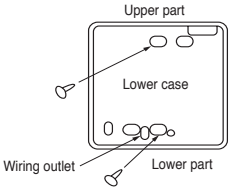


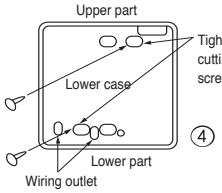
[In case of embedding cord]

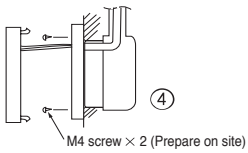
③ Embed the erectrical box and remote control cord beforehand.



④ Prepare two M4 screws (recommended length is 12-16mm) on site, and install the lower case to erectrical box.
Choose either of the following two positions in fixing it with screws.







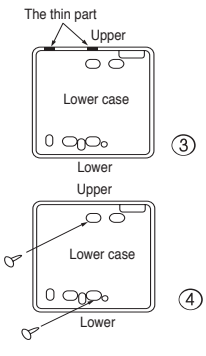
⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y). (X and Y are no polarity)

⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.

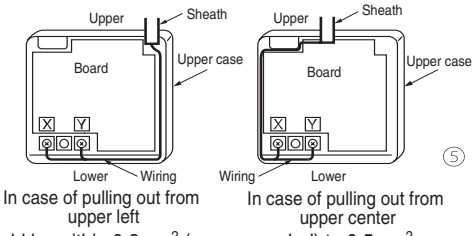
[In case of exposing cord]

③ You can pull out the remote control cord from left upper part or center upper part.
Cut off the upper thin part of remote control lower case with a nipper or knife, and grind burrs with a file etc.

④ Install the lower case to the flat wall with attached two wooden screws.

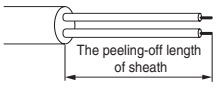


⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y).
(X and Y are no polarity)
Wiring route is as shown in the right diagram depending on the pulling out direction.



The wiring inside the remote control case should be within 0.3mm^2 (recommended) to 0.5mm^2.
The sheath should be peeled off inside the remote control case.
The peeling-off length of each wire is as below.

Pulling out from upper left	Pulling out from upper center
X wiring : 215mm Y wiring : 195mm	X wiring : 170mm Y wiring : 190mm



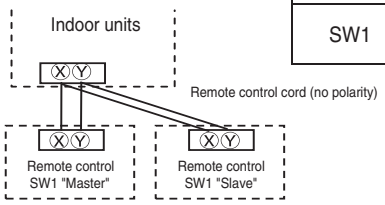
⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.
⑦ In case of exposing cord, fix the cord on the wall with cord clamp so as not to slack.

Installation and wiring of remote control

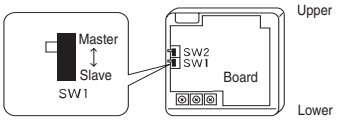
① Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm^2 × 2 cores wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
② Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm^2 . Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m·····0.5mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 300m·····0.75mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 400m·····1.25mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 500m·····2.0mm^2 × 2 cores

Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control

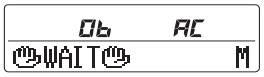


Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control. It was factory set to "Master" for shipment.
Note: The setting "Remote control sensor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control in the position where you want to check room temperature.
The air-conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/ slave setting of it.

The indication when power source is supplied

When power source is turned on, the following is displayed on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and indoor unit settled.
Master remote control : " WAIT M"
Slave remote control : " WAIT S"

At the same time, a mark or a number will be displayed for two seconds first.
This is the software's administration number of the remote control, not an error cord.



※ The left mark is only an example. Other marks may appear.

When remote control cannot communicate with the indoor unit for half an hour, the below indication will appear.
Check wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit etc.

The range of temperature setting

When shipped, the range of set temperature differs depending on the operation mode as below.

Heating : 16-30˚C (55-86˚F)

Except heating (cooling, fan, dry, automatic) : 18-30˚C (62-86˚F)

●Upper limit and lower limit of set temperature can be changed with remote control.

Upper limit setting: valid during heating operation. Possible to set in the range of 20 to 30˚C (68 to 86˚F).

Lower limit setting: valid except heating (automatic, cooling, fan, dry) Possible to set in the range of 18 to 26˚C (62 to 79˚F).

When you set upper and lower limit by this function, control as below.

1. When ⑫TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "INDN CHANGE" (factory setting),
   【If upper limit value is set】
   During heating, you cannot set the value exceeding the upper limit.

   【If lower limit value is set 】
   During operation mode except heating, you cannot set the value below the lower limit.

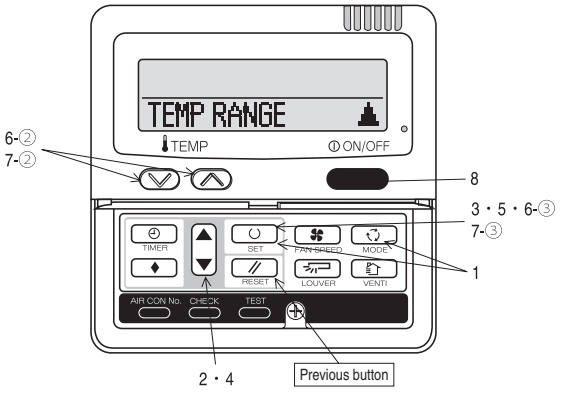
2. When ⑫TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "NO INDN CHANGE"
   【If upper limit value is set】
   During heating, even if the value exceeding the upper limit is set, upper limit value will be sent to the indoor unit. But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

   【If lower limit value is set 】
   During except heating, even if the value lower than the lower limit is set, lower limit value will be sent to the indoor unit. But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

●How to set upper and lower limit value

1. Stop the air-conditioner, and press (SET) and (MODE) button at the same time for over three seconds .
   The indication changes to "FUNCTION SET ▼".
2. Press ▼ button once, and change to the "TEMP RANGE ▲ " indication.
3. Press (SET) button, and enter the temperature range setting mode.
4. Select "UPPER LIMIT ▼" or "LOWER LIMIT ▲" by using ▲ ▼ button.
5. Press (SET) button to fix.
6. When "UPPER LIMIT ▼" is selected (valid during heating)
   ① Indication: "☝ ∨ ∧ SET UP" → "UPPER 30˚C ∨"
   ② Select the upper limit value with temperature setting button ▽ △. Indication example: "UPPER 26˚C ∨ ∧" (blinking)
   ③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication example: "UPPER 26˚C" (Displayed for two seconds)
   After the fixed upper limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "UPPER LIMIT ▼".
7. When "LOWER LIMIT ▲" is selected (valid during cooling, dry, fan, automatic)
   ① Indication: "☝ ∨ ∧ SET UP" → "LOWER 18˚C ∧"
   ② Select the lower limit value with temperature setting button ▽ △. Indication example: "LOWER 24˚C ∨ ∧" (blinking)
   ③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication for example: "LOWER 24˚C" (Displayed for two seconds)
   After the fixed lower limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "LOWER LIMIT ▼".
8. Press ON/OFF button to finish.

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.



The functional setting

●The initial function setting for typical using is performed automatically by the indoor unit connected, when remote control and indoor unit are connected.
As long as they are used in a typical manner, there will be no need to change the initial settings.
If you would like to change the initial setting marked "○", set your desired setting as for the selected item.
The procedure of functional setting is shown as the following diagram.

[Flow of function setting]

Start : Stop air-conditioner and press "○" (SET) and "☜" (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds.
Finalize : Press "○" (SET) button.
Reset : Press "✎" (RESET) button.
Select : Press ▲ ▼ button.
End : Press ON/OFF button.
It is possible to finish above setting on the way, and unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
"○" : Initial settings
"※" : Automatic criterion

Record and keep the setting

Consult the technical data etc. for each control details

Stop air-conditioner and press ○ (SET) + ☜ (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds.

FUNCTION SET ▼

FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control function)

Function	setting		
01 ESP SET	ESP VALID	○	Validate setting of ESP:External Static Pressure
	ESP INVALID		Invalidate setting of ESP
02 AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	※	
	AUTO RUN OFF	※	Automatical operation is impossible
03 TEMP SW	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Temperature setting button is not working
04 MODE SW	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Mode button is not working
05 ON/OFF SW	VALID	○	
	INVALID		On/Off button is not working
06 FAN SPEED SW	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Fan speed button is not working
07 LOUVER SW	VALID	※	
	INVALID	※	Louver button is not working
08 TIMER SW	VALID	○	
	INVALID		Timer button is not working
09 SENSOR SET	SENSOR OFF	○	Remote thermistor is not working.
	SENSOR ON		Remote thermistor is working.
	SENSOR +3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +3.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +2.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR +1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing +1.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -1.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -1.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -2.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -2.0˚C increase in temperature.
	SENSOR -3.0℃		Remote thermistor is working, and to be set for producing -3.0˚C increase in temperature.
10 AUTO RESTART	INVALID	○	
	VALID		
11 VENT LINK SET	NO VENT	○	
	VENT LINK		In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CNT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CND of the indoor printed circuit board), the operation of ventilation device is linked with the operation of indoor unit.
	NO VENT LINK		In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CNT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CND of the indoor printed circuit board), you can operate /stop the ventilation device independently by ☜ (VENT) button.
12 TEMP RANGE SET	INDIN CHANGE	○	If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will vary following the control.
	NO INDIN CHANGE		If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will not vary following the control, and keep the set temperature.
13 I/U FAN	HI-MID-LO	※	Air flow of fan becomes the three speed of ※ -※ -※ or ※ -※ -※ -※ .
	HI-LO	※	Air flow of fan becomes the two speed of ※ -※ .
	HI-MID		Air flow of fan becomes the two speed of ※ -※ .
	1 FAN SPEED	※	Air flow of fan is fixed at one speed.
14 POSITION			If you change the remote control function "14 POSITION", you must change the indoor function "04 POSITION" accordingly.
	4POSITION STOP	○	You can select the louver stop position in the four.
	FREE STOP		The louver can stop at any position.
15 MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	※	
	COOLING ONLY	※	
16 EXTERNAL CONTROL SET	INDIVIDUAL	○	If you input signal into CnT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, the indoor unit will be operated independently according to the input from external. If you input into CNT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, all units which connect to the same remote control are operated according to the input from external.
	FOR ALL UNITS		
17 ROOM TEMP INDICATION SET	INDICATION OFF	○	
	INDICATION ON		In normal working indication, indoor unit temperature is indicated instead of air flow. (Only the master remote control can be indicated.)
18 ※ INDICATION	INDICATION ON	○	
	INDICATION OFF		Heating preparation indication should not be indicated.
19 ℃/℉ SET	℃	○	Temperature indication is by degree C.
	℉		Temperature indication is by degree F.

I/U FUNCTION ▲ (Indoor unit function)

Indoor unit No. are indicated only when plural indoor units are connected.

I/U000 ▲
I/U001 ≑
I/U002 ≑
I/U003 ≑
I/U004 ≑

To set other indoor unit, press AIR CON No. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen (for example: I/U 000 ▲).

Function	setting		
02 FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	※	
	HIGH SPEED 1	※	
	HIGH SPEED 2		
03 FILTER SIGN SET	INDICATION OFF		
	TYPE 1	○	The filter sign is indicated after running for 180 hours.
	TYPE 2		The filter sign is indicated after running for 600 hours.
	TYPE 3		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours.
	TYPE 4		The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours, then the indoor unit will be stopped by compulsion after 24 hours.
04 POSITION			If you change the indoor function "04 POSITION", you must change the remote control function "14 POSITION" accordingly.
	4POSITION STOP	○	You can select the louver stop position in the four.
	FREE STOP		The louver can stop at any position.
05 EXTERNAL INPUT	LEVEL INPUT	○	
	PULSE INPUT		
06 OPERATION PERMISSION/PROHIBITION	INVALID	○	
	VALID		Permission/prohibition control of operation will be valid.
07 EMERGENCY STOP	INVALID	○	
	VALID		With the VRF series, it is used to stop all indoor units connected with the same outdoor unit immediately. When stop signal is inputed from remote on-off terminal "CNT-6", all indoor units are stopped immediately.
08 ※ SP OFFSET	OFFSET +3.0℃		To be reset for producing +3.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset for producing +2.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset for producing +1.0˚C increase in temperature during heating.
	NO OFFSET	○	
09 RETURN AIR TEMP	OFFSET +2.0℃		To be reset producing +2.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.5℃		To be reset producing +1.5˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET +1.0℃		To be reset producing +1.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	NO OFFSET	○	
	OFFSET -1.0℃		To be reset producing -1.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -1.5℃		To be reset producing -1.5˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
	OFFSET -2.0℃		To be reset producing -2.0˚C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
10 ※ FAN CONTROL	LOW FAN SPEED	○	When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is low speed.
	SET FAN SPEED		When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is set speed.
	INTERMITTENCE		When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is operated intermittently.
	FAN OFF		When heating thermostat is OFF, the fan is stopped. When the remote thermistor is working, "FAN OFF" is set automatically. Do not set "FAN OFF" when the indoor unit's thermistor is working.
11 FROST PREVENTION TEMP			Change of indoor heat exchanger temperature to start frost prevention control.
	TEMP HIGH		
	TEMP LOW	○	
12 FROST PREVENTION CONTROL			Working only with the Single split series.
	FAN CONTROL ON	○	To control frost prevention, the indoor fan tap is raised.
	FAN CONTROL OFF		
13 DRAIN PUMP LINK	✲	○	Drain pump is run during cooling and dry.
	✲ AND※		Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and heating.
	✲ AND※ AND≋		Drain pump is run during cooling, dry, heating and fan.
	✲ AND≋		Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and fan.
14 ✲ FAN REMAINING	NO REMAINING	○	After cooling is stopped is OFF, the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After cooling is stopped is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	1 HOUR		After cooling is stopped is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for an hour.
	6 HOUR		After cooling is stopped is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
15 ※ FAN REMAINING	NO REMAINING	○	After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan does not perform extra operation.
	0.5 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF,the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.
	2 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF,the fan perform extra operation for two hours.
	6 HOUR		After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.
16 ※ FAN INTERMITTENCE	NO REMAINING	○	
	2min/OFF 5min/ON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after twenty minutes' OFF.
	5min/OFF 5min/ON		During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after five minutes' OFF.
17 PRESSURE CONTROL	STANDARD	※	
	TYPE1	※	Connected "OA Processing" type indoor unit, and is automatically defined.

ON/OFF button (finished)

Note 1: The initial setting marked "※" is decided by connected indoor and outdoor unit, and is automatically defined as following table.

Function No.	Item	Default	Model
Remote control function02	AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	"Auto-RUN" mode selectable indoor unit.
		AUTO RUN OFF	Indoor unit without "Auto-RUN" mode
Remote control function06	FAN SPEED SW	VALID	Indoor unit with two or three step of air flow setting
		INVALID	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Remote control function07	LOUVER SW	VALID	Indoor unit with automatically swing louver
		INVALID	Indoor unit without automatically swing louver
Remote control function13	I/U FAN	HI-MID-LO	Indoor unit with three step of air flow setting
		HI-LO	Indoor unit with two step of air flow setting
		HI-MID	
		1 FAN SPEED	Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting
Remote control function15	MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	Heat pump unit
		COOLING ONLY	Exclusive cooling unit

Note 3: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "05 EXTERNAL INPUT" and "06 PERMISSION / PROHIBISHION".

Note2: Fan setting of "HIGH SPEED"

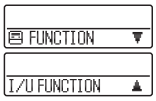
Fan tap		Indoor unit air flow setting				
		※ - ※ - ※ - ※	※ - ※ - ※	※ - ※ - ※	※ - ※	※ - ※
FAN SPEED SET	STANDARD	UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi	

Initial function setting of some indoor unit is "HIGH SPEED".

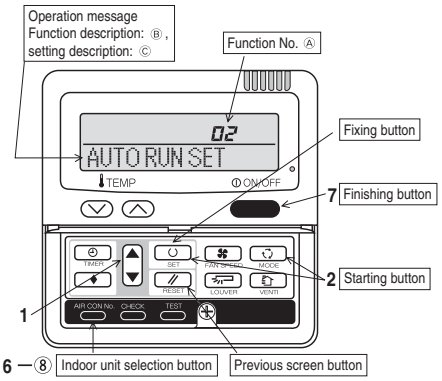
How to set function

1. **Stop air-conditioner and press (SET) (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds, and the "FUNCTION SET ▼" will be displayed.**

2. **Press (SET) button.**
3. **Make sure which do you want to set, "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (indoor unit function).**
4. **Press ▲ or ▼ button.**
   Selecct "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (indoor unit function).



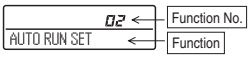
5. **Press (SET) button.**



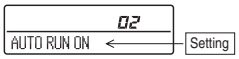
6. **【On the occasion of remote control function selection】**

① "DATA LOADING" (Indication with blinking)
↓
Display is changed to "01 ESP SET".

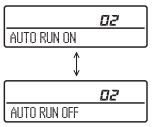
② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function"are indicated by turns on the remote control function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(for example) "AUTO RUN ON" ← If "02 AUTO RUN SET" is selected



④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.



⑤ Press (SET)
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, Set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously ,and if to finish, go to 7.

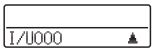
7. **Press ON/OFF button.**
   Setting is finished.

【On the occasion of indoor unit function selection】

① "DATA LOADING" (Blinking for 2 to 23 seconds to read the data)
↓
Indication is changed to "02 FAN SPEED SET".
Go to ②.

[Note]

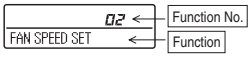
(1) If plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, the indication is "I/U 000" (blinking) ← The lowest number of the indoor unit connected is indicated.



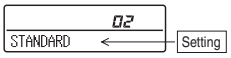
(2) Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the number of the indoor unit you are to set
If you select "ALL UNIT ▼", you can set the same setting with all unites.

(3) Press (SET) button.

② Press ▲ or ▼ button.
"No. and function" are indicated by turns on the indoor unit function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



③ Press (SET) button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(For example) "STANDARD" ← If "02 FAN SPEED SET" is selected.



④ Press ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the setting.

⑤ Press (SET) button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously , and if to finish, go to 7.

※ When plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, press the AIR CON No. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen. (example "I/U 000 ▲")

- It is possible to finish by pressing ON/OFF button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.
- Setting is memorized in the control and it is saved independently of power failure.

【How to check the current setting】

When you select from "No. and funcion" and press set button by the previous operation, the "Setting" displayed first is the current setting.
(But, if you select "ALL UNIT ▼", the setting of the lowest number indoor unit is displayed.)

PSC012D066D G

Inverter driven split PAC
FDC200VSA, 250VSA (200V, 250V)
FDCA160VSA, 200VSA (A160V, A200V)
Designed for R410A refrigerant

◎This installation manual deals with outdoor units and general installation specifications only. For indoor units, refer to page 26.
◎When install the unit, be sure to check whether the selection of installation place, power source specifications, usage limitation (piping length, height differences between indoor and outdoor units, power source voltage and etc.) and installation spaces

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

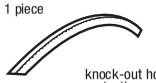
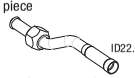
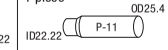
- We recommend you to read this "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully before the installation work in order to gain full advantage of the functions of the unit and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling.
- The precautions described below are divided into ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION. The matters with possibilities leading to serious consequences such as death or serious personal injury due to erroneous handling are listed in the ⚠WARNING and the matters with possibilities leading to personal injury or damage of the unit due to erroneous handling including probability leading to serious consequences in some cases are listed in ⚠CAUTION. **These are very important precautions for safety. Be sure to observe all of them without fail.**
- The meaning of "Marks" used here are as shown below.

⃠	Never do it under any circumstance.	❗	Always do it according to the instruction

- For 3 phase power source outdoor unit,EN61000-3-2 is not applicable if consent by the utility company or nortification to the utility company is given before usage.
- 3phase power source unit, both indoor and outdoor, is suitable for installation in a commercial and light industrial environment. If installed as a house-hold appliance it could cause electromagnetic interference.
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.

Check before installation work

[Accessory]

Edging	Accessory pipe	
1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
		
knock-out hole protection	Accessory pipe A	Accessory pipe B

- Model name and power source
- Refrigerant piping length
- Piping, wiring and miscellaneous small parts
- Indoor unit installation manual

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction.
- **Install the system in full accordance with the instruction manual.**
  Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.**
  If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, it may cause fall of the unit, water leaks, electric shocks, fire, refrigerant leak, substandard performance, control failure and personal injury.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage accordance with ISO5149.**
  Consult the expert about prevention measures. If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of leakage, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.**
  If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced.
- **After completed installation, check that no refrigerant leaks from the system.**
  If refrigerant leaks into the room and comes into contact with an oven or other hot surface, poisonous gas is produced.
- **Hang up the unit at the specified points with ropes which can support the weight in lifting for portage. And to avoid jolting out of alignment, be sure to hang up the unit at 4-point support.**
  An improper manner of portage such as 3-point support can cause death or serious personal injury due to falling of the unit
- **Install the unit in a location with good support.**
  Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds.**
  Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire,
- **Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.**
  Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment.
- **Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.**
  Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
  Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.**
  Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire.

- **Do not perform brazing work in the airtight room**
  It can cause lack of oxygen.
- **Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R410A.**
  Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit.
- **Tighten the flare nut by using double spanners and torque wrench according to prescribed method. Be sure not to tighten the flare nut too much.**
  Loose flare connection or damage on the flare part by tightening with excess torque can cause burst or refrigerant leaks which may result in lack of oxygen.
- **Do not open the service valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation.**
  If the compressor is operated in state of opening service valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition**
  The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.**
  If the power source is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.
- **Consult the dealer or an expert regarding removal of the unit.**
  Incorrect installation can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.
- **Stop the compressor before closing valve and disconnecting refrigerant pipes in case of pump down operation.**
  If disconnecting refrigerant pipes in state of opening service valves before compressor stopping, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant circuit

- **Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
  If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections**
  Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.
- **Be sure to fix up the service panels.**
  Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Do not perform any repairs or modifications by yourself. Consult the dealer if the unit requires repair.**
  If you repair or modify the unit, it can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care**
  Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting. Never connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe because if gas leaks,it could cause explosion or ignition.
- **Use the circuit breaker for all pole with correct capacity.**
  Using the incorrect circuit breaker, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire.
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
  The isolator should be locked in accordanced with EN60204-1.
- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
  If the unit weights more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins.
- **Dispose of any packing materials correctly.**
  Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury as it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and to dispose after tear it up.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld spatter when welding work is done near the indoor unit.**
  If weld spatter entered into the indoor unit during welding work, it can cause pin-hole in drain pan and result in water leakage. To prevent such damage, keep the indoor unit in its packing or cover it.
- **Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.**
  Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Perform installation work properly according to this installation manual.**
  Improper installation can cause abnormal vibrations or increased noise generation.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause fire or electric shocks.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.**
  Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.**
  If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.
- **Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.**
  Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **When the outdoor unit is installed on a roof or a high place, provide permanent ladders and handrails along the access route and fences and handrails around the outdoor unit.**
  If safety facilities are not provided, it can cause personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics**
  Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
  Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Do not use the base flame for outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation.**
  Using an old and damage base flame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations listed below**
  ·Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating.
  ·Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur.
  ·Vehicles and ships
  ·Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used.
  ·Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant.
  ·Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used.
  ·Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines
  ·Locations with heavy snow (If installed, be sure to provide base flame and snow hood mentioned in the manual)
  ·Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke
  ·Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high)
  ·Locations with ammonic atmospheres (e.g. organic fertilizer).
  ·Locations with calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent).
  ·Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit
  ·Locations without good air circulation.
  ·Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  ·Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation)
  ·Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit
  It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below.**
  ·Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood.
  ·Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to an animal or plants. The outlet air can affect adversely to the plant etc.
  ·Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure.
  ·Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously. (on the wall or at the place near bed room)
  ·Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  ·Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim
- **Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.**
  It can cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not touch any buttons with wet hands**
  It can cause electric shocks
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.**
  During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.
- **Do not clean up the unit with water**
  It can cause electric shocks
- **Do not operate the outdoor unit with any article placed on it.**
  You may incur property damage or personal injure from a fall of the article.
- **Do not step onto the outdoor unit.**
  You may incur injury from a drop or fall.

Notabilia as a unit designed for R410A

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R410A. R410A will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant. A cylinder containing R410A has a pink indication mark on the top.
- A unit designed for R410A has adopted a different size indoor unit service valve charge port and a different size check joint provided in the unit to prevent the charging of a wrong refrigerant by mistake. The processed dimension of the flared part of a refrigerant pipe and a flare nut's parallel side measurement have also been altered to raise strength against pressure. Accordingly, you are required to arrange dedicated R410A tools listed in the table on the right before installing or servicing this unit.
- Do not use a charge cylinder. The use of a charge cylinder will cause the refrigerant composition to change, which results in performance degradation.
- In charging refrigerant, always take it out from a cylinder in the liquid phase.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R410A. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

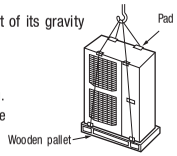
	Dedicated R410A tools
a)	Gauge manifold
b)	Charge hose
c)	Electronic scale for refrigerant charging
d)	Torque wrench
e)	Flare tool
f)	Protrusion control copper pipe gauge
g)	Vacuum pump adapter
h)	Gas leak detector

1. HAULAGE AND INSTALLATION (Take particular care in carrying in or moving the unit, and always perform such an operation with two or more persons.)

⚠CAUTION When a unit is hoisted with slings for haulage, take into consideration the offset of its gravity center position.
If not properly balanced, the unit can be thrown off-balance and fall.

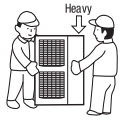
1) Delivery

- Deliver the unit as close as possible to the installation site before removing it from the packaging.
- When some compelling reason necessitates the unpacking of the unit before it is carried in, use nylon slings or protective wood pieces so as not to damage the unit by ropes lifting it.



2) Portage

- The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (diffuser side) is heavier. A person carrying the right hand side must take heed of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold with his right hand the handle provided on the front panel of the unit and with his left hand the corner column section.



3) Selection of installation location for the outdoor unit

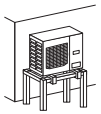
Be sure to select a suitable installation place in consideration of following conditions.

- ○ A place where it is horizontal, stable and can endure the unit weight and will not allow vibration transmittance of the unit.
- ○ A place where it can be free from possibility of bothering neighbors due to noise or exhaust air from the unit
- ○ A place where the unit is not exposed to oil splashes.
- ○ A place where it can be free from danger of flammable gas leakage.
- ○ A place where drain water can be disposed without any trouble.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by heat radiation from other heat source.
- ○ A place where snow will not accumulate.
- ○ A place where the unit can be kept away 5m or more from TV set and/or radio receiver in order to avoid any radio or TV interference.
- ○ A place where good air circulation can be secured, and enough service space can be secured for maintenance and service of the unit safely.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipment.
- ○ A place where chemical substances like sulfuric gas, chloric gas, acid and alkali (including ammonia), which can harm the unit, will not be generated and not remain.
- ○ A place where strong wind will not blow against the outlet air blow of the unit.
  Do not install the unit in places which exposed to sea breeze (e.g. coastal area)
  or calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent), exposed to ammonia substance (e.g. organic fertilizer).

4) Caution about selection of installation location

(1) If the unit is installed in the area where the snow will accumulate, following measures are required.
The bottom plate of unit and intake, outlet may be blocked by snow.

1.Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface.



2.Provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site. Regarding outline of a snow hood, refer to our technical manual.

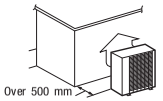
3.Install the unit under eaves or providen the roof on site.

Since drain water generated by defrost control may freeze, following measures are required.

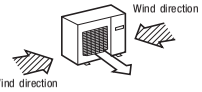
- ● Don't execute drain piping work by using a drain elbow and drain grommets (option parts). [Refer to Drain piping work.]
- ● Recommend setting Defrost Control (SW3-1) and Snow Guard Fan Control (SW3-2). [Refer to Setting SW3-1, SW3-2.]
- ● Attach heater on a base plate on site, if there is possibility to freeze drain water.
  In case that the product has a corrective drainage system, the drainage paths should have suitable measure against freezing but be sure not to melt the material of drainage paths with heat.

(2) If the unit can be affected by strong wind, following measures are required.
Strong wind can cause damage of fan (fan motor), or can cause performance degradation, or can trigger anomalous stop of the unit due to rising of high pressure.

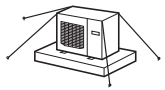
1.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit to face a wall of building, or provide a fence or a windbreak screen.



2.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit in a position perpendicular to the direction of wind.



3.The unit should be installed on the stable and level foundation. If the foundation is not level, tie down the unit with wires.

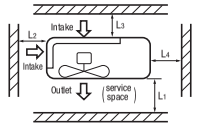


5) Installation space

- ● Walls surrounding the unit in the four sides are not acceptable.
- ● There must be a 1-meter or larger space in the above.
- ● Where a danger of short-circuiting exists, install guide louvers.
- ● When more than one unit are installed, provide sufficient intake space consciously so that short-circuiting may not occur.
- ● Where piling snow can bury the outdoor unit, provide proper snow guards.
- ● A barrier wall placed in front of the exhaust diffuser must not be higher than the unit.

(mm)

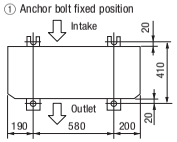
Size \ Example installation	I	II	III
L1	Open	Open	500
L2	300	5	Open
L3	150	300	150
L4 ※1	5	5	5
L4 ※2	250 (5)	250 (5)	250 (5)



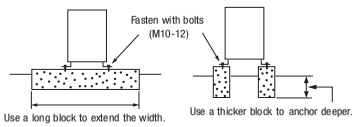
※1 In case of 200V model
※2 In case of 250V, A160V, A200V model. If unit is installed in L4 space with ( )'s condition, secure space of 250mm in lateral (L4) by unit movement at the time of exchange work of compressor.

6) Installation

① Anchor bolt fixed position



② Notabilia for installation



- ● In installing the unit, fix the unit's legs with bolts specified on the left.
- ● The protrusion of an anchor bolt on the front side must be kept within 15 mm.
- ● Securely install the unit so that it does not fall over during earthquakes or strong winds, etc.
- ● Refer to the left illustrations for information regarding concrete foundations.
- ● Install the unit in a level area. (With a gradient of 5 mm or less.)
  Improper installation can result in a compressor failure, broken piping within the unit and abnormal noise generation.

7) To run the unit for a cooling operation, when the outdoor temperature is –5°C or lower.

- ● When the outdoor air temperature is -5°C or lower, provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site.
  So that strong wind will not blow against the outdoor heat exchanger directly. Regarding outline of a snow hood, refer to our technical manual.

2. REFRIGERANT PIPING WORK

1) Restrictions on unit installation and use

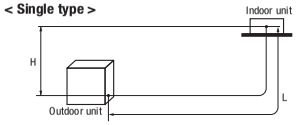
- ● Check the following points in light of the indoor unit specifications and the installation site.
- ● Observe the following restrictions on unit installation and use. Improper installation can result in a compressor failure or performance degradation.

Restrictions					Marks appearing in the drawing				
	One-way pipe length difference from the first branching point to the indoor unit						< 3m	≧ 3m	W-twin type
	Model for outdoor units			Dimensional restrictions	Single type	Twin type	Triple type A	Triple type B	
One-way pipe length of refrigerant piping	200V	Liquid Piping	ϕ 9.52	≦ 40m	L	L+L1 L+L2	200V:L+L1,L+L2,L+L3 250V:L+L1,L+La+L2,+La+L3 (3) (type B)	200V:L +L1 (1) 250V:Prohibitation of the use	L+La+L1,L+La+L2 L+La+L3,L+La+L4
			ϕ 12.7	40 – 70m					
	250V, A160V, A200V		ϕ 12.7	≦ 70m					
	200V 250V, A160V, A200V	Gas Piping	ϕ 22.22	≦ 35m					
			ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58	35 – 70m					
Main pipe length	200V	Liquid Piping	ϕ 9.52	≦ 40m	—	L	200V:L 250V:L (2) (type B)	200V:L 250V:Prohibitation of the use	L
			ϕ 12.7	40 – 70m					
	250V		ϕ 12.7	≦ 70m					
	200V 250V	Gas Piping	ϕ 22.22	≦ 35m					
			ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58	35 – 70m					
One-way pipe length between the first branching point from to the second branching point	200V			≦ 5m	—	—	—	La	—
	250V						La (type B)	Prohibitation of the use	
One-way pipe length after the first branching point	200V			≦ 30m	—	L1,L2	L1,L2,L3	L1 (1)	La+L1,La+L2 La+L3,La+L4
	250V						L1,La+L2,La+L3 (2) (type B)	Prohibitation of the use	
One-way pipe length from the first branching point to indoor units through the second branching point	200V			≦ 27m	—	—	—	La+L2,La+L3 (1)	—
One-way pipe length difference from the first branching point to the indoor unit	Twin type			≦ 10m	—	IL1-L2I	—	—	—
	Triple type	200V		≦ 3m			I L1-L2 I , I L2-L3 I , I L3-L1 I		
				≦ 10m			—	L1-(La+L2),L1-(La+L3) (1)	
		250V		≦ 3m			I L1-(La+L2) I , I L1-(La+L3) I , I L2-L3 I	Prohibitation of the use	
	W-twin type	200V, 250V		≦ 10m			—	—	I (L1+La) - (L3+Lb) I , I (L1+La) - (L4+Lb) I I (L2+La) - (L3+Lb) I , I (L2+La) - (L4+Lb) I
One way pipe length difference from the second branching point to the indoor unit	200V, 250V			≦ 10m	—	—	—	I L2-L3 I	I L1-L2 I , I L3-L4 I
Total pipe length after the second branching point				≦ 15m	—	—	—	—	L1+L2,L3+L4
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher,			≦ 30m	H	H	H	H	H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower,			≦ 15m					
Elevation difference between indoor units				≦ 0.5m	—	h	h1, h2, h3	h1,h2,h3	h1 , h2 , h3 , h4 , h5 , h6

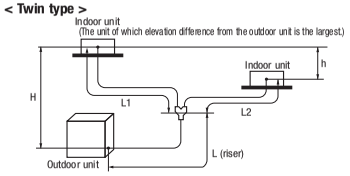
⚠CAUTION

- ● For model 200V, **always use ϕ12.7mm liquid main pipe** when the one way piping length exceeds 40m. If ϕ 9.52mm pipes are used in an installation having over 40m piping, they can cause performance degradation and/or water leaks from an indoor unit. Use ϕ9.52mm liquid main pipe when the one way piping length is less than 40m.
- ● Always use ϕ25.4mm or ϕ28.58mm gas pipes when the length of the main "L" exceeds 35m.
  If the ϕ22.22mm pipes are used in an installation having over 35m piping, they can cause performance degradation and/or water leaks from an indoor unit.

< Single type >

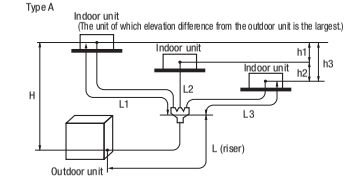


< Twin type >



< Triple type >

Type A



⚠CAUTION

- For model 200V, **always use ϕ12.7mm liquid main pipe** when the one way piping length exceeds 40m. If ϕ 9.52mm pipes are used in an installation having over 40m piping, they can cause performance degradation and/or water leaks from an indoor unit. Use ϕ9.52mm liquid main pipe when the one way piping length is less than 40m.
- Always use ϕ25.4mm or ϕ28.58mm gas pipes when the length of the main "L" exceeds 35m.
  If the ϕ22.22mm pipes are used in an installation having over 35m piping, they can cause performance degradation and/or water leaks from an indoor unit.
- Triple type B is not allowed to use in case of 250V.

Note (1) Install the indoor units so that L + L1 becomes the longest one-way pipe.
Keep the pipe length difference between L1 and (La + L2) or (La + L3) within 10m.
Note (2) Connect the unit that is the maximum capacity with L1.

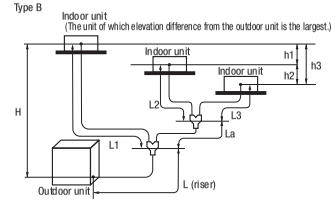
2) Determination of pipe size

- Determine refrigerant pipe size pursuant to the following guidelines based on the indoor unit specifications.

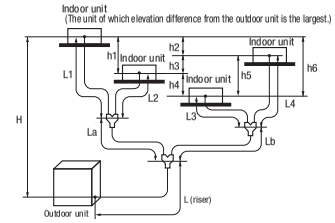
		Model 200V		Model 250V				Model A160V, A200V	
		Gas pipe	Liquid pipe	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
Outdoor unit connected		ϕ 22.22	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 22.22	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 22.22	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 22.22	ϕ 12.7
		Brazing	Flare	Brazing	Flare	Brazing	Flare	Brazing	Flare
Refrigerant piping (branch pipeL)		ϕ 22.22 or ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58	ϕ 9.52 or ϕ 12.7	ϕ 22.22 or ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 22.22 or ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 22.22 or ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58	ϕ 12.7
In the case of a single type	Indoor unit connected	ϕ 25.4	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 25.4	ϕ 12.7	–		ϕ 22.22	ϕ 25.4
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 200V		Model 250V				Model A160V	Model A200V
In the case of a twin type	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		–		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2)	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52				
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52				
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 100V×2		Model 125V×2					
In the case of a triple type A	Branching pipe set	DIS-TB1G		–		–		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2,L3)	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52						
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52						
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 71V×3							
In the case of a triple type B	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe La,L1)	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52		
	Branching pipe set	DIS-WA1G		DIS-WA1G		DIS-WA1G			
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L2,L3)	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52		
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 6.35	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52		
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 71V×3		Model 60V×2+ Model 125V		Model 71V×2+ Model 100V			
In the case of a W-twin type	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		–		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe La,Lb)	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 15.88	ϕ 9.52				
	Branching pipe set	DIS-WA1G × 2		DIS-WA1G × 2					
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2,L3,L4)	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 9.52	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 9.52				
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ 12.7	ϕ 6.35	ϕ 12.7	ϕ6.35				
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 50V×4		Model 60V×4					

< Triple type >

Type B



< Double twin type >

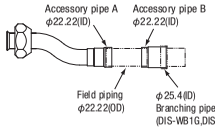


⚠CAUTION

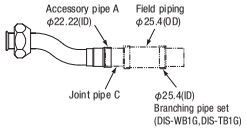
- When the model 50V or model 60V model is connected as an indoor unit, always use a ϕ 9.52 liquid pipe for the branch (branching pipe – indoor unit) and a different diameter joint supplied with the branching pipe set for connection with the indoor unit (ϕ 6.35 on the liquid pipe side).
  If a ϕ 6.35 pipe is used for connection with a branching pipe, a refrigerant distribution disorder may occur, causing one of the indoor units to fall short of the rated capacity.
- A riser pipe must be a part of the main. A branching pipe set should be installed horizontally at a point as close to an indoor unit as possible.
  A branching part must be dressed with a heat-insulation material supplied as an accessory.
- For the details of installation work required at and near a branching area, see the installation manual supplied with your branching pipe set.

3) How to use pipe reducer.

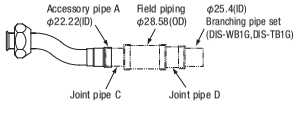
- ϕ22.22(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A,B.



- ϕ25.4(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A and joint pipe C.
  Ready joint C yourself. Need not accessory pipe B.



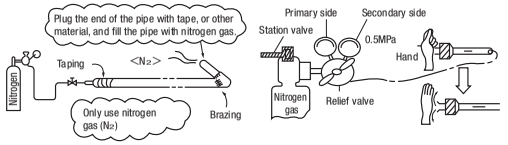
- ϕ28.58(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A and joint pipe C,D.
  Ready joint C and D yourself.



About brazing

Brazing must be performed under a nitrogen gas flow.

Without nitrogen gas, a large quantity of foreign matters (oxidized film) are created, causing a critical failure from capillary tube or expansion valve clogging.



4) Refrigerant pipe wall thickness and material

- Select refrigerant pipes of the table shown on the right wall thickness and material as specified for each pipe size.
- This unit uses R410A. Always use 1/2H pipes having a 1.0mm or thicker wall for ϕ19.05 or larger pipes, because O-type pipes do not meet the pressure resistance requirement.

Pipe diameter [mm]	ϕ6.35	ϕ9.52	ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58
Minimum pipe wall thickness [mm]	0.8	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Pipe material*	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe

*Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe C1220T, JIS H 3300

NOTE

- Select pipes having a wall thickness larger than the specified minimum pipe thickness.

5) On-site piping work

⚠IMPORTANT

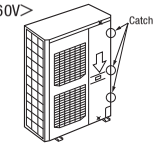
- Take care so that installed pipes may not touch components within a unit. If touching with an internal component, it will generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

How to remove the service panel

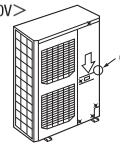
First remove screws (× mark) of the service panel and push it down into the direction of the arrow mark and then remove it by pulling it toward you.

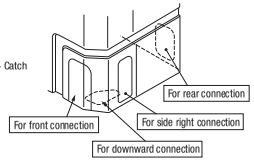
- The pipe can be laid in any of the following directions: side right, front, rear and downward.
- Remove a knock-out plate provided on the pipe penetration to open a minimum necessary area and attach an edging material supplied as an accessory by cutting it to an appropriate length before laying a pipe.
- Carry out the on site piping work with the service valve fully closed.
- Give sufficient protection to a pipe end (compressed and blazed, or with an adhesive tape) so that water or foreign matters may not enter the piping.
- Bend a pipe to a radius as large as practical.(R100–R150) Do not bend a pipe repeatedly to correct its form.
- Flare connection is used between the unit and refrigerant pipe. Flare a pipe after engaging a flare nut onto it. Flare dimensions for R410A are different from those for conventional R407C. Although we recommend the use of flaring tools designed specifically for R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the measurement of protrusion B with a protrusion control gauge.
- The pipe should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Tighten a flare joint securely with a double spanner.

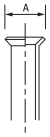
<250V, A200V, A160V>



<200V>

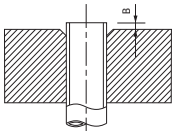






Flared pipe end: A (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	A 0 −0.4
ϕ6.35	9.1
ϕ9.52	13.2
ϕ12.7	16.6
ϕ15.88	19.7



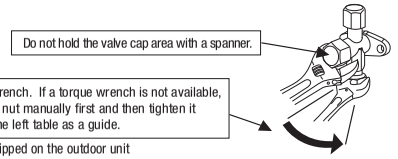
Copper pipe protrusion for flaring: B (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	In the case of a rigid (clutch) type	
	With an R410A tool	With a conventional tool
ϕ6.35	0–0.5	0.7–1.3
ϕ9.52		
ϕ12.7		
ϕ15.88		

⚠ CAUTION **Do not apply force beyond proper fastening torque in tightening the flare nut.**

Fix both liquid and gas service valves at the valve main bodies as illustrated on the right, and then fasten them, applying appropriate fastening torque.

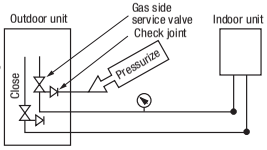
Service valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N-m)	Tightening angle (°)	Recommended length of a tool handle (mm)
φ6.35 (1/4")	14–18	45–60	150
φ9.52 (3/8")	34–42	30–45	200
φ12.7 (1/2")	49–61	30–45	250
φ15.88 (5/8")	68–82	15–20	300
φ19.05 (3/4")	100–120	15–20	450



6) Air tightness test

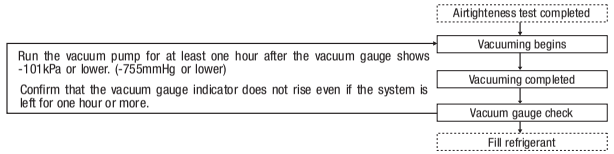
① Although outdoor and indoor units themselves have been tested for air tightness at the factory, check the connecting pipes after the installation work for air tightness from the service valve's check joint equipped on the outdoor unit side. While conducting a test, keep the service valve shut all the time.
a) Raise the pressure to 0.5 MPa, and then stop. Leave it for five minutes to see if the pressure drops.
b) Then raise the pressure to 1.5 MPa, and stop. Leave it for five more minutes to see if the pressure drops.
c) Then raise the pressure to the specified level (4.15 MPa), and record the ambient temperature and the pressure.
d) If no pressure drop is observed with an installation pressurized to the specified level and left for about one day, it is acceptable. When the ambient Temperature fall 1℃, the pressure also fall approximately 0.01 MPa. The pressure, if changed, should be compensated for.
e) If a pressure drop is observed in checking e) and a) – d), a leak exists somewhere. Find a leak by applying bubble test liquid to welded parts and flare joints and repair it. After repair, conduct an air-tightness test again.

② In conducting an air-tightness test, use nitrogen gas and pressurize the system with nitrogen gas from the gas side. Do not use a medium other than nitrogen gas under any circumstances.



7) Evacuation

<Work flow> When the system has remaining moisture inside or a leaky point, the vacuum gauge indicator will rise.
Check the system for a leaky point and then draw air to create a vacuum again.



Pay attention to the following points in addition to the above for the R410A and compatible machines.

○To prevent a different oil from entering, assign dedicated tools, etc. to each refrigerant type. Under no circumstances must a gauge manifold and a charge hose in particular be shared with other refrigerant types (R22, R407C, etc.).
○Use a counterflow prevention adapter to prevent vacuum pump oil from entering the refrigerant system.

8) Additional refrigerant charge

(1) Calculate a required refrigerant charge volume from the following table.

<Single type>

Item / Capacity	Standard refrigerant charge volume (kg)	Pipe length for standard refrigerant charge volume (m)	Additional charge volume (kg) per meter of refrigerant piping (liquid pipe)	Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory (kg)	Installation's pipe length (m) covered without additional refrigerant charge
200V	3.8	0	0.06 (Liquid piping φ9.52)	5.6	30
			0.145 (Liquid piping φ12.7)		
250V A160V, A200V	3.6		0.12	7.2	

<Twin, triple type>

Item / Capacity	Standard refrigerant charge volume (kg)	Pipe length for standard refrigerant charge volume (m)	Additional charge volume (kg) per meter of refrigerant piping (liquid pipe)		Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory (kg)	Installation's pipe length (m) covered without additional refrigerant charge
			Main pipe	Branch pipe		
200V	3.8	0	0.06 (Liquid piping φ9.52)	0.06	5.6	30
			0.145 (Liquid piping φ12.7)			
250V A160V, A200V	3.6		0.12	0.06	7.2	

- A standard refrigerant charge volume means a refrigerant charge volume for an installation with 0m long refrigerant piping.
- This unit contains factory charged refrigerant covering 30m of refrigerant piping and additional refrigerant charge on the installation site is not required for an installation with up to 30m refrigerant piping. When refrigerant piping exceeds 30m, additionally charge an amount calculated from the pipe length and the above table for the portion in excess of 30m.
- When refrigerant piping is shorter than 3m, reduce refrigerant by 1kg from the factory charged volume and adjust to 4.6kg or 6.2kg.
- If an existing pipe system is used, a required refrigerant charge volume will vary depending on the liquid pipe size. For further information, see "6. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING."

Formula to calculate the volume of additional refrigerant required

Model 200V	In the case of φ9.52mm main liquid piping	Additional charge volume (kg) = { Main pipe length (m) – 30 (m) } x 0.06 (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)
	In the case of φ12.7mm main liquid piping	Additional charge volume (kg) = { Main pipe length (m) – 30 (m) } x 0.145 (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)
Model 250V, A160V, A200V		Additional charge volume (kg) = { Main pipe length (m) – 30 (m) } x 0.12 (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)

*When an additional charge volume calculation result is negative, it is not necessary to charge refrigerant additionally.

- **To charge refrigerant again, recover refrigerant from the system first and then charge the volume calculated from the above table (Standard refrigerant charge volume + additional charge volume for total pipe length.)**

In case of 200V and using φ12.7 at main liquid piping, calculate the amount as follows
Total charge volume(kg) = Refrigerant volume charged for shipment at the factory + (Main piping length(m)-30(m))x0.145(kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) x 0.06 (kg/m)

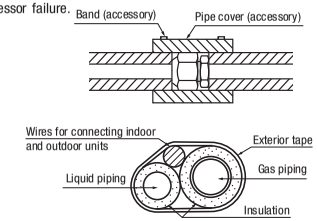
(2) Charging refrigerant

- Since R410A refrigerant must be charged in the liquid phase, you should charge it, keeping the container cylinder upside down or using a refrigerant cylinder equipped with a siphon tube.
- Charge refrigerant always from the liquid side service port with the service valve shut. When you find it difficult to charge a required amount, fully open the outdoor unit valves on both liquid and gas sides and charge refrigerant from the gas (suction) side service port, while running the unit in the cooling mode. In doing so, care must be taken so that refrigerant may be discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time. When the cylinder valve is throttled down or a dedicated conversion tool to change liquid-phase refrigerant into mist is used to protect the compressor, however, adjust charge conditions so that refrigerant will gasify upon entering the unit.
- In charging refrigerant, always charge a calculated volume by using a scale to measure the charge volume.
- When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete a charge operation within 30 minutes. Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause a compressor failure.

NOTE Put down the refrigerant volume calculated from the pipe length onto the label attached on the back side of the service panel.

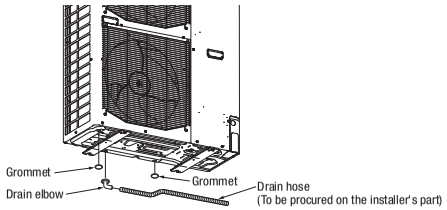
9) Heating and condensation prevention

(1) Dress refrigerant pipes (both gas and liquid pipes) for heat insulation and prevention of dew condensation.
(2) Use a heat insulating material that can withstand 120℃ or a higher temperature. Poor heat insulating capacity can cause heat insulation problems or cable deterioration.
- Improper heat insulation/anti-dew dressing can result in a water leak or dripping causing damage to household effects, etc.
- All gas pipes must be securely heat insulated in order to prevent damage from dripping water that comes from the condensation formed on them during a cooling operation or personal injury from burns because their surface can reach quite a high temperature due to discharged gas flowing inside during a heating operation.
- Wrap indoor units' flare joints with heat insulating parts (pipe cover) for heat insulation (both gas and liquid pipes).
- Give heat insulation to both gas and liquid side pipes. Bundle a heat insulating material and a pipe tightly together so that no gaps may be left between them and wrap them together with a connecting cable by a dressing tape.
- **Both gas and liquid pipes need to be dressed with 20 mm or thicker heat insulation materials above the ceiling where relative humidity exceeds 70%.**

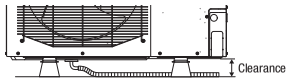


3. DRAIN PIPING WORK

- Execute drain piping by using a drain elbow and drain grommets supplied separately as option parts, where water drained from the outdoor unit is a problem.
- Water may drip where there is a larger amount of drain water. Seal around the drain elbow and drain grommets with putty or adequate caulking material.
- Condensed water may flow out from vicinity of service valve or connected pipes.
- Where you are likely to have several days of sub-zero temperatures in a row, do not use a drain elbow and drain grommets. (There is a risk of drain water freezing inside and blocking the drain.)
- Do not use drain elbow and grommet made of plastic for drain piping when base heater for outdoor unit is used. Plastic grommet and elbow will be damaged and burnt in worst case.
- Prepare another drain tray made of metallic material for collecting drain when base heater is used.



- When condensed water needs to be led to a drain, etc., install the unit on a flat base (supplied separately as an option part) or concrete blocks. Then, please secure space for the drain elbow and the drain hose.

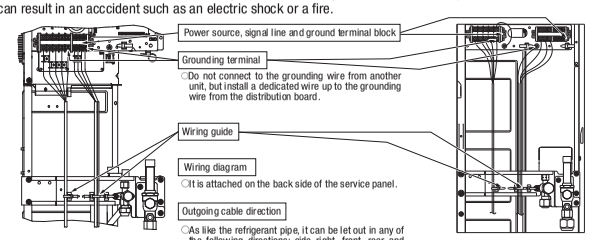


4. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK For details of electrical cabling, refer to the indoor unit installation manual.

Electrical installation work must be performed by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country.
Electrical installation work must be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installations in the country.

- Do not use any supply cord lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  - braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51),
  - ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53)
  - flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);

  Do not use anything lighter than polychloroprene sheathed flexible cord (code designation 60245 IEC57) for supply cords of parts of appliances for outdoor use.
- Ground the unit. Do not connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or telephone grounding wire. If impropery grounded, an electric shock or malfunction may result.
- A grounding wire must be connected before connecting the power cable. Provide a grounding wire longer than the power cable.
- The installation of an impulse withstanding type earth leakage breaker is necessary. A failure to install an earth leakage breaker can result in an acccident such as an electric shock or a fire.



Model 200V

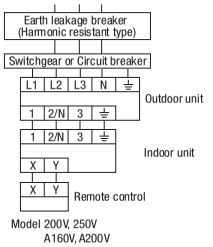
Model 250V
A160V, A200V

- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completeted .
- Do not use a condensive capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It dose not improve power factor, while it can cause an abnormal overheat accident)
- For power source cables, use conduits.
- Do not lay electronic control cables (remote control and signaling wires) and other cables together outside the unit. Laying them together can result in the malfunctioning or a failure of the unit due to electric noises.
- Fasten cables so that may not touch the piping, etc.
- When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection and then attach the cover securely. (Improper cover attachment can result in malfunctioning or a failure of the unit, if water penetrates into the box.)
- Always use a three-core cable for an indoor-outdoor connecting cable. Never use a shield cable. Separate grounding wire from indoor - outdoor connecting wire.
- Connect a pair bearing a common terminal number with an indoor-outdoor connecting wire.
- In cabling, fasten cables securely with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections.
- Grounding terminals are provided in the control box.

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

- Always perform grounding system installation work with the power cord unplugged.

⚠ CAUTION Always use an earth leakage circuit breaker designed for inverter circuits to prevent a faulty operation.



Model 200V, 250V
A160V, A200V

Model	Power source	Power cable thickness (mm^2)	MAX. over current (A)	Cable length (m)	Grounding wire thickness	Indoor-outdoor wire thickness × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	20	54	ϕ1.6mm	ϕ1.6mm x 3
250V, A160V, A200V			21	51		

※At the connection with FDU indoor unit.

Model	Power source	Power cable thickness (mm^2)	MAX. over current (A)	Cable length (m)	Grounding wire thickness	Indoor-outdoor wire thickness × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	25	43	ϕ1.6mm	ϕ1.6mm x 3
250V, A160V, A200V			27	40		

※At the connection with FDUM indoor unit.

Model	Power source	Power cable thickness (mm^2)	MAX. over current (A)	Cable length (m)	Grounding wire thickness	Indoor-outdoor wire thickness × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	22	49	ϕ1.6mm	ϕ1.6mm x 3
250V, A160V, A200V			24	45		

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear or Circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

5. TEST RUN

⚠ WARNING
- Before conduct a test run, make sure that the service valves are opened.
- Turn on power 6 hours prior to a test run to energize the crank case heater.
- In case of the first operation after turning on power, even if the unit does not move for 30 minutes, it is not a breakdown.
- Always give a 3-minute or longer interval before you start the unit again whenever it is stopped.
- Removing the service panel will expose high-voltage live parts and high-temperature parts, which are quite dangerous. Take utmost care not to incur an electric shock or burns. Do not leave the unit with the service panel open.

} A failure to observe these instructions can result in a compressor breakdown.

⚠ CAUTION
- When you operate switches (SW3, SW5) for on-site setting, be careful not to touch a live part.
- You cannot check discharge pressure from the liquid service valve charge port.
- The 4-way valve (20S) is energized during a heating operation.
- When power source is cut off to reset the unit, give 3 or more minutes before you turn on power again after power is cut off. If this procedure is not observed in turning on power again, "Communication error between outdoor and indoor unit" may occur.

1) Test run method

(1) A test run can be initiated from an outdoor unit by using SW3-3 and SW3-4 for on-site setting.
(2) Switching SW3-3 to ON will start the compressor.
(3) The unit will start a cooling operation, when SW3-4 is OFF, or a heating operation, when SW3-4 is ON.
(4) **Do not fail to switch SW3-3 to OFF when a test run is completed.**

SW-3-3	SW-3-4	
ON	OFF	Cooling during a test run
	ON	Heating during a test run
OFF	—	Normal or After the test operation

2) Checking the state of the unit in operation

Use check joints provided on the piping before and after the four-way valve installed inside the outdoor unit for checking discharge pressure and suction pressure.
As indicated in the table shown on the right, pressure detected at each point will vary depending on whether a cooling or heating operation has been selected.

	Check joint of the pipe	Charge port of the gas operation valve
Cooling operation	Discharge pressure (High pressure)	Suction pressure (Low pressure)
Heating operation	Suction pressure (Low pressure)	Discharge pressure (High pressure)

3) Setting SW3-1, SW3-2, on-site

(1) Defrost control switching (SW3-1)
- ·When this switch is turned ON, the unit will run in the defrost mode more frequently.
- ·Set this switch to ON, when installed in a region where outdoor temperature falls below zero during the season the unit is run for a heating operation.

(2) Snow guard fan control (SW3-2)
- ·When this switch is turned on, the outdoor unit fan will run for 10 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3℃ or lower and the compressor is not running.
- ·When the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.

4) Failure diagnosis in a test run

Error indicated on the remote control unit	Printed circuit board LED(The cycles of 5 seconds)		Failure event	Action
	Red LED	Green LED		
E40	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	63H1 actuation or operation with service valves shut (occurs mainly during a heating operation)	1. Check whether the service valves are open. 2. If an error has been canceled when 3 minutes have elapsed since a compressor stop, you can restart the unit by effecting Check Reset from the remote control unit.
E49	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	Low pressure error or operation with service valves shut (occurs mainly during a cooling operation)	

- If an error code other than those listed above is indicated, refer to the wiring diagram of the outdoor unit and the indoor unit.

5) The state of the electronic expansion valve.

The following table illustrates the steady states of the electronic expansion valve.

	When power is turned on	When the unit comes to a normal stop		When the unit comes to an abnormal stop	
		During a cooling operation	During a heating operation	During a cooling operation	During a heating operation
Valve for a cooling operation	Complete shut position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position	Full open position
Valve for a heating operation	Full open position	Full open position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position

6) Heed the following on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker.

- ·This outdoor unit may start in the standby mode (waiting for a compressor startup), which can continue up to 30 minutes, to prevent the oil level in the compressor from lowering on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.
- ·At the first operation of heating mode after turning on the circuit breaker, the outdoor unit may start in cooling mode a while to prevent from liquid refrigerant back to compressor. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.

Items to check before a test run

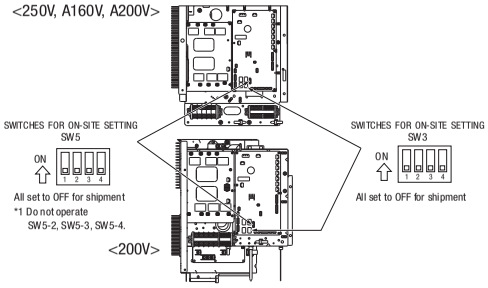
- When you leave the outdoor unit with power supplied to it, be sure to close the panel.

Item No.used in the installation manual	Item	Check item	Check
2	Refrigerant plumbing	If brazed, was it brazed under a nitrogen gas flow?	
		Were air-tightness test and vacuum extraction surely performed?	
		Are heat insulation materials installed on both liquid and gas pipes?	
		Are service valves surely opened for both liquid and gas systems?	
		Have you recorded the additional refrigerant charge volume and refrigerant pipe length on the panel's label?	
4	Electric wiring	Is the unit free of cabling errors such as uncompleted connection, an absent or reversed phase?	
		Are properly rated electrical equipments used for circuit breakers and cables?	
		Doesn't cabling cross-connect between units, where more than one unit are installed?	
		Aren't indoor-outdoor signal wires connected to remote control wires?	
		Do indoor-outdoor connecting cables connect between the same terminal numbers?	
		Are either VCT cabtyre cables or WF flat cables used for indoor-outdoor connecting cables?	
		Does grounding satisfy the D type grounding (type III grounding) requirements?	
		Is the unit grounded with a dedicated grounding wire not connected to another unit's grounding wire?	
		Are cables free of loose screws at their connection points?	
		Are cables held down with cable clamps so that no external force works onto terminal connections?	
—	Indoor unit	Is indoor unit installation work completed?	
		Where a face cover should be attached onto an indoor unit, is the face cover attached to the indoor unit?	

Test run procedure

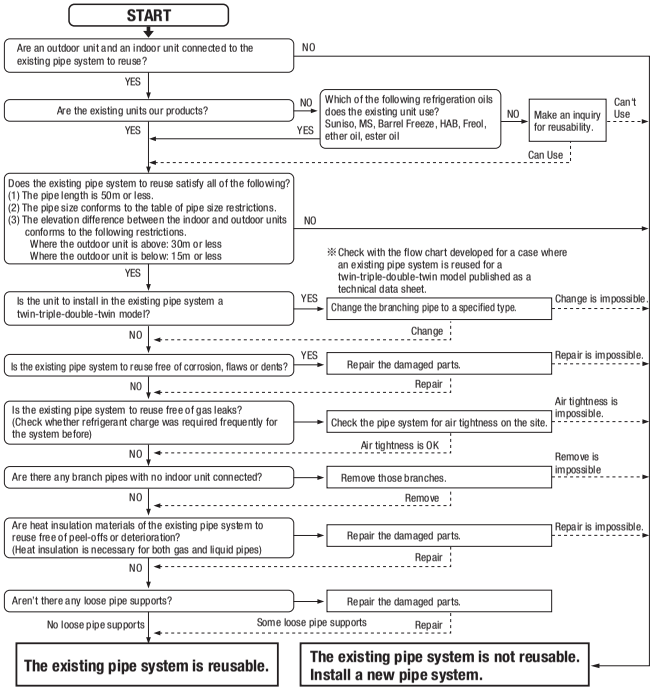
- Always carry out a test run and check the following in order as listed.

Turn	The contents of operation	Check
①	Open the gas side service valve fully.	
②	Open the liquid side service valve fully.	
③	Close the panel.	
④	Where a remote control unit is used for unit setup on the installation site, follow instructions for unit setup on the installation site with a remote control unit.	
⑤	SW3-3 ON / SW3-4 OFF: the unit will start a cooling operation.	
	SW3-3 ON / SW3-4 ON: the unit will start a heating operation.	
⑥	When the unit starts operation, press the wind direction button provided on the remote control unit to check its operation.	
⑦	Place your hand before the indoor unit's diffuser to check whether cold (warm) winds come out in a cooling (heating) operation.	
⑧	Make sure that a red LED is not blinking.	
⑨	When you complete the test run, do not forget to turn SW3-3 to the OFF position.	
⑩	Where options are used, check their operation according to the respective instruction manuals.	



6. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING.

Check whether an existing pipe system is reusable or not by using the following flow chart.



⚠ WARNING <Where the existing unit can be run for a cooling operation.>

Carry out the following steps with the excising unit (in the order of (1), (2), (3) and (4))

(1) Run the unit for 30 minutes for a cooling operation.
(2) Stop the indoor fan and run the unit for 3 minutes for a cooling operation (returning liquid)
(3) Close the liquid side service valve of the outdoor unit and pump down (refrigerant recovery)
(4) Blow with nitrogen gas. ※ If discolored refrigeration oil or any foreign matters is discharged by the blow, wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- For the flare nut, do not use the old one, but use the one supplied with the outdoor unit. Process a flare to the dimensions specified for R410A.
- **Turn on-site setting switch SW5-1** to the ON position. (Where the gas pipe size is ϕ19.05)

<Where the existing unit cannot be run for a cooling operation.>

Wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- If you choose to wash the pipe system, contact our distributor in the area.

<Table of pipe size restrictions>

◎:Standard pipe size ○:Usable
△:Restricted to shorter pipe length limits ×:Not usable

Additional charging amount of refrigerant per 1m		0.06kg/m			0.12kg/m ※5			0.2kg/m		
Pipe size	Liquid pipe	ϕ9.52	ϕ9.52	ϕ9.52	ϕ12.7	ϕ12.7	ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ15.88	ϕ15.88
	Gas pipe	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58	ϕ22.22	ϕ25.4	ϕ28.58
200V	Usability	◎	○※2	○※2	△	◎	◎	△	△	×
	Maximum one-way pipe length	35	70	70	35	70	70	30m	30m	×
	Length covered without additional charge	30	30	30	16.5	16.5	16.5	9	9	×
250V A160V A200V	Usability	×	×	×	◎	◎	◎	△	△	△
	Maximum one-way pipe length	×	×	×	35	70	70	35	40	40
	Length covered without additional charge	×	×	×	30	30	25	18	18	18

<Pipe system after the branching pipe>

			After 1st branch ※3			After 2nd branch		
Additional charging amount of refrigerant per 1m			0.06kg/m			0.06kg/m		
Pipe size	Liquid pipe		ϕ9.52			ϕ9.52		
	Gas pipe		ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ19.05※1	ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ19.05※1
Model	Combination type	Combination of capacity						
200V	Twin	100+100	×	◎	○	–	–	–
	Triple A	71+71+71	×	◎	○	–	–	–
	Triple B	71+71+71	×	◎	○※4	×	◎	○
	Double twin	50+50+50+50	×	◎	○	◎	○	×
250V A160V A200V	Twin	125+125	×	◎	○	–	–	–
	Triple A	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
	Triple B	60+60+125	×	◎	○※4	◎	×	×
	Triple B	71+71+100	×	◎	○※4	×	◎	×
	Double twin	60+60+60+60	×	◎	○	◎	○	×

※1 Because of its insufficient pressure resistance, **turn the dip switch SW5-1** provided on the outdoor unit board to the ON position for ϕ19.05 × t1.0. (In the case of a twin-triple-double-twin model, this also applies to the case where ϕ19.05 × t1.0 is used in a pipe system after the first branching point.) However, you need not turn the dip switch SW5-1 to the ON position, if 1/2H pipes or pipes having 1.2 or thicker walls are used.
※2 When the main pipe length exceeds 40m, a significant capacity drop may be experienced due to pressure loss in the liquid pipe system. Use ϕ12.7 for the liquid main.
※3 Piping size after branch should be equal or smaller than main pipe size.
※4 Piping size from first branch to indoor unit should be ϕ9.52 (Liquid) / ϕ15.88 (Gas).
※5 In case of 200V, change 0.145 kg/m.
- When refrigerant piping is shoter than 3m, reduce refrigerant by 1kg from factory charged volume.
- Any combinations of pipe sizes not listed in the table or marked with × in the table are not usable.

<The model types of existing units of which branching pipes are reusable.>

Models later than Type 8.

●FDC＊＊＊8□□□　●FDCP＊＊＊8□□□

The branching pipes used with models other than those listed above are not reusable because of their insufficient pressure resistance. Please use our genuine branching pipes for R410A.

●＊＊＊are numbers representing horsepower. □□□ is an alphanumeric letter.

Formula to calculate additional charge volume

Additional charge volume (kg) = {Main pipe length (m) − Length covered without additional charge shown in the table (m)} × Additional charge volume per meter of pipe shown in the table (kg/m) + Total length of branch pipes (m) × Additional charge volume per meter of pipe shown in the table (kg/m)

※ If you obtain a negative figure as a result of calculation, no additional refrigerant needs to be charged.

Example) When an 250V (twin installation) is installed in a 40m long existing pipe system (main pipe length 30m, liquid ϕ15.88, gas ϕ25.4; pipe length after branching pipe 5m x 2, liquid ϕ9.52, gas ϕ15.88), the quantity of refrigerant to charge additionally should be (30m-18m) x 0.2kg/m + 5m x 2 x 0.06kg/m = 3.0 kg.

9.5 Method for connecting the accessory pipe

PSC012D028A F

Model FDC200VSA

- Be sure to use the accessory pipe to connect the service valve on the gas side with the field pipe.
- Be sure to use the straight pipe（Procured at the field） shown in the table 1 applicable.
- When tightening the flare, connect the pipe securely by pressing the flared face of pipe against the service valve.
- When brazing between the pipe in place and the attached pipe, confirm that no excessive force is applied to the flare joint. Otherwise gas could leak from the flare joint.
- Connect the attached pipe according to the following steps ① – ⑤.

① Referring to Table 2 and Table 3, prepare the straight pipe and the elbow in the field, which are used in the construction examples Ⓐ – Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.

② Firstly, use the accessory pipe to assemble the connecting pipe assembly outside the outdoor unit.
（As shown in the figure of connecting examples Ⓐ – Ⓓ.）

③ After assembling the connecting pipe, connect it to the service valve on the gas side inside the outdoor unit. Tighten the flare nut with appropriate torque.

Proper torque	
φ19.05	100 – 120N･m

④ After connection of the connecting pipe assembly to the service valve on the gas side, braze the connecting pipe assembly and the field pipe.

⑤ When connecting pipe contacts wiring, attach heat insulating material to the pipe in order to prevent from contacting of the pipe and wiring.（ If the wiring is rubbed with the pipe and the cover of wiring is teared, there is a risk of a short circuit or an electric shock.）

About brazing

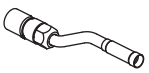
- Be sure to braze while supplying nitrogen gas.
  If no nitrogen gas is supplied, a large amount of impurity （oxidized film） will be generated, which may clog the capillary tube and the expansion valve, resulting in fatal malfunction.

Table 1 Pipe specification

Refrigerant line（one way） length（m）	
≦35（m）	φ22.22 x T1.0
≦70（m）	φ25.4 x T1.0 or φ28.58 x T1.0

- Be sure to use pipes of 1／2H material, and wall thickness above 1mm.（Pressure resistance of O-type pipe is not enough）

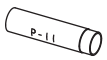
A



Accessory pipe A x 1 pc.

Heat insulating material is attached to the accessory pipe with band. When installing the heat insulating material, cut the band and retrieve it.

B



Accessory pipe B x 1 pc.

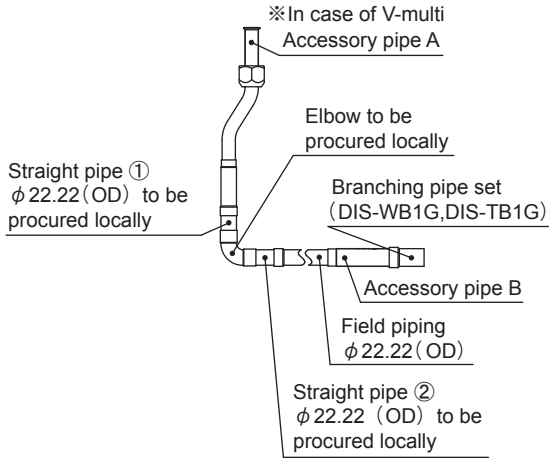
- Branching pipe set can be used by using the accessory pipe B. When φ22.22（OD） size of the indoor unit gas pipe is used, the accessory pipe B is unnecessary.

Table 2 Parts used for the connecting pipe assembly

No.	Name	Quantity	Remark
1	Accessory pipe A	1	Accessory
2	Straight pipe ①	1	Procured at the field
3	Straight pipe ②	1 or 0	Procured at the field（Not required for downward direction）
4	Elbow	1 or 0	Procured at the field（Not required for downward direction）

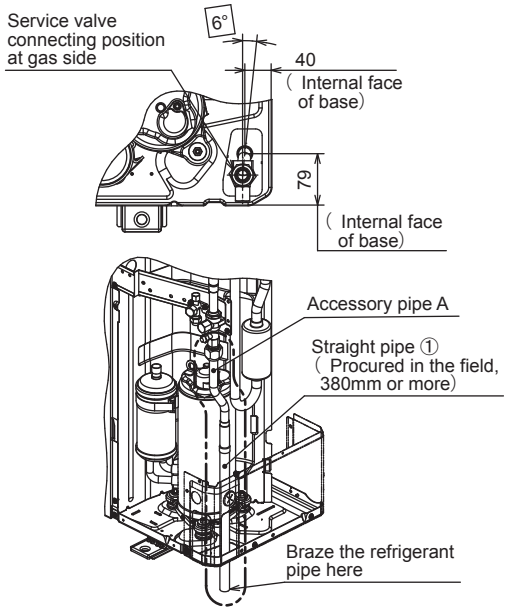
Table 3 Length and specification of straight pipe（Procured in the field）

	ⒶDownward	ⒷForward	ⒸRightward	ⒹBackward
Straight pipe ①	380mm or more	200mm	155mm	215mm
Straight pipe ②	—	160mm or more	160mm or more	370mm or more

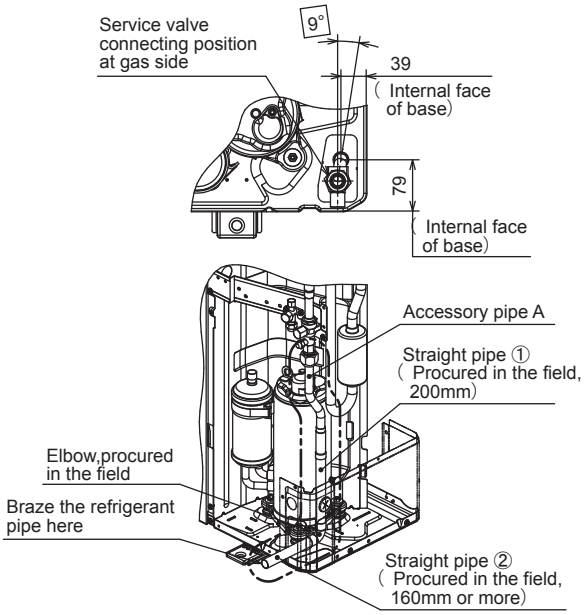


【 Connection example Ⓐ – Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.】

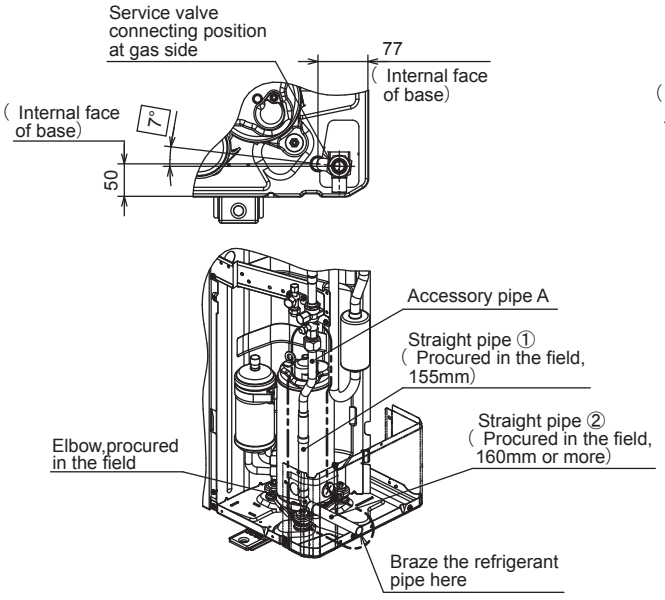
- The piping angle shown below is an example in case of 15mm of heat insulating material.
  Adjust an angle, according to the thickness of heat insulating material.
  Pass the connecting pipe in a hole after angle adjustment.



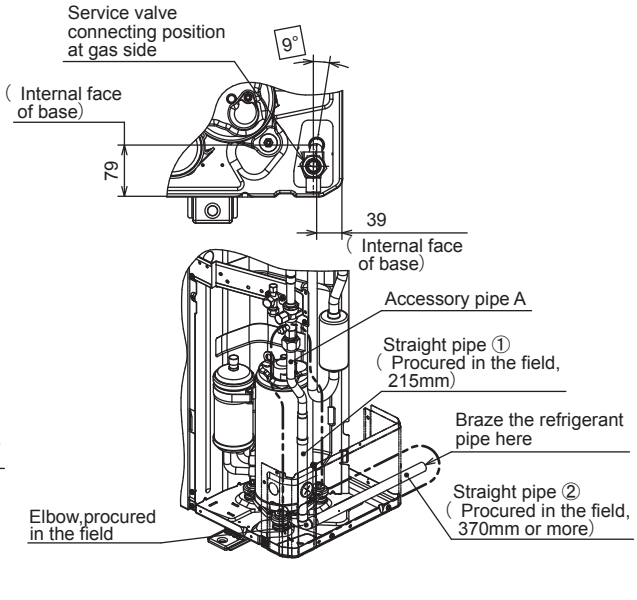
Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓐ
(Downward connection)



Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓑ
(Forward connection)



Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓒ
(Rightward connection)



Connection example
of refrigerant pipe-Ⓓ
(Backward connection)

Model FDC250VSA

PSC012D028C F

- Be sure to use the accessory pipe to connect the service valve on the gas side with the field pipe.
- Be sure to use the straight pipe （Procured at the field） shown in the table 1 applicable to the model of outdoor unit.
- When tightening the flare, connect the pipe securely by pressing the flared face of pipe against the service valve.
- When brazing between the pipe in place and the attached pipe, confirm that no excessive force is applied to the flare joint. Otherwise gas could leak from the flare joint.
- Connect the attached pipe according to the following steps ① – ⑤.

① Referring to Table 2 and Table 3, prepare the straight pipe and the elbow in the field, which are used in the construction examples Ⓐ – Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.

② Firstly, use the accessory pipe to assemble the connecting pipe assembly outside the outdoor unit. (As shown in the figure of connecting examples Ⓐ – Ⓓ.)

③ After assembling the connecting pipe, connect it to the service valve on the gas side inside the outdoor unit. Tighten the flare nut with appropriate torque.

Proper torque	
ϕ19.05	100 – 120N･m

④ After connection of the connecting pipe assembly to the service valve on the gas side, braze the connecting pipe assembly and the field pipe.

⑤ When connecting pipe contacts wiring, attach heat insulating material to the pipe in order to prevent from contacting of the pipe and wiring. （If the wiring is rubbed with the pipe and the cover of wiring is teared, there is a risk of a short circuit or an electric shock.）

About brazing

- Be sure to braze while supplying nitrogen gas.
  If no nitrogen gas is supplied, a large amount of impurity （oxidized film） will be generated, which may clog the capillary tube and the expansion valve, resulting in fatal malfunction.

※In case of V-multi
（In case of FDC250V）

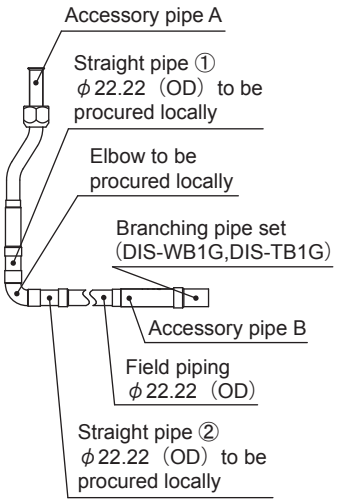


Table 1 Pipe specification

		Refrigerant line （one way） length （m）	
Single type	FDC250V	≦35 （m）	ϕ22.22 x T1.0
		≦70 （m）	ϕ25.4 x T1.0 or ϕ28.58 x T1.0
Multi type	FDC224KXZPE1	≦90 （m）	ϕ19.05 x T1.0
		≦120 （m）	ϕ22.22 x T1.0
	FDC280KXZPE1	≦90 （m）	ϕ22.22 x T1.0
		≦120 （m）	ϕ25.4 x T1.0 or ϕ28.58 x T1.0

- Be sure to use pipes of 1／2H material, and wall thickness above 1mm. （Pressure resistance of O-type pipe is not enough）

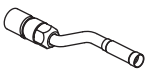
Table 2 Parts used for the connecting pipe assembly

No.	Name	Quantity	Remark
1	Accessory pipe A	1	Accessory
2	Straight pipe ①	1	Procured at the field
3	Straight pipe ②	1 or 0	Procured at the field （Not required for downward direction）
4	Elbow	1 or 0	Procured at the field （Not required for downward direction）

Table 3 Length and specification of straight pipe （Procured in the field）

	ⒶDownward	ⒷForward	ⒸRightward	ⒹBackward
Straight pipe ①	400mm or more	192.5 – 202.5mm	192.5 – 202.5mm	210mm
Straight pipe ②	—	105mm or more	155mm or more	370mm or more

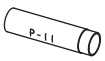
A



Accessory pipe A x 1 pc.
（Except FDC224KXZPE1）

Heat insulating material is attached to the accessory pipe with band. When installing the heat insulating material, cut the band and retrieve it.

B

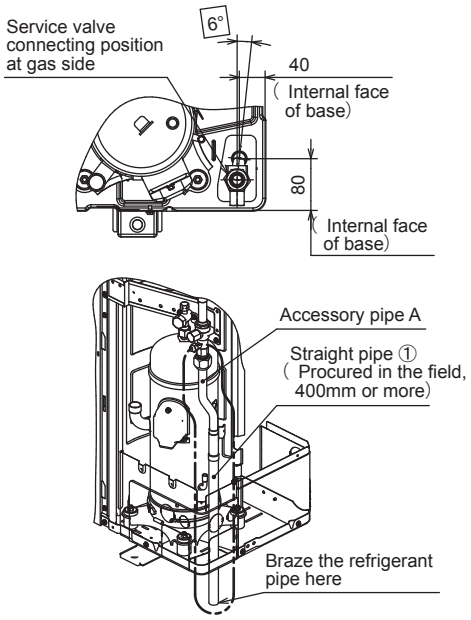


Accessory pipe B x 1 pc.
（Only use for FDC250V）

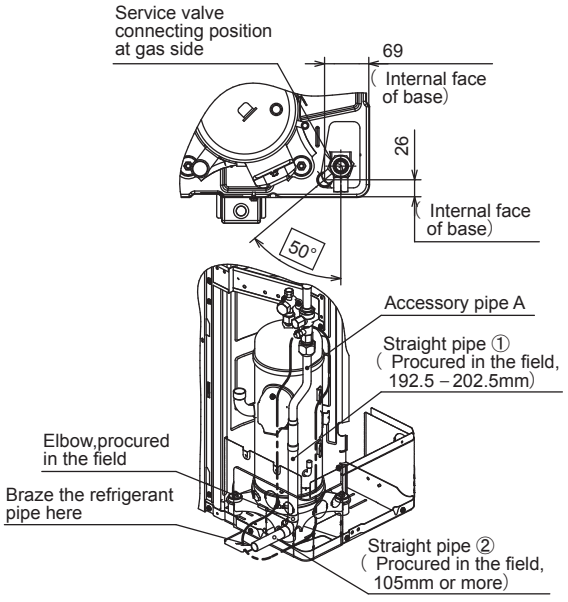
- Branching pipe set can be used by using the accessory pipe B. When ϕ22.22 （OD） size of the indoor unit gas pipe is used, the accessory pipe B is unnecessary.

【 Connection example Ⓐ – Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.】

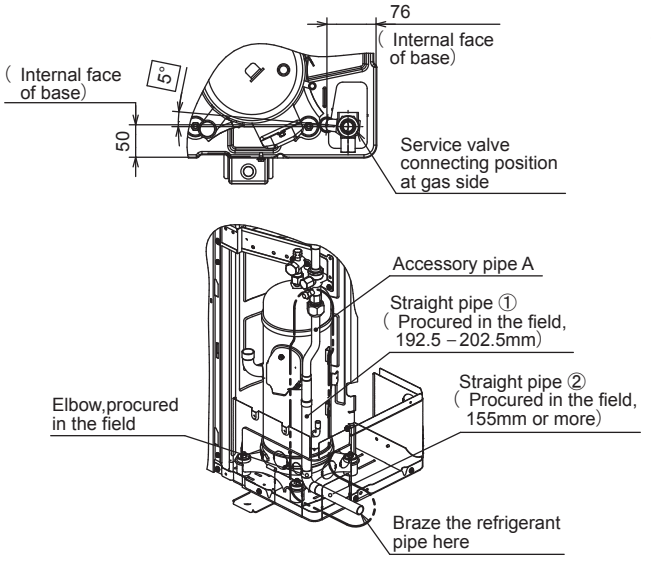
● The piping angle shown below is an example in case of 15mm of heat insulating material.
Adjust an angle, according to the thickness of heat insulating material.
Pass the connecting pipe in a hole after angle adjustment.



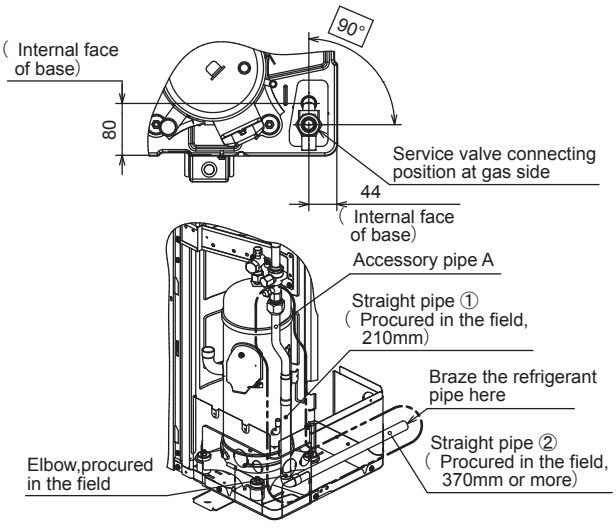
Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓐ
(Downward connection)



Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓑ
(Forward connection)



Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓒ
(Rightward connection)



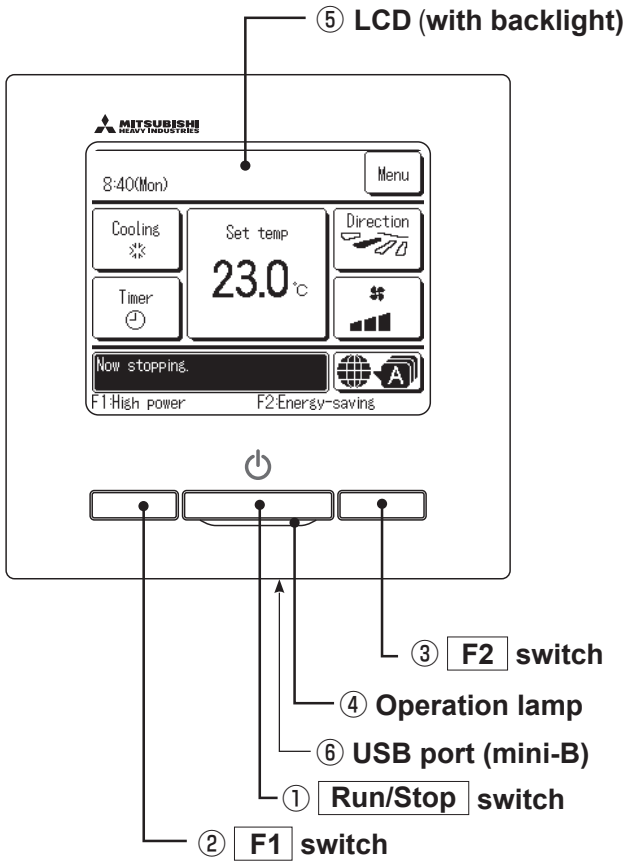
Connection example of refrigerant pipe-Ⓓ
(Backward connection)

10. OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

10.1 Remote control (Option parts)

(1) Wired remote control

Model RC-EX3A



Touch panel system, which is operated by tapping the LCD screen with a finger, is employed for any operations other than the ①Run/Stop, ②F1 and ③F2 switches.

① Run/Stop switch

One push on the button starts operation and another push stops operation.

② F1 switch③ F2 switch

This switch starts operation that is set in F1/F2 function change.

④ Operation lamp

This lamp lights in green (yellow-green) during operation. It changes to red (orange) if any error occurs.
Operation lamp luminance can be changed.

⑤ LCD (with backlight)

A tap on the LCD lights the backlight.
The backlight turns off automatically if there is no operation for certain period of time. Lighting period of the backlight lighting can be changed.
If the backlight is ON setting, when the screen is tapped while the backlight is turned off, the backlight only is turned on. (Operations with switches ①,② and ③ are excluded.)

⑥ USB port

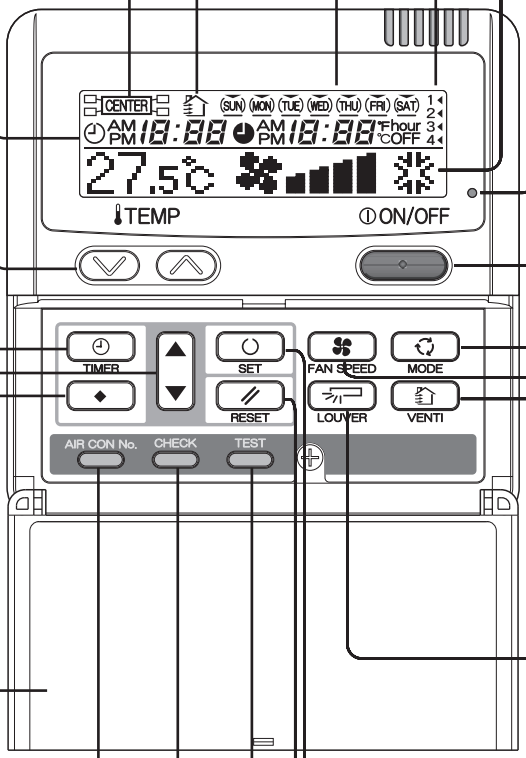
USB connector (mini-B) allows connecting to a personal computer.
For operating methods, refer to the instruction manual attached to the software for personal computer (remote control utility software).

Note(1) When connecting to a personal computer, do not connect simultaneously with other USB devices.
Please be sure to connect to the computer directly,without going through a hub, etc.

Model RC-E5

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened. Note that all the items that may be displayed in the liquid crystal display area are shown in the figure for the sake of explanation.
Characters displayed with dots in the liquid crystal display area are abbreviated.

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened.



Ventilaion display
Displayed during ventilation operation

Central control display
Displayed when the air conditioning system is controlled by central control.

Timer operation display
Displays the timer operation setting.

Temperature setting buttons
These buttons are used to set the temperature of the room.

Timer button
This button is used to set the timer mode.

Timer setting buttons
These buttons are used to set the timer mode and the time.

ESP button
This button is used to select the auto static pressure adjustment mode.

Cover

AIR CON No. button
Display the indoor unit number connected to this remote control.

CHECK button
This button is used at servicing.

TEST button
This button is used during test operation.

Weekly timer display
Displays the settings of the weekly timer.

Operation setting display area
Displays setting temperature, air flow volume, operation mode and oparation message.

Operation/check indicator light
During oparation: Lit in green
In case of error: Flashing in red

Operation/stop button
This button is used to operate and stop the air-conditioning system.
Press the button once to operate the system and press it once again to stop the system.

MODE button
This button is used to change the operation mode.

FAN SPEED button
This button is used to set the air flow volume.

VENT button
This button is used to operate external ventilator.

LOUVER button
This button is used to operate/stop the swing louver.

SET button
•This button is used to fix the setting.
•This button is used to set the silent mode.

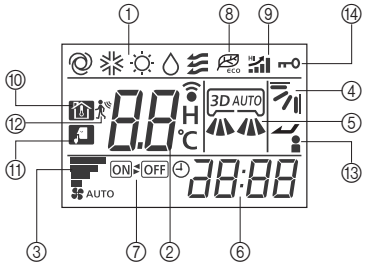
RESET button
•Press this button while making settings to go back to the previous operation.
•This button is also used to reset the "**FILTER CLEANING**" display. (Press it after cleaning the air filter)

∗ All displays are described in the liguid crystal display for explanation.

(2) Wireless remote control

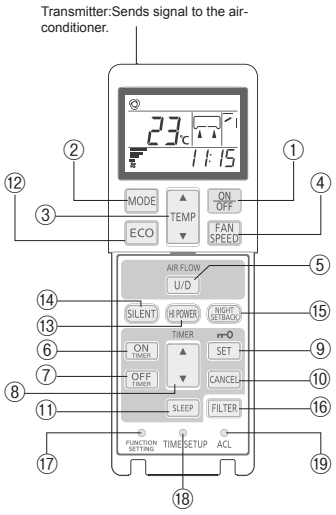
RCN-E2

Indication section



①	OPERATION MODE display	Indicates selected operation mode.
②	SET TEMP display	Indicates set temperature.
	SLEEP TIMER time display	Indicates the amount of time remaining on the sleep timer.
	Indoor function setting number display	Indicates the setting number of the indoor function setting.
③	FAN SPEED display	Indicates the selected air flow volume.
④	UP/DOWN AIR FLOW display	Indicates the up/down louver position.
⑤	LEFT/RIGHT AIR FLOW display	Indicates the left/right louver position.
⑥	Clock display	Indicates the current time. If the timer is set, the ON TIMER and OFF TIMER setting times are indicated.
⑦	ON/OFF TIMER display	Displayed when the timer is set.
⑧	ECO mode display	Displayed when the energy-saving operation is active.
⑨	HI POWER display	Displayed when the high power operation is active.
⑩	NIGHT SETBACK display	Displayed when the home leave mode is active.
⑪	SILENT display	Displayed when the silent mode control is active.
⑫	Motion sensor display	Displayed when the infrared sensor control(motion sensor control) is enabled.
⑬	Anti draft setting display	Displayed when anti draft setting is enabled.
⑭	Child lock display	Displayed when child lock is enabled.

Operation section



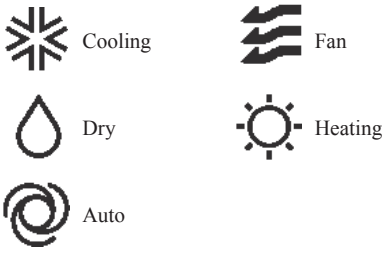
①	ON/OFF button	When this is pressed once, the air-conditioner starts to operate and when this is pressed once again, it stops operating.
②	MODE button	Every time this button is pressed, displays switch as below (AUTO) → (COOL) → (HEAT) → (FAN) → (DRY) →
③	TEMP button	Change the set temperature by pressing ▲ or ▼ button.
④	FAN SPEED button	The fan speed is switched in the following order: 1-speed → 2-speed → 3-speed → 4-speed → AUTO → 1-speed.
⑤	U/D button	Used to determine the up/down louver position.
⑥	ON TIMER button	Used to set the ON TIMER.
⑦	OFF TIMER button	Used to set the OFF TIMER.
⑧	SELECT button	Used to switch the time when setting the timer or adjusting the time. Used to switch the settings of the indoor function.
⑨	SET button	Used to determine the setting when setting the timer or adjusting the time. Used to determine the settings of the indoor function. When press and hold SET button ,Child Lock is enabled.
⑩	CANCEL button	Used to cancel the timer setting.
⑪	SLEEP button	Used to set the sleep timer.
⑫	ECO button	Pressing this button starts the energy-saving operation. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑬	HI POWER button	Pressing this button starts the high power operation. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑭	SILENT button	Pressing this button starts the silent mode control. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑮	NIGHT SETBACK button	Pressing this button starts the home leave mode. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑯	FILTER button	Pressing this button resets FILTER SIGN.
⑰	FUNCTION SETTING switch	Used to set the indoor function.
⑱	TIME SETUP switch	Used to set the current time.
⑲	ACL switch	Used to reset the microcomputer.

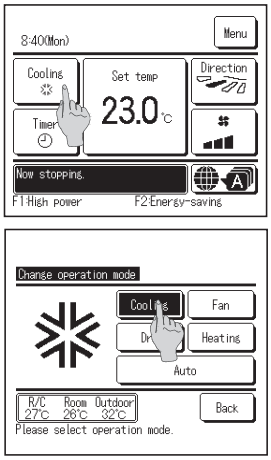
10.2 Operation control function by the wired remote control

●Model RC-EX3A

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(a) Tap the change operation mode button on the TOP screen.
(b) When the change operation mode screen is displayed, tap the button of desired mode.
(c) When the operation mode is selected, the display returns to the TOP screen.
Icons displayed have the following meanings.



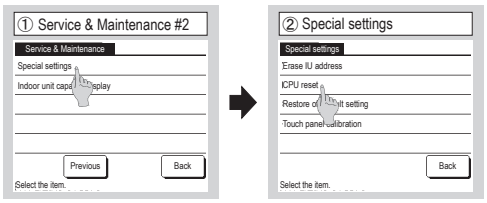


Notes (1) Operation modes which cannot be selected depending on combinations of indoor unit and outdoor unit are not displayed.
(2) When the Auto is selected,the cooling and heating switching operation is performed automatically according to indoor and outdoor temperatures.

(2) CPU reset

Reset CPU from the remote control as follows.

TOP screen → Menu ⇒ Service setting ⇒ Service & Maintenance ⇒ Service password



The selected screen is displayed.

The selected screen is displayed.

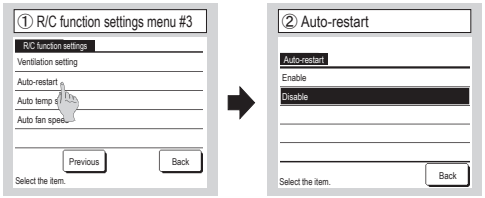
CPU reset

Microcomputers of indoor unit and outdoor unit connected are reset (State of restoration after power failure).

(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power source failure)

Enable the Auto-restart function from the remote control as follows.

TOP screen → Menu ⇒ Service setting ⇒ R/C function settings ⇒ Service password



If the unit stops during operation,

Enable

It returns to the state before the power failure as soon as the power source is restored (After the end of the primary control at the power on).

Disable

It stops after the restoration of power source.

●Since the status of remote control is retained in memory always, it restarts operations according to the contents of memory as soon as the power source is restored. Although the timer mode is cancelled, the weekly timer, peak cut timer and silent mode timer operate according to the following contents:

・When the clock setting is valid : These timer settings are also valid.
・When the clock setting is invalid : These timer settings become “Invalid” since the clock setting is invalid.
These timer settings have to be changed to “Valid” after the timer setting.

●Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

Note(1) Items (f) and (g) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

(a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized.

(b) Operation mode

(c) Air flow volume mode

(d) Room temperature setting

(e) Louver auto swing/stop
However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).

(f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the administrator or installation function settings ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)

(g) Weekly timer, peak-cut timer or silent mode timer settings

(h) Remote control function setting

(4) Alert displays

If the following (a) to (c) appear, check and repair as follows.

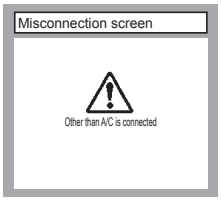
(a) Communication check between indoor unit and remote control

●This appears if communications cannot be established between the remote control and the indoor unit.
Check whether the system is correctly connected (indoor unit, outdoor unit, remote control) and whether the power source for the outdoor unit is connected.

(b) Clock setting check

●This appears when the timer settings are done without clock setting.
Set the clock setting before the timer settings.

(c) Misconnection



●This appears when something other than the air-conditioner has been connected to the remote control.
Check the location to which the remote control is connected.

●Model RC-E5

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(2) CPU reset

This functions when "CHECK" and "ESP" buttons on the remote control are pressed simultaneously. Operation is same as that of the power source reset.

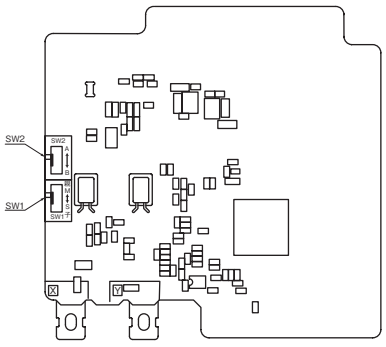
(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power source failure)

- This becomes effective if "Power failure compensation effective" is selected with the setting of remote control function.
- Since it memorizes always the condition of remote control, it starts operation according to the contents of memory no sooner than normal state is recovered after the power failure. Although the auto swing stop position and the timer mode are cancelled, the weekly timer setting is restored with the holiday setting for all weekdays.
  After recovering from the power failure, it readjusts the clock and resets the holiday setting for each weekday so that the setting of weekly timer becomes effective.
- Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

  Note (1) Items (f), (g) and (h) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

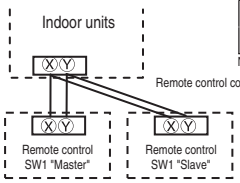
  (a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
  If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized. (Although the timer mode is cancelled at the recovery from power failure, the setting of weekly timer is changed to the holiday setting for all weekdays.)
  (b) Operation mode
  (c) Air flow volume mode
  (d) Room temperature setting
  (e) Louver auto swing/stop
  However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).
  (f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the remote control function setting ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)
  (g) Upper limit value and lower limit value which have been set with the temperature setting control
  (h) Sleep timer and weekly timer settings (Other timer settings are not memorized.)

[Parts layout on remote control PCB]



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control

Note (1) Don't change SW2 because it is not used normally.

Caution

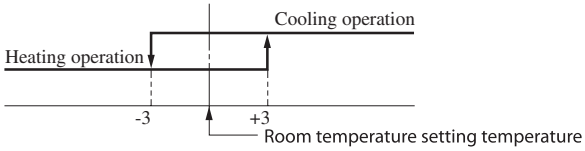
When using multiple remote controls, the following dispiays or settings cannot be done with the slave remote control. It is available only with the master remote control.

①Louver position setting (set upper or lower limit of swinging range)
②Setting indoor unit functions
③Setting temperature range
④Operation data display
⑤Error data display
⑥Silent mode setting
⑦Test operation of drain pump
⑧Remote control sensor setting

10.3 Operation control function by the indoor control

(1) Auto operation

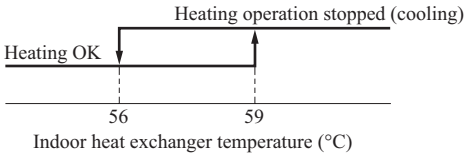
(a) If "Auto" mode is selected by the remote control, the heating and the cooling are automatically switched according to the difference between outdoor air temperature and setting temperature and the difference between setting temperature and return air temperature. (When the switching of cooling mode ↔ heating mode takes place within 3 minutes, the compressor does not operate for 3 minutes by the control of 3-minute timer.) This will facilitate the cooling/heating switching operation in intermediate seasons and the adaptation to unmanned operation at stores, etc (ATM corner of bank).



Notes (1) Temperature range of switching cooling/heating mode can be changed by RC-EX3A from ±1.0 – ±4.0.

(2) Room temperature control during auto cooling/auto heating is performed according to the room temperature setting temperature. (DIFF: ±1 deg)

(3) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature rises to 59°C or higher during heating operation, it is switched automatically to cooling operation. In addition, for 1 hour after this switching, the heating operation is not performed, regardless of the temperature shown at right.



(b) The following automatic controls are performed other than (a) above.

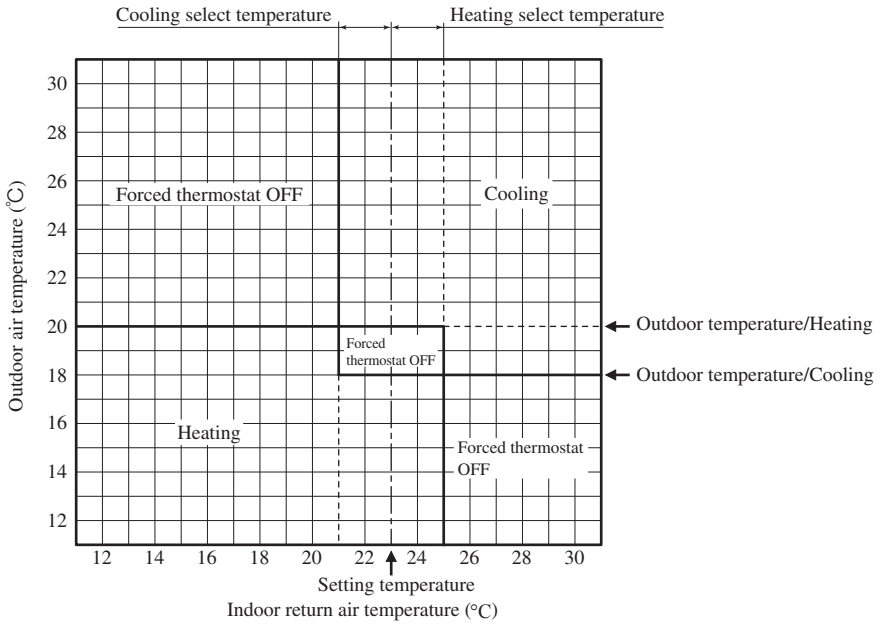
(i) Cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the conditions of the "Judgment based on Setting temperature + Cooling select temperature and Indoor return air temperature" and the "Judgment based on Outdoor temperature".

1) In "Setting temperature - Cooling select temperature < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor return air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling

2) "Setting temperature + Heating select temperature > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/ Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating

3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.

4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



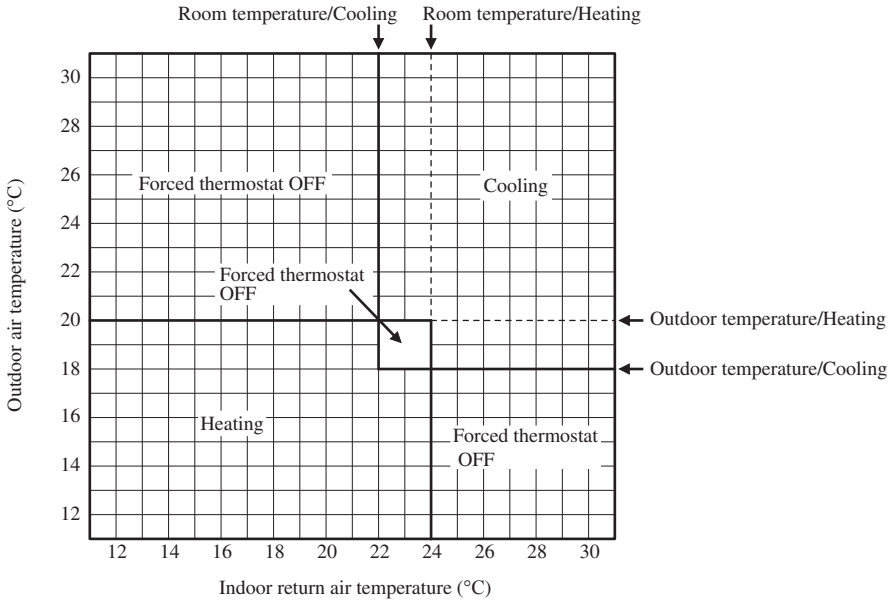
(ii) Regardless of the setting temperature, the cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the "Judgment based on Room temperature/Cooling or Heating and Outdoor temperature/Cooling or Heating".

1) In case of "Room temperature/Cooling < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling

2) In case of "Room temperature/Heating > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature /Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating

3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.

4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



(2) Operations of functional items during cooling/heating

Operation / Functional item	Cooling		Fan	Heating			Dehumidifying
	Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF		Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF	Hot start (Defrost)	
Compressor	○	×	×	○	×	○	○/×
4-way valve	×	×	×	○	○	○(×)	×
Outdoor unit fan	○	×	×	○	×	○(×)	○/×
Indoor unit fan	○	○	○	○/×	○/×	○/×	○/×
Drain pump (3)	○	×(2)	×(2)	○/×(2)			Thermostat ON: ○ Thermostat OFF: ×(2)

Notes (1) ○: Operation ×: Stop ○/×: Turned ON/OFF by the control other than the room temperature control.
(2) ON during the drain pump motor delay control.
(3) Drain pump ON setting may be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

(3) Dehumidifying (DRY) operation

FDU series

Return air temperature sensor [Thi-A (by the remote control when the remote control temperature sensor is enabled)] controls the indoor temperature environment simultaneously.

(i) Operation is started in the cooling mode. When the difference between the return air temperature and the setting temperature is 2°C or less, the indoor fan tap is brought down by one tap. That tap is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor fan tap.

(ii) If the return air temperature exceeds the setting temperature by 3°C during dehumidifying operation, the indoor fan tap is raised by one tap. That tap is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor fan tap.

(iii) If the thermostat OFF is established during the above control, the indoor fan tap at the thermostat ON is retained so far as the thermostat is turned OFF.

(4) Timer operation

(a) RC-EX3A

(i) Sleep timer

Set the time from the start to stop of operation. The time can be selected in the range from 30 to 240 minutes (in the unit of 10-minute).

Note (1) Enable the "Sleep timer" setting from the remote control. If the setting is enabled, the timer operates at every time.

(ii) Set OFF timer by hour

Set the time to stop the unit after operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour).

(iii) Set ON timer by hour

Set the time to start the unit after the stop of operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour). It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

(iv) Set ON timer by clock

Set the time to start operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be switched only once or daily. It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(v) Set OFF timer by clock

Set the time to stop operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be switched only once or daily.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(vi) Weekly timer

Set the ON or OFF timer for a week. Up to 8 patterns can be set for a day. The day-off setting is provided for holidays and non-business days.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use the weekly timer.

(vii) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

	Sleep timer	Set OFF timer by hour	Set ON timer by hour	Set OFF timer by clock	Set ON timer by clock	Weekly timer
Sleep timer		×	×	○	○	○
Set OFF timer by hour	×		×	×	×	×
Set ON timer by hour	×	×		×	×	×
Set OFF timer by clock	○	×	×		○	×
Set ON timer by clock	○	×	×	○		×
Weekly timer	○	×	×	×	×	

Note (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(b) RC-E5

(i) Sleep timer

Set the duration of time from the present to the time to turn off the air-conditioner.

It can be selected from 10 steps in the range from "OFF 1 hour later" to "OFF 10 hours later". After the sleep timer setting, the remaining time is displayed with progress of time in the unit of hour.

(ii) OFF timer

Time to turn OFF the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes.

(iii) ON timer

Time to turn ON the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes. Indoor temperature can be set simultaneously.

(iv) Weekly timer

Timer operation (ON timer, OFF timer) can be set up to 4 times a day for each weekday.

(v) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

Item / Item	Sleep timer	OFF timer	ON timer	Weekly timer
Sleep timer		×	○	×
OFF timer	×		○	×
ON timer	○	○		×
Weekly timer	×	×	×	

Notes (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(2) Since the ON timer, sleep timer and OFF timer are set in parallel, when the times to turn ON and OFF the air-conditioner are duplicated, the setting of the OFF timer has priority.

(5) Hot start (Cold draft prevention at heating)

(a) Operating conditions

When either one of following conditions is satisfied, the hot start control is performed.

(i) From stop to heating operation

(ii) From cooling to heating operation

(iii) Form heating thermostat OFF to ON

(iv) After completing the defrost operation (only on units with thermostat ON)

(b) Contents of operation

(i) Indoor fan motor control at hot start

1) Within 7 minutes after starting heating operation, the fan mode is determined depending on the condition of thermostat (fan control with heating thermostat OFF).

a) Thermostat OFF

i) Operates according to the fan control setting at heating thermostat OFF.

ii) Even if it changes from thermostat OFF to ON, the fan continues to operate with the fan control at thermostat OFF till the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.

iii) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set air flow volume.

b) Thermostat ON

i) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or lower, the fan is turned OFF and does not operate.

ii) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or higher, the fan operates with the fan control at heating thermostat OFF.

iii) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set air flow volume.

c) If the fan control at heating thermostat OFF is set at the "Set air flow volume" (from the remote control), the fan operates with the set air flow volume regardless of the thermostat ON/OFF.

2) Once the fan motor is changed from OFF to ON during the thermostat ON, the indoor fan motor is not turned OFF even if the heat exchanger temperature sensor detects lower than 25°C.

Note (1) When the defrost control signal is received, it complies with the fan control during defrost operation.

3) Once the hot start is completed, it will not restart even if the temperature on the heat exchanger temperature sensor drops.

(ii) During the hot start, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(iii) When the fan motor is turned OFF for 7 minutes continuously after defrost operation, the fan motor is turned ON regardless of the temperatures detected with the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensors (Thi-R1, R2).

(c) Ending condition

(i) If one of following conditions is satisfied during the hot start control, this control is terminated, and the fan is operated with the set air flow volume.

1) Heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.

2) It has elapsed 7 minutes after starting the hot start control.

(6) Hot keep

Hot keep control is performed at the start of the defrost operation.

(a) Contents of operation

(i) When the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R1 or R2) drops to less than 35°C, the speed of indoor fan follows fan setting at the time of thermostat OFF.

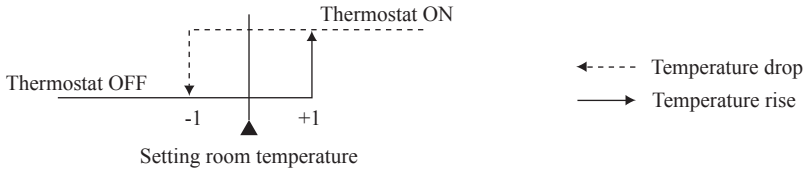
(ii) During the hot keep, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(7) Thermostat operation

(a) Cooling

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the setting room temperature as shown below.

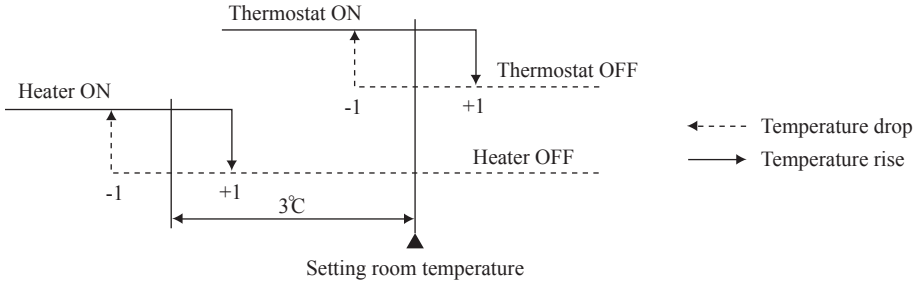


(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Setting room temperature < +1 at the start of cooling operation (including from heating to cooling).

(b) Heating

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the setting room temperature as shown below.



(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Setting room temperature < +1 at the start of heating operation (including from cooling to heating).

(c) Fan control during heating thermostat OFF

(i) Following fan controls during the heating thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed (Factory default) ② Set fan speed ③ Intermittence ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed (Factory default)" is selected, the following taps are used for the indoor fans.

・For DC motor : ULo tap

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the heating operation, the indoor unit moves to the hot control and turns OFF the indoor fan if the heat exchanger temperature sensors (both Thi-R1 and R2) detect 25°C or lower.
2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at ULo for 2 minutes. In the meantime the louver is controlled at level.
3) After operating at ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.
4) If the thermostat is turned ON, it moves to the hot start control.
5) When the heating thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from ULo to stop.
   The remote control uses the operation data display function to display temperatures and updates values of temperature even when the indoor fan is turned OFF.
6) When the defrost operation starts while the heating thermostat is turned OFF or the thermostat is turned OFF during defrost operation, the indoor fan is turned OFF. (Hot keep or hot start control takes priority.) However, the suction temperature is updated at every 7-minute.
7) When the heating thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(d) Fan control during cooling thermostat OFF

(i) Following fan controls during the cooling thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed ② Set fan speed (Factory default) ③ Intermittence ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed" is selected, the following taps are used for the indoor fans.

・For DC motor : ULo tap

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the cooling operation, the indoor fan motor stops.

2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at ULo for 2 minutes. In the meantime the louver is controlled at level.

3) After operating at ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.

4) If the thermostat is turned ON, the fan starts operation at set fan speed.

5) When the cooling thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from ULo to stop.

By using operation data display function at wireless remote control, the tempenature as displayad and the value is updated including the fan stops.

6) When the cooling thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(8) Filter sign

As the operation time (Total ON time of ON/OFF switch) accumulates to 180 hours (1), "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed on the remote control. (This is displayed when the unit is in trouble and under the central control, regardless of ON/OFF.)

Notes (1) Time setting for the filter sign can be made as shown below using the indoor function of wired remote control "Filter sign". (It is set at setting 1 at the shipping from factory.)

Filter sign setting	Function
Setting **1**	Setting time: 180 hrs (Factory default)
Setting **2**	Setting time: 600 hrs
Setting **3**	Setting time: 1,000 hrs
Setting **4**	Setting time: 1,000 hrs (Unit stop) (2)

(2) After the setting time has elapsed, the "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed and, after operating for 24 hours further (counted also during the stop), the unit stops.

(9) Compressor inching prevention control

(a) 3-minute timer

When the compressor has been stopped by the thermostat, remote control operation switch or anomalous condition, its restart will be inhibited for 3 minutes. However, the 3-minute timer is invalidated at the power on the electric power source for the unit.

(b) 3-minute forced operation timer

(i) Compressor will not stop for 3 minutes after the compressor ON. However, it stops immediately when the unit is stopped by means of the ON/OFF switch or when the thermostat is turned OFF by the change of operation mode.

(ii) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the forced operation control of heating compressor, the louver position (with the auto swing) is returned to the level position.

Note (1) The compressor stops when it has entered the protective control.

(10) Drain pump control

(a) This control is operated when the inverter frequency is other than 0 Hz during the cooling operation and automatic cooling and dehumidifying operations.

(b) Drain pump ON condition continues for 5 minutes even when it enters the OFF range according to (a) above after turning the drain pump ON, and then stops. The 5-minute delay continues also in the event of anomalous stop.

(c) The drain pump is operated with the 5-minute delay operation when the compressor is changed from ON to OFF.

(d) Even in conditions other than the above (such as heating, fan, stop, cooling thermostat OFF), the drain pump control is performed by the drain detection.

(e) Following settings can be made using the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

(i) ❄〔Standard (in cooling)〕: Drain pump is run during cooling.

(ii) ❄AND☼〔Operate in standard & heating〕: Drain pump is run during cooling and heating.

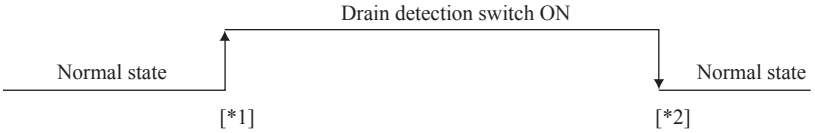
(iii) ❄AND☼AND≡〔Operate in heating & fan〕: Drain pump is run during cooling, heating and fan.

(iv) ❄AND≡〔Operate in standard & fan〕: Drain pump is run during cooling and fan.

Note (1) Values in〔 〕are for the RC-EX3A model.

(11) Drain pump motor (DM) control

(a) Drain detection switch is turned ON or OFF with the float switch (FS) and the timer.



[＊1] Drain detection switch is turned "ON" when the float switch "Open" is detected for 3 seconds continuously in the drain detectable space.

[＊2] Drain detection switch is turned "OFF" when the float switch "Close" is detected for 10 seconds continuously.

(i) It detects always from 30 seconds after turning the power ON.

1) There is no detection of anomalous draining for 10 seconds after turning the drain pump OFF.

2) Turning the drain detection switch "ON" causes to turn ON the drain pump forcibly.

3) Turning the drain detection switch "OFF" releases the forced drain pump ON condition.

(b) Indoor unit performs the control A or B depending on each operating condition.

	Indoor unit operation mode				
	Stop (1)	Cooling	Dry	Fan (2)	Heating
Compressor ON		Control A			
Compressor OFF	Control B				

Notes (1) Including the stop from the cooling, dehumidifying, fan and heating, and the anomalous stop
(2) Including the "Fan" operation according to the mismatch of operation modes

(i) Control A

1) If the float switch detects any anomalous draining condition, the unit stops with the anomalous stop (displays E9) and the drain pump starts. After detecting the anomalous condition, the drain pump motor continues to be ON.

2) It keeps operating while the float switch is detecting the anomalous condition.

(ii) Control B

If the float switch detects any anomalous drain condition, the drain pump motor is turned ON for 5 minutes, and at 10 seconds after the drain pump motor OFF it checks the float switch. If it is normal, the unit is stopped under the normal mode or, if there is any anomalous condition, E9 is displayed and the drain pump motor is turned ON. (The ON condition is maintained during the drain detection.)

(12) Operation check/drain pump test run operation mode

(a) If the power is turned on by the DIP switch (SW7-1) on the indoor unit control PCB when electric power source is supplied, it enters the mode of operation check/drain pump test run. It is ineffective (prohibited) to change the switch after turning power on.

(b) When the communication with the remote control has been established within 60 seconds after turning power on by the DIP switch (SW7-1) ON, it enters the operation check mode. Unless the remote control communication is established, it enters the drain pump test run mode.

Note (1) To select the drain pump test run mode, disconnect the remote control connector (CnB) on the indoor unit PCB to shut down the remote control communication.

(c) Operation check mode

There is no communication with the outdoor unit but it allows performing operation in respective modes by operating the remote control.

(d) Drain pump test run mode

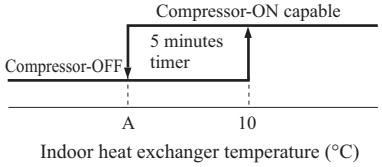
As the drain pump test run is established, the drain pump only operates and during the operation protective functions by the microcomputer of indoor unit become ineffective.

(13) Cooling, dehumidifying frost protection

(a) To prevent frosting during cooling mode or dehumidifying mode operation, the compressor-OFF if the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) drops to 1.0 °C or lower at 4 minutes after the compressor-ON. If the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is 1.0 °C or lower after 5 minutes, the indoor unit is controlled compressor-OFF. If it becomes 10°C or higher, the control terminates.

• Frost prevention temperature setting can be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

Item \ Symbol	A
Temperature - Low (Factory default)	1.0
Temperature - High	2.5



(b) Selection of indoor fan speed

If it enters the frost prevention control during cooling operation (including dehumidifying), the indoor fan speed is switched.

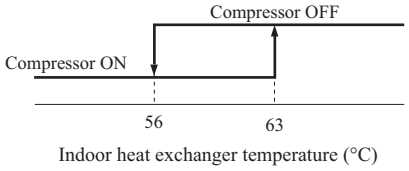
(i) When the indoor return air temperature (Thi-A) is 18°C or higher and the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) detects the compressor frequency drop start temperature A°C+1°C, indoor fan speed is increased by 20min^{-1}.

(ii) If the phenomenon of (i) above is detected again after the acceleration of indoor fan, indoor fan speed is increased further by 20min^{-1}.

Note (1) Indoor fan speed can be increased by up to P-Hi.

(14) Heating overload protection

(a) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted after a 3-minute delay, if a temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection and if this is detected 5 times consecutively, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop (E8). Anomalous stop occurs also when the indoor heat exchanger temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 6 minutes continuously.



(b) Indoor fan speed selection

If, after second detection of heating overload protection up to fourth, the indoor fan is set at below Hi tap when the compressor is turned ON, the indoor fan speed is increased by 1 tap.

(15) Anomalous fan motor

(a) After starting the fan motor, if the fan motor speed is 200 min^{-1} or less is detected for 30 seconds continuously and 4 times within 60 minutes, then fan motor stops with the anomalous stop (E16).

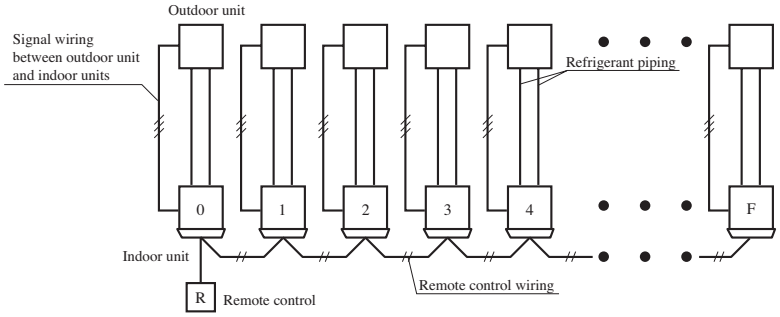
(b) If the fan motor fails to reach at -500 min^{-1} less than the required speed, it stops with the anomalous stop (E20).

(16) Plural unit control – Control of 16 units group by one remote control

(a) Function

One remote control can control a group of multiple number of unit (Max. 16 indoor units). "Operation mode" which is set by the remote control can operate or stop all units in the group one after another in the order of unit. No.(1). Thermostat and protective function of each unit function independently.

Note (1) Unit No. is set by SW2 on the indoor unit control PCB. Unit No. setting by SW2 is necessary for the indoor unit only.
SW2: For setting of 0 – 9, A – F



(2) Unit No. may be set at random unless duplicated, it should be better to set orderly like 0, 1, 2…, F to avoid mistake.

(b) Display to the remote control

(i) Central or each remote control basis, heating preparation
The smallest unit No. among the operating units in the remote mode (or the center mode unless the remote mode is available) is displayed.

(ii) Inspection display, filter sign
Any of unit that starts initially is displayed.

(c) Confirmation of connected units

(i) In case of RC-EX3A remote control

If you touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "IU address" on the TOP screen of remote control, the indoor units which are connected are displayed.

(ii) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Pressing "AIR CON No." button on the remote control displays the indoor unit address. If "▲" "▼" button is pressed at the next, it is displayed orderly starting from the unit of smallest No..

(d) In case of anomaly

If any anomaly occurs on a unit in a group (a protective function operates), that unit stops with the anomalous stop but any other normal units continue to run as they are.

(e) Signal wiring procedure

Signal wiring between indoor and outdoor units should be made on each unit same as the normal wiring. For the group control, connect the remote control wiring to each indoor unit via terminal block for the remote control.

Connect the remote control wiring separately from the power source cable or wires of other electric devices (AC220V or higher).

(17) Fan speed setting control

When sufficient air flow rate cannot be obtained from the indoor unit which is installed at a room with high ceiling, the air flow rate can be increased by changing the fan tap. To change the fan tap, use the indoor unit function "Fan speed setting" on the wired remote control.

Fan tap		Indoor unit air flow rate setting				Wired remote control
Fan speed setting	Standard	P-Hi1 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	RC-EX3A
		UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	RC-E5
	Setting1	P-Hi1 - P-Hi1 - Hi - Me	P-Hi1 - Hi - Me	P-Hi1 - Me	P-Hi1 - Hi	RC-EX3A
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi	RC-E5

Notes (1) Factory default is Standard.
(2) At the hot-start and heating thermostat OFF, or other, the indoor fan is operated at the low speed tap of each setting.
(3) This function is not able to be set with wireless remote control or simple remote control (RCH-E3).

(18) Abnormal temperature sensor (return air/indoor heat exchanger) broken wire/short-circuit detection

(a) Broken wire detection

When the return air temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower or the heat exchanger temperature sensor detect -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts but, if it is detected again within 60 minutes after the initial detection for 6 minutes continuously, stops again (the return air temperature sensor: E7, the heat exchanger temperature sensor: E6).

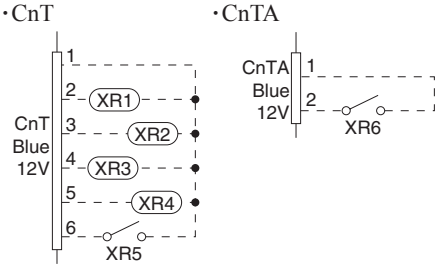
(b) Short-circuit detection

If the heat exchanger temperature sensor detects short-circuit for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON during cooling operation, the compressor stops (E6).

(19) External input/output control (CnT or CnTA)

External input/output connectors are provided on the indoor unit control PCB, and each input/output is possible to be changed by RC-EX3A.

Be sure to connect the wired remote control to the indoor unit. Remote operation with CnT/CnTA only is not possible.



Input/Output	Connector		Factory default setting	RC-EX3A function name
Output	CnT-2	(XR1)	Operation output	External output 1
	CnT-3	(XR2)	Heating output	External output 2
	CnT-4	(XR3)	Compressor ON output	External output 3
	CnT-5	(XR4)	Inspection(Error) output	External output 4
"Input	CnT-6	(XR5)	Remote operation input	External input 1
(Volt-free contact)"	CnTA	(XR6)	Remote operation input	External input 2

■ Priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA input.

		CnTA					
		① Operation stop level	② Operation stop pulse	③ Operation permission/prohibition	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse
CnT	① Operation stop level	CnT ①	CnT ①	CnT ① +CnTA ②	CnT ①	CnT ① /CnTA ⑤	CnT ① /CnTA ⑥
	② Operation stop pulse	CnT ②	CnT ②	CnT ② +CnTA ③	CnT ②	CnT ② /CnTA ⑤	CnT ② /CnTA ⑥
	③ Operation permission/prohibition level	CnT ③ >CnTA ①	CnT ③ >CnTA ②	CnT ③ +CnTA ③	CnT ③	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑥
	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	CnT ④	CnT ④	CnT ④ +CnTA ③※	CnT ④	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑥
	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ③	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑤	CnT ⑤
	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ③	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑥	CnT ⑥

Note (1) Following operation commands are accepted when the operation prohibition is set with CnTA as indicated with *.
Individual operation command from remote control, test run command from outdoor unit and operation command from option device, CnT input.

Reference: Explanation on the codes and the combinations of codes in the table above

1. In case of CnT "Number", the CnT "Number" is adopted and CnTA is invalidated.
2. In case of CnTA "Number", the CnTA "Number" is adopted and CnT is invalidated.
3. In case of CnT "Number"/CnTA "Number", the CnT "Number" and the CnTA "Number" become independent functions each other.
4. In case of CnT "Number" + CnTA "Number", the CnT "Number" and the CnTA "Number" become competing functions each other.
5. In case of CnT "Number" > CnTA "Number", the function of CnT "Number" supersedes that of CnTA "Number".
6. In case of CnT "Number" < CnTA "Number", the function of CnTA "Number" supersedes that of CnT "Number".

(The "Number" above means ① - ⑥ in the table.)

(a) Output for external control (remote display)

Indoor unit outputs the following signal for operation status monitoring.

	Output name	Condition
1	Operation output	During operation
2	Heating output	During heating operation
3	Compressor ON output	During compressor operation
4	Inspection(Error) output	When anomalous condition occurs.
5	Cooling output	During cooling operation
6	Fan operation output 1	When indoor unit's fan is operating
7	Fan operation output 2	When indoor unit's fan is operating, and fan speed is higher than Hi speed.
8	Fan operation output 3	When indoor unit's fan is operating, and fan speed is Lower than Me speed.
9	Defrost/oil return output	When indoor unit receive defrost/oil return signal from the outdoor unit.
10	Ventilation output	When "Venti.ON" is selected from remote control
11	Free cooling output	When the ambient temperature is between 10 - 18°C in cooling and fan operation
12	Indoor unit overload alrm output	Refer to "IU overload alarm"
13	Heater output	Refer to "(8) Thermostat operation (b) Heating"

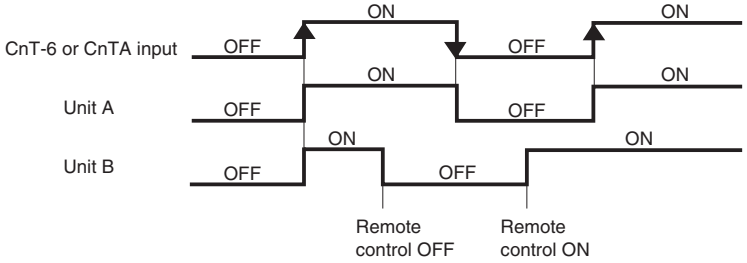
(b) Input for external control

The external input for the indoor unit can be selected from the following input.

	Input name	Content
1	Run/Stop	Refer to [(19) (c) Remote operation input]
2	Premission/Prohibition	Refer to [(20) Operation permission/prohibition]
3	Cooling/Heating	Refer to [(22) Selection of cooling/heating external input function]
4	Emergency stop	Indoor/outdoor units stop the operation, and [E63] is displayed.
5	Setting temperature shift	Set temperature is shifted by +2/-2°C in cooling/heating.
6	Forced thermo-OFF	Unit goes thermo off.
7	Temporary stop	Refer to [(21) Temporary stop input]
8	Silent mode	Outdoor unit silent mode is activated.

(i) In case of "Level input" setting (Factory default)

Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF→ON …… unit ON
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is ON→OFF …… unit OFF
Operation is not inverted.

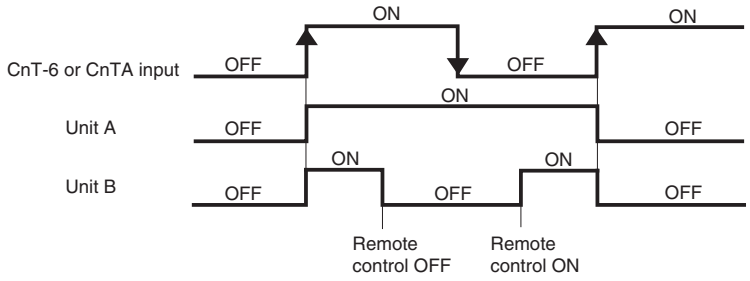


Note (1) The latest operation has priority

It is available to operate/stop by remote control or central control.

(ii) In case of "Pulse input" setting (Local setting)

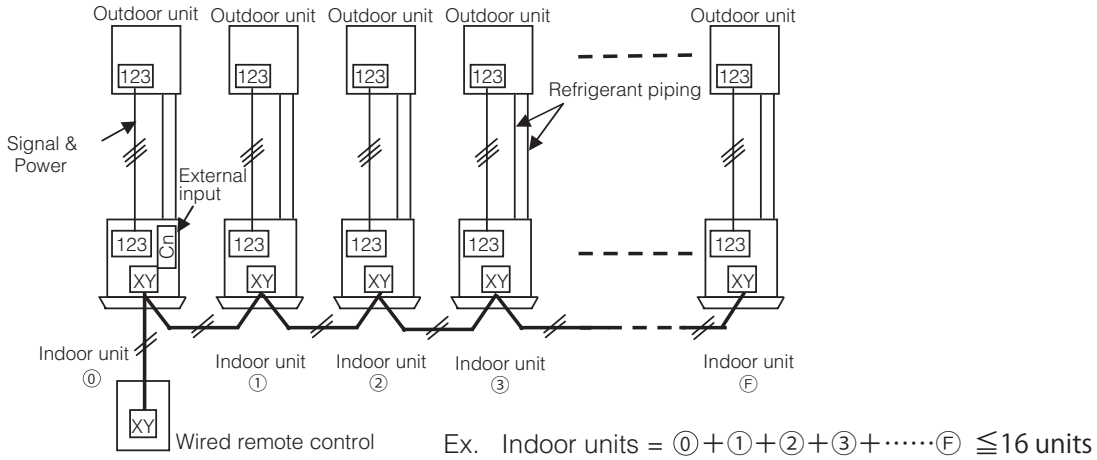
It is effective only when the input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is changed OFF→ON, and at that time unit operation [ON/OFF] is inverted.



(c) Remote operation

(i) In case of multiple units (Max. 16 indoor units group) are connected to one wired remote control

When the R/C function setting of wired remote control for "External control set" is changed from "Individual (Factory default)" to " For all units", all units connected in one wired remote control system can be controlled by external operation input.



	Individual operation (Factory default)		All units operation (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be operated.	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be stopped opeartion.	All units in one remote control system can be operated.	All units in one remote control system can be stopped operation.
	Unit ① only	Unit ① only	Units ① – Ⓕ	Units ① – Ⓕ

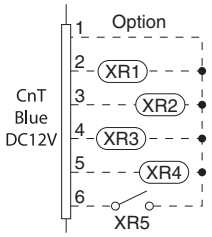
When more than one indoor unit (Max. 16 indoor units) are connected in one wired remote control system:
(1) With the factory default, external input to CnT-6 or CnTA is effective for only the unit ①.
(2) When setting "For all unit" (Local setting), all units in one remote control system can be controlled by external input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the indoor unit ①.
(3) External input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the other indoor unit than the unit ① is not effective.

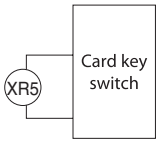
(20) Operation permission/prohibition

(In case of adopting card key switches or commercially available timers)

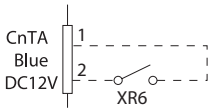
When the indoor function setting of wired remote control for "Operation permission/prohibition" is changed from "Invalid (Factory default)" to " Valid", following control becomes effective.

・CnT





・CnTA



Note (1) CnTA function can be changed by RC-EX3A.

	Normal operation (Factory default)		Operation permission/prohibition mode "Valid" (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Operation	Stop	Operation permission*1	Operation prohibition (Unit stops)

*1 **Only the "LEVEL INPUT" is acceptable for external input**, however when the indoor function setting of "Level input (Factory default)" or "Pulse input" is selected by the function for "External input" of the wired remote control, operation status will be changed as follows.

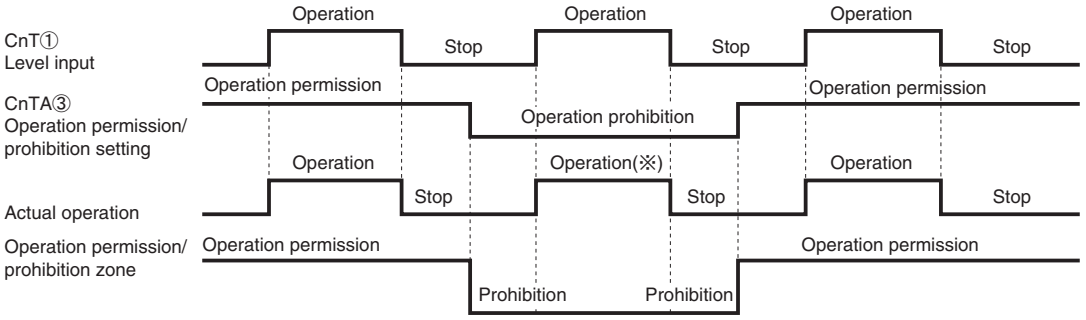
In case of "Level input" setting	In case of "Pulse input" setting
Unit operation from the wired remote control becomes available※1	Unit starts operation ※2

※1) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Level input (Factory default)";
① When card key switch is ON (CnT-6 or CnTA ON: Operation permission), start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.
② When card key switch is OFF (CnT-6 or CnTA OFF: Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes unavailable.

※2) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Pulse input (Local setting)";
① When card key switch is ON (Operation permission), the unit starts operation in conjunction with ON signal, and also start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.
② When card key switch is OFF (Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes unavailable.

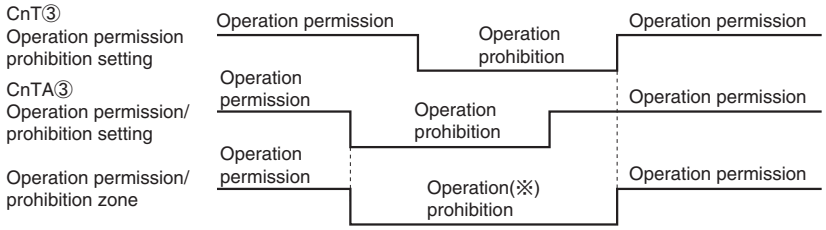
3) This function is invalid only at "Center mode" setting done by central control.

(a) In case of CnT ① Operation stop level > CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



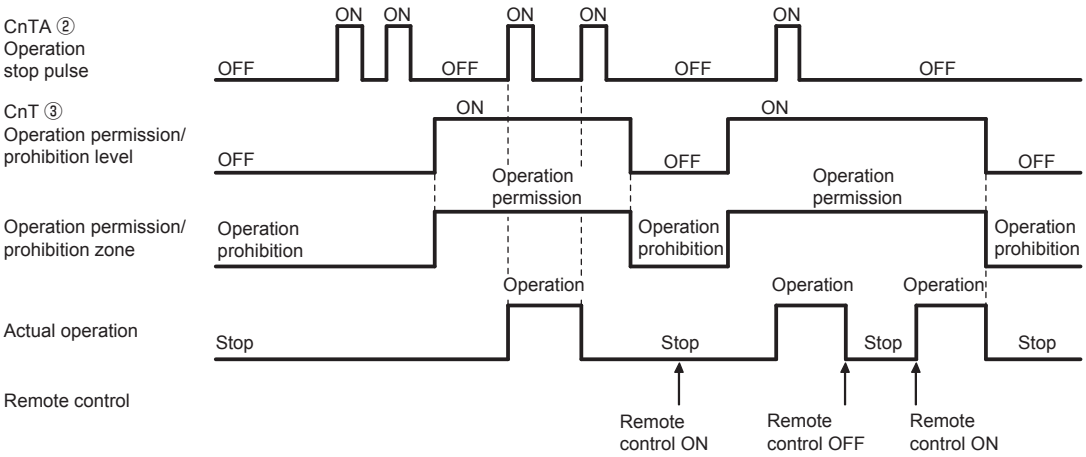
(※) CnT level input supersedes CnTA operation prohibition.

(b) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



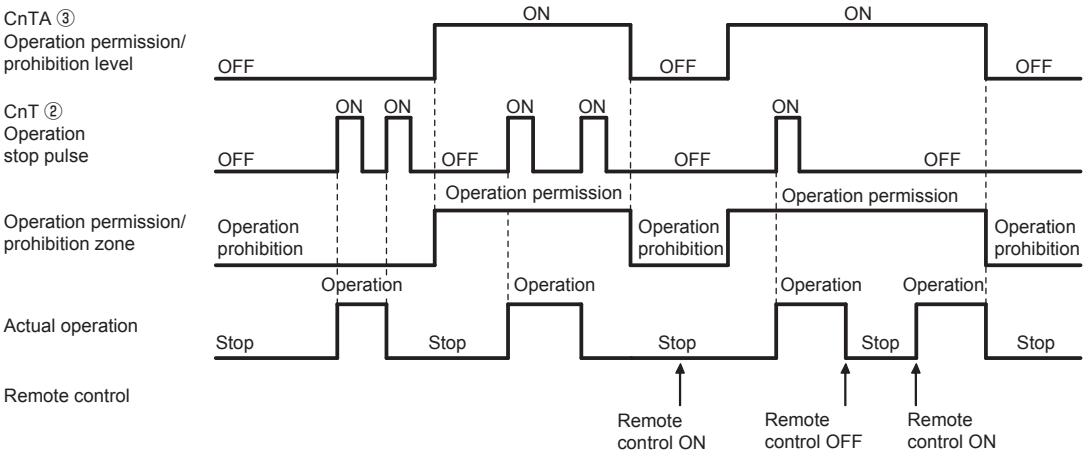
(※) Operation prohibition zone is determined by the OR judgment between CnT operation prohibition zone and CnTA operation prohibition zone.

(c) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level > CnTA ② Operation stop pulse



Note (1) If it is prohibited by CnT, all "Operation" and "Stop" commands are not accepted.

(d) In case of CnT ② Operation stop pulse + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level

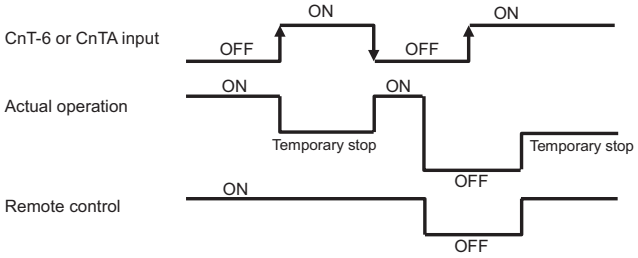


(21) Temporary stop input

In case of temporary stop, operation lamp of remote control lights, but indoor/outdoor unit stop the operation.

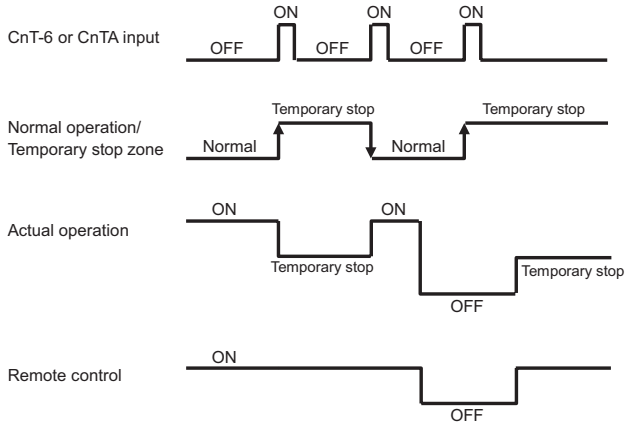
(a) In case of "level input" setting (Factory default)

Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF → ON : Temporary stop
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF → ON : Normal operation



(b) In case of "pulse input" setting (Local setting)

It is effective only when the input signal is changed OFF→ON, and "temporary stop/normal operation" is inverted.



(22) Selection of cooling/heating external input function

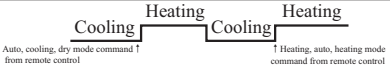
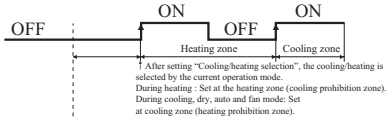
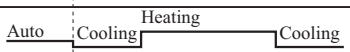
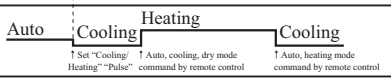
(a) When "External input 1 setting: Cooling/heating" is set by the indoor unit function from remote control, the cooling or heating is selected with CnT-6 or CnTA.

(b) When the external input 1 method selection: Level input is set by the indoor unit function:
- CnT-6 or CnTA: OPEN → Cooling operation mode
- CnT-6 or CnTA: CLOSE → Heating operation mode

(c) When the external input 1 method selection: Pulse input is set by the indoor unit function:
If the external input is changed OPEN → CLOSE, operation modes are inverted (Cooling → Heating or Heating → Cooling).

(d) If the cooling/heating selection signal is given by the external input, the operation mode is transmitted to the remote control.

■ Selection of cooling/heating external input function

External input selection	External input method	Operation	
External input selection Cooling/heating selection	⑤ Level	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	
	⑥ Pulse	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	

Note (1) Regarding the priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA, refer to Page 75.

(23) Fan control at heating startup

(a) Starting conditions

At the start of heating operation and after the end of hot start control, if the difference of setting temperature and return air temperature is 5°C or higher, this control is performed.

(b) Contents of control

(i) Sampling is made at each minute and, when the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) is 37°C or higher, present number of revolutions of indoor fan speed is increased by $10min^{-1}$.

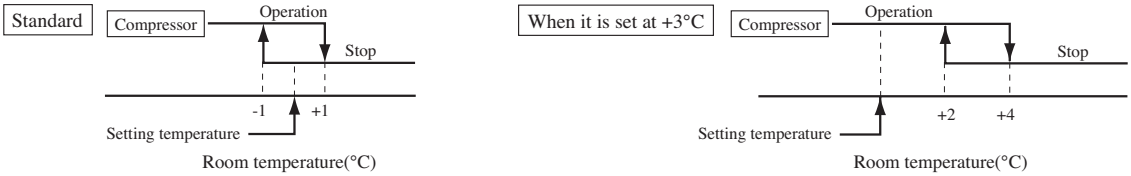
(ii) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature drops below 37°C at next sampling, present number of revolutions of indoor fan speed is reduced by $10min^{-1}$.

(c) Ending conditions

Indoor fan speed is reduced to the setting air flow rate when the compressor OFF is established and at 30 minutes after the start of heating operation.

(24) Room temperature detection temperature compensation during heating

With the standard specification, the compressor is turned ON/OFF with the thermostat setting temperature. When the thermostat is likely to turn OFF earlier because the unit is installed at the ceiling where warm air tends to accumulate, the setting can be changed with the wired remote control indoor unit function "☼ SP OFFSET". The compressor and the heater are turned ON/OFF at one of the setting temperature +3, +2 or +1°C in order to improve the feeling of heating. The setting temperature, however, has the upper limit of 30°C.



(25) Return air temperature compensation

This is the function to compensate the deviation between the detection temperature by the return air temperature sensor and the measured temperature after installing the unit.

(a) It is adjustable in the unit of 0.5°C with the wired remote control indoor unit function "RETURN AIR TEMP".

• +1.0°C, +1.5°C, +2.0°C • -1.0°C, -1.5°C, -2.0°C

(b) Compensated temperature is transmitted to the remote control and the compressor to control them.

Note (1) The detection temperature compensation is effective on the indoor unit temperature sensor only.

(26) High power operation (RC-EX3A only)

It operates at with the set temperature fixed at 16°C for cooling, 30°C for heating and maximum indoor fan speed for 15 minutes maximum.

(27) Energy-saving operation (RC-EX3A only)

It operates with the setting temperature fixed at 28°C for cooling, 22°C for heating or 25°C for auto. When fan control in cooling/heating thermo-OFF setting is "Set fan speed", fan speed during thermo-OFF is changed to "Low". (Maximum capacity is restricted at 80%.)

(28) Warm-up control (RC-EX3A only)

Operation will be started 5 to 60 minutes before use according to the forecast made by the microcomputer which calculates when the operation should be started in order to warm up the indoor temperature near the setting temperature at the setting time of operation start.

(29) Home leave mode (RC-EX3A only)

When the unit is not used for a long period of time, the room temperature is maintained at a moderate level, avoiding extremely hot or cool temperature.

(a) Cooling or heating is operated according to the outdoor temperature (factory setting 35°C for cooling, 0°C for heating) and the setting temperature. (factory setting 33°C for cooling, 10°C for heating)

(b) Setting temperature and indoor fan speed can be set by RC-EX3A.

(30) Auto temperature setting (RC-EX3A only)

Setting temperature is adjusted automatically at the adequate temperature the center setting temperature is 24°C by correcting the outdoor air temperature.

(31) Fan circulator operation (RC-EX3A only)

When the fan is used for circulation, the unit is operated as follows depending on the setting with the remote control.

(a) If the invalid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated continuously during the fan operation. (normal fan mode)

(b) If the valid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated or stopped when on the difference of the remote control temperature sensor and the return air temperature sensor becomes bigger than 3°C.

(32) The operation judgment is executed every 5 minutes (RC-EX3A only)

Setting temperature Ts is changed according to outdoor temperature.

This control is valid with cooling and heating mode. (Not auto mode)

(a) Operate 5 minutes forcedly.

(b) Setting temperature is adjusted every 10 minutes.

(i) Cooling mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(ii) Heating mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(c) If the return air temperature lower than 18°C in cooling or return air temperature becomes higher than 25°C in heating, unit goes thermostat OFF.

(33) Auto fan speed control (RC-EX3A only)

In order to reach the room temperature to the set temperature as quickly as possible, the air flow rate is increased when the set temperature of thermostat differs largely from the return air temperature. According to temperature difference between set temperature and return air temperature, indoor fan tap are controlled automalically.

・Auto 1: Changes the indoor fan tap within the range of Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.

・Auto 2: Changes the indoor fan tap within the range of P-Hi ↔ Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.

(34) Indoor unit overload alarm (RC-EX3A only)

If the following condition is satisfied at 30 minutes after starting operation, RC-EX3A shows maintenance code "M07" and the signal is transmitted to the external output (CnT-2-5).

・Cooling, Dry, Auto(Cooling) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature by remote control + Alarm temperature difference

・Heating, Auto(Heating) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature by remote control - Alarm temperature difference

Alarm temperature difference is selectable between 5 to 10°C.

If the following condition is satisfied or unit is stopped, the signal is disappeared.

・Cooling, Dry, Auto(Cooling) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature + Alarm temperature difference -2°C

・Heating, Auto(Heating) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature - Alarm temperature difference +2°C

(35) Peak-cut timer (RC-EX3A only)

Power consumption can be reduced by restricting the maximum capacity.

Set the [Start time], the [End time] and the capacity limit % (Peak-cut %).

・4-operation patterns per day can be set at maximum.

・The setting time can be changed by 5-minute interval.

・The selectable range of capacity limit % (Peak-cut %) is from 0% to 40-80% (20% interval).

・Holiday setting is available.

(36) Motion sensor control (RC-EX3A and RCN-E2 only)

The sensor determines the presence of people and the amount of activity, and the following controls are done by the motion sensor.

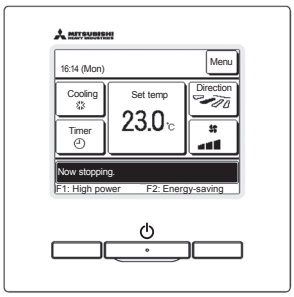
Following settings are necessary to activate motion sensor control.

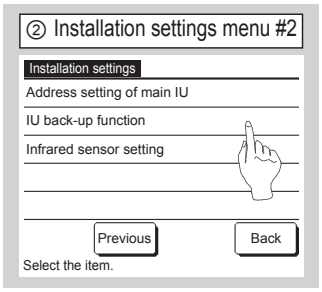
(a) Infrared (motion) sensor setting: Installation setting of remote control
The indoor unit which is set to "Enable" become valid.

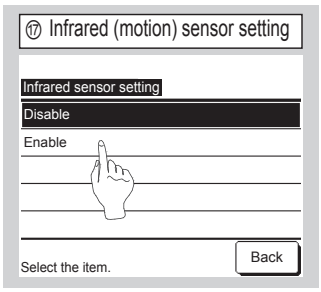
(b) Infrared (motion) sensor control: Energy-saving setting of remote control
The function which is set to "Enable" become valid.

RC-EX3A

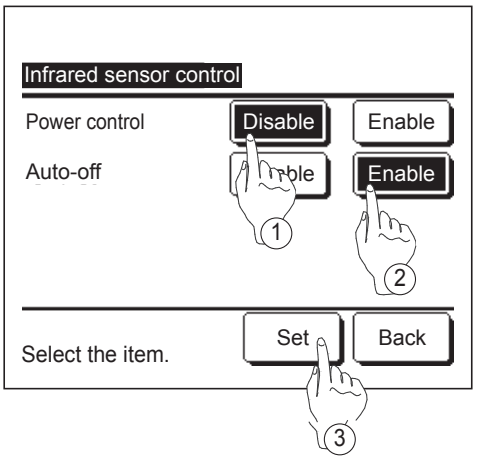
TOP screen **Menu** ⇨ **Service setting** ⇨ **Installation settings** ⇨ **Service password**







TOP screen **Menu** ⇨ **Energy-saving setting** ⇨ **Infrared sensor control** or **Motion sensor control**



The Infrared sensor control screen and contents of the current settings are displayed.

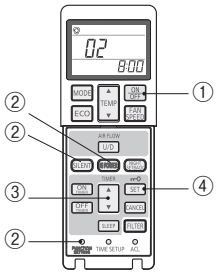
① Enable/disable power control.

② Enable/disable auto-off.

③ After you set each item, tap the **Set** button.
The display returns to the Energy-saving setting menu screen.

RCN-E2

1. Set indoor functions
① Press the ON/OFF button to stop the unit.
② Press the desired one of the buttons shown item **2.** while holding down the FUNCTION SETTING switch.
③ Use the selection buttons, ▲ and ▼, to change the setting.
④ Press the SET button.
The buzzer on the remote control signal receiver beeps twice, and the LED lamp flashes four times at two-second intervals.



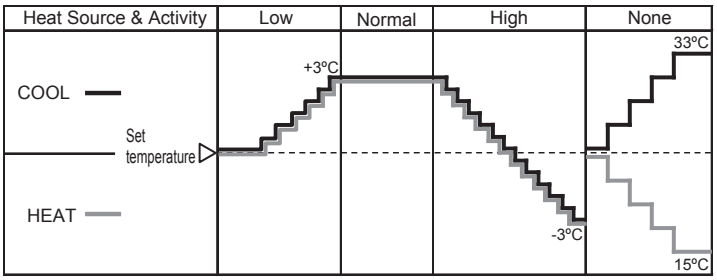
2. Setting details

Button	Number indicator	Function setting
SILENT	00	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Enable
HI POWER	00	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control only
	02	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Auto OFF only
	03	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control and Auto OFF

(i) Power saving / comfort control

The set temperature is adjusted according to the presence of people and their amount of activity detected by the infrared (motion) sensor.

MODE:AUTO/COOL/HEAT mode operation



Low	**When the extent of human activity is low**
High	**When the extent of human activity is high**
None	**When there is no one in the room**

- When the "None" continues for 1 hour, the FAN SPEED is set Lo.

Notes (1) When the following operations are set, power saving control will be canceled.

① Energy-saving, Home leave mode, Warm-up control, Cooling operation check.

② When the operation mode is changed DRY or FAN.

(2) Not operable while the air-conditioner is OFF.

(ii) Auto-off control

When no activity is detected for 1 hour, unit will go stand-by mode.※ Unit will re-start operation automatically with the original set temperature by activity detection during the stand-by mode. When stand-by mode continues for 12 hours, unit stops.

※Compressor keeps stopped regardless of the set temperature.

10.4 Operation control function by the outdoor control

Models FDC200, 250VSA

(1) Determination of compressor speed (Frequency)

Required frequency

(a) Cooling/dehumidifying operation. Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250
Max. required frequency	Usual operation	120	120
	Outdoor air temperature ≦ 15°C or indoor return air temperature ≦ 20°C	100	100
	Silent mode	80 (100)	70 (100)
Min. required frequency		15	20

Note(1) Value in ( ) are for the SW7-3 OFF.

(b) Heating operation. Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250
Max. required frequency	Usual operation	120	120
	Silent mode	80 (100)	70 (100)
Min. required frequency		15	20

Note(1) Value in ( ) are for the SW7-3 OFF.

(c) If the indoor fan speed becomes “Me” or “Lo”, Max required frequency goes down accordingly depending on indoor unit model.

(d) Max. required frequency under high outdoor air temperature in cooling mode.
Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250
Max. required frequency	Outdoor air temperature is 40°C or higher	100	120

(e) Max. required frequency under high outdoor air temperature in heating mode.
Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250
Max. required frequency	Outdoor air temperature is 10°C or higher	120	120
	Outdoor air temperature is 18°C or higher	100	120

(f) Selection of max. required frequency by heat exchanger temperature.

(i) Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) during cooling/dehumidifying or according to the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) during heating mode.

(ii) When there are 3 indoor heat exchanger temperatures (Thi-R), whichever the highest applies,
When there are 2 outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R), whichever the higher applies.

Unit: rps

Model			FDC200	FDC250
Max. required frequency	Cooling/ dehumidifying	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature is 56°C or higher	110	120
	Heating	Indoor heat exchanger temperature is 56°C or higher	120	120

(g) When any of the controls from (a) to (f) above may duplicate, whichever the smallest value among duplicated controls is taken as the maximum required frequency.

(h) During heating, it is operated with the maximum required frequency until the indoor heat exchanger temperature becomes 40°C or higher.

(2) Compressor start control

(a) Compressor starts upon receipt of the thermostat ON signal from the indoor unit.

(b) However, at initial start after turning the power source breaker, it may enter the standby state for maximum 30 minutes (“ PREPARATION” is displayed on the remote control) in order to prevent the oil loss in the compressor.
If the cooling/dehumidifying/heating operation is selected from the remote control when the outdoor unit is in the standby state, “ PREPARATION” is displayed for 3 seconds on the remote control.

(3) Compressor soft start control

(a) Compressor protection start I

[Control condition]

Normally, the compressor operation frequency is raised in this start pattern.

[Control contents]

(i) Starts with the compressor's target frequency at **A** rps.
However, when the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 35°C or higher during cooling/dehumidifying or the indoor return air temperature (Thi-A) is 25°C or higher during heating, it starts at **C** rps.

(ii) At 30 seconds after the start of compressor, its target frequency changes to **B** rps and the compressor is operated for 2 - 4 minutes with its operation frequency fixed at **B** rps.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
FDC200	Cooling/Dehumidifying	45	45	25
	Heating	45	45	25
FDC250	Cooling/Dehumidifying	55	55	30
	Heating	55	55	30

(b) Compressor protection start III

[Control condition]

Number of compressor starts is only 1 counted after the power source breaker ON.

[Control contents]

Operates by selecting one of following start patterns according to the operation mode and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

(i) Low frequency operation control during cooling/dehumidifying.

[Control condition]

Upon establishing the conditions of compressor protection start III, the low frequency operation control is performed during cooling/dehumidifying.

[Control contents]

1) Starts with the compressor's target frequency at **A** rps. When the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 35°C or higher, it starts at **C** rps.
2) At 30 seconds after the compressor start, the compressor's target frequency is changed to **B** rps and the compressor's operation frequency is fixed for 10 minutes.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
FDC200	Cooling/Dehumidifying	45	45	25
FDC250	Cooling/Dehumidifying	55	55	30

(ii) Low frequency operation control during heating.

[Control condition]

When the conditions of compressor protection start III are established and one of following conditions. a) is satisfied, the low frequncy operation control is performed during heating.

a) At 30 minutes or more after turning the power source breaker on.

[Control contents]

a) If the compressor stats with 6 hours after the power source breaker turns on, and outdoor air temperature is lower than -2°C, unit starts by cooling mode for 3 minutes to prevent the liquid refrigerant from returning to compressor. (model FDC200 only)
b) Starts the compressor with its target frequency at **A** rps. However, when the indoor return air temperature (Thi-A) is 25°C or higher, it start at **C** rps.
c) At 30 seconds after the start of compressor, the compressor's target frequency is changed to **B** rps and the compressor's operation frequency is fixed for 6-10 minutes.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
FDC200	Heating	45	30	25
FDC250	Heating	55	30	30

(4) Outdoor fan control

(a) Outdoor fan tap and fan motor speed

Unit: min^{-1}

Model	Mode	Fan motor tap						
		① speed	② speed	③ speed	④ speed	⑤ speed	⑥ speed	⑦ speed
FDC200	Cooling/Dehumidifying	200	390	560	830	870	910	950
	Heating	200	390	560	830	870	910	950
		① speed	② speed	③ speed	④ speed	⑤ speed	⑥ speed	⑦ speed
FDC250	Cooling/Dehumidifying	200	370	600	750	850	900	950
	Heating	200	370	600	820	850	910	950

(b) Fan tap control during Cooling/Defumidifying operation

Fan taps are selected depending on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Note (1) It is detected by Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the higher.

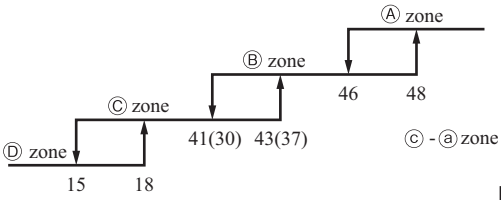
	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone	Ⓓ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 5(6)	Tap 5(6)	Tap 6(5/6)	Tap 4
ⓑ zone	Tap 5	Tap 5	Tap 4	Tap 3
ⓒ zone	Tap 4	Tap 4	Tap 3	Tap 2
ⓓ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 2	Tap 1

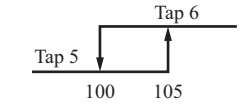
Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200.

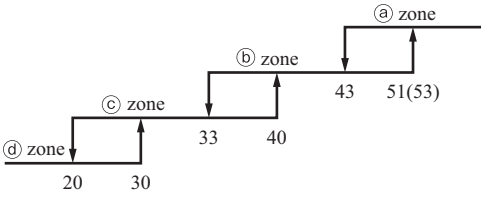
• Silent mode only

	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone	Ⓓ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 5	Tap 5	Tap 4(5)	Tap 4
ⓑ zone	Tap 4	Tap 4	Tap 3	Tap 3
ⓒ zone	Tap 4	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 2
ⓓ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 2	Tap 1

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for the model FDC200.







Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200.

(c) Fan tap control during heating operation

Fan taps are selected depending on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Note (1) It is detected by Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the lower.

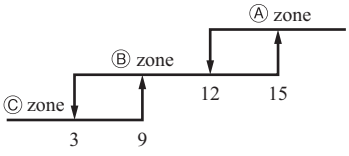
	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 4
ⓑ zone	Tap 3	Tap 4	Tap 5
ⓒ zone	Tap 4	Tap 7(5)	Tap 7(6)

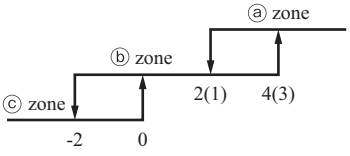
Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200.

• Silent mode only

	Ⓐ zone	Ⓑ zone	Ⓒ zone
ⓐ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 3
ⓑ zone	Tap 3	Tap 3	Tap 4
ⓒ zone	Tap 3(4)	Tap 5(4)	Tap 6(5)

Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200.



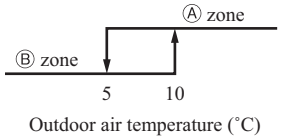


Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200.

(d) Outdoor fan control at cooling low outdoor air

(i) When all the following conditions are established after the start of compressor, the following control is implemented. If the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is in the zone Ⓑ in the cooling/dehumidifying mode, it has elapsed 20 seconds from the start of outdoor fan and the outdoor fan is at the tap 1 speed, the outdoor fan speed is controlled according to the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2).

Note (1) It is detected with Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the higher.



(ii) The outdoor heat exchanger temperature is detected always and, when the number of revolutions of the outdoor fan speed has been increased or decreased, there is no change of fan speed for 20 seconds.

(iii) Range of the outdoor fan speed under this control is as follows.

1) Lower limit: 130min^{-1}
2) Upper limit: 500min^{-1}

(iv) As any of the following conditions is established, this control terminates.

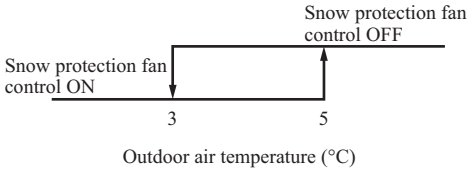
1) When the outdoor air temperature is in the zone Ⓐ and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature at 30°C or higher is established for 40 seconds or more continuously.
2) When the outdoor fan speed is 500min^{-1} and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature at 30°C or higher is established for 40 seconds or more continuously.
3) When the outdoor heat changer temperature at 45°C (model FDC250:50°C) or higher is established for 40 seconds or more.

(e) Caution at the outdoor fan start control

When the outdoor fan is running at 400min^{-1} or more before operating the compressor, it may operate with the compressor only, without starting up the outdoor fan. This is normal.

(f) Snow protection fan control

If the DIP switch (SW3-2) on the outdoor control PCB is turned ON, the outdoor fan is operated for 30 seconds at 4 tap speed once in every 10 minutes depending on the outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) in the stop mode or anomalous stop mode.



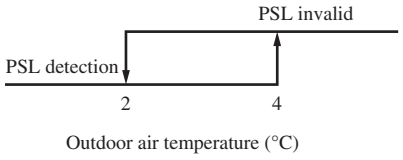
(5) Defrost operation

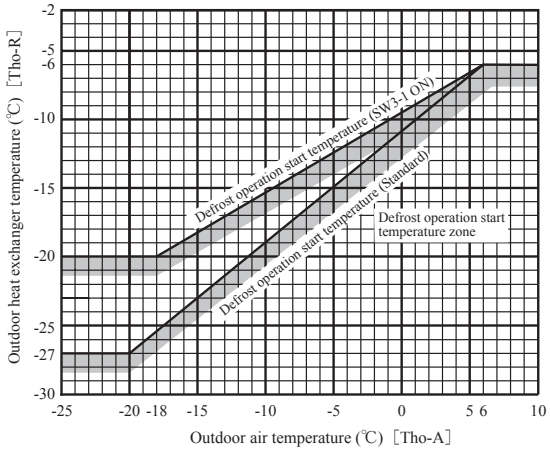
(a) Starting conditions

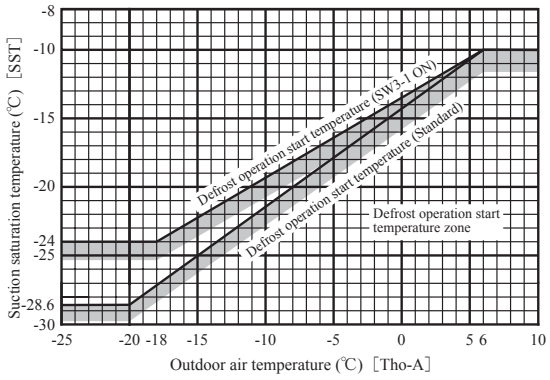
If all of the following defrost conditions A or conditions B are satisfied, the defrost operation starts.

(i) Defrost conditions A

1) Cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrost operation has elapsed 37 minutes, and the cumulative compressor operation time after the start of heating operation (remote control ON) has elapsed 30 minutes.
2) After 5 minutes from the compressor ON
3) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor fan
4) After satisfying all above conditions, if temperatures of the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature sensor (Tho-A) become lower than the defrost operation start temperature as shown by the right figure for 15 seconds continuously, or the suction gas saturation temperature (SST) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A), which are obtained from the value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) stay for 3 minutes within the range below the defrost operation start temperature as shown by the right figure. However, it excludes for 10 minutes after the start of compressor and the outdoor air temperature is as shown by the lower figure.







(ii) Defrost conditions B

1) When previous defrost ending condition is the time out of defrost operation and it is in the heating operation after the cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrost operation has become 30 minutes.
2) After 5 minutes from the start of compressor.
3) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor fan.

(b) Ending conditions

When any of the following conditions is satisfied, the heating operation starts.

(i) When it has elapsed 8 minutes and 20 seconds after the start of defrost operation. (After 10 minutes and 20 seconds for FDC250 model)

(ii) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperatures (Tho-R1, R2), whichever the lower, becomes 16 (FDC250:12)°C or higher for 10 seconds continuously.

(c) Switching of defrost control with SW3-1

(i) If SW3-1 on the outdoor control PCB is turned to ON, it becomes easier to enter the defrost operation. Use this when installing a unit at snowing regions.

(ii) Control contents

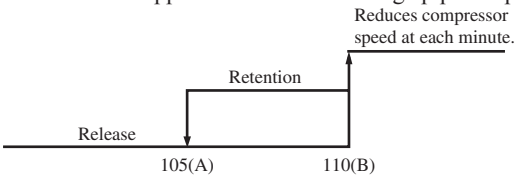
1) It allows entering the defrost operation under the defrost condition A when the cumulative heating operation time becomes 30 minutes. It is 37 minutes at SW3-1 OFF (Factory default).
2) It allows entering the defrost operation under the defrost condition B when the cumulative heating operation time becomes 25 minutes. It is 30 minutes at SW3-1 OFF (Factory default).
3) It allows the defrost operation with the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) and suction pressure saturation temperature (SST) being higher than normal.

(6) Protective control/anomalous stop control by compressor's number of revolutions

(a) Compressor discharge pipe temperature protection

(i) Protective control

As the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of discharge pipe temperature.

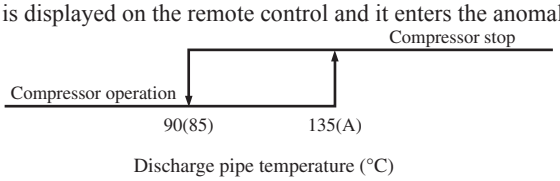


Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200.

Superheat	A	B
25°C or more	95	100
20°C or less	100	105

(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) If the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.
2) When it is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or after continuous 60 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E36 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200.

Superheat	A
25°C or more	110
20°C or less	115

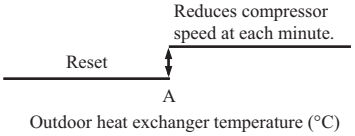
(iii) Reset of anomalous stop mode

As it drops to the reset value of 90 (85)°C or lower for 45 minutes continuously, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(b) Cooling high pressure protection

(i) Protective control

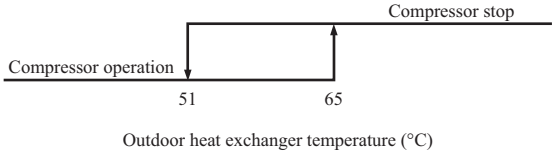
1) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the setting value A.
2) When the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 40°C or higher and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds certain value (depends on compressor frequency).
3) Control value A is updated to an optimum value automatically according to the operating conditions.



Control value A
60-54°C

(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) As the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.
2) If it is detected 5 times within 60 minutes or 65°C or higher continues for 60 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E35 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



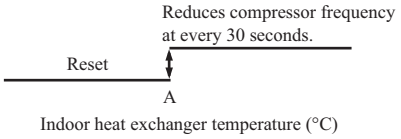
(iii) Reset of anomalous stop mode

As it reaches the reset value of 51°C or lower, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(c) Heating high pressure protection

(i) Protective control

1) As the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of high pressure.
2) Control value A is updated to an optimum value automatically according to the operating conditions.

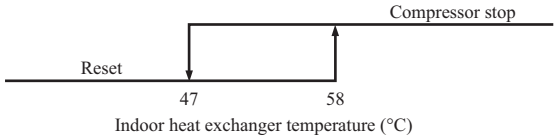


Model	Existing piping adaptation switch: SW5-1	
	OFF (Shipping)	ON
	Control value A (°C)	
FDC200	54-48	52-46
FDC250	58-52	

Note (1) Adaptation to existing piping is at ON.

(ii) Anomalous stop control
Operation control function by the indoor unit control - See the heating overload protection, page 73.

(iii) Adaptation to existing piping, stop control
If the existing piping adaptation switch, SW5-1, is turned ON, the compressor stops to protect existing piping when the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) exceeds the setting value.

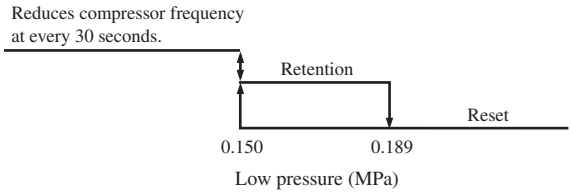


(d) Anomaly detection control by the high pressure switch (63H1)

(i) If the pressure rises and operates the high pressure switch (opens at 4.15MPa/closes at 3.15MPa), the compressor stops.
(ii) Under any of the following conditions, E40 is displayed and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
1) When it occurs 5 times within 60 minutes that pressure rises and the compressor is stopped by 63H1.
2) When 63H1 has been in the open state for 60 minutes continuously, including the stop of compressor.

(e) Low pressure control

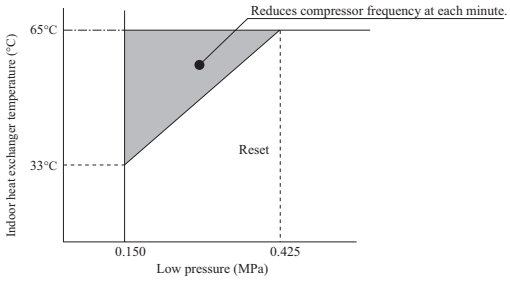
(i) Protective control
If the value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to restrain the drop of pressure.



(ii) Anomalous stop control
1) When a value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) satisfies any of the following conditions, the compressor stops for its protection.
a) When the low pressure drops to 0.079MPa or under for 15 seconds continuously.
b) At 10 minutes after the start of compressor, the suction overheat becomes 30°C or more for 60 seconds continuously and the low pressure becomes 0.15MPa or under.
2) E49 is displayed under any of the following conditions and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
a) When the low pressure drops 5 times within 60 minutes and the compressor stops under any of the above conditions.
b) When a value detected with the low pressure sensor becomes 0.079MPa or under for 5 minutes, including the stop of compressor.
3) However, when the control condition 1). a) is established during the compressor protection start III, E49 is displayed at initial stop and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

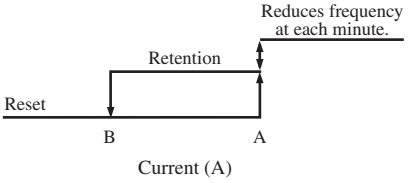
(f) Compressor pressure ratio protection control

(i) During heating operation, if the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) and low pressure sensor (PSL) exceed the setting values at 10 minutes after the start of compressor, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to protect the compressor.
(ii) This control is not performed during the outdoor fan ON and for 10 minutes from the start of outdoor fan.
(iii) This control is not performed during defrost operation and at 10 minutes after the reset of defrost operation.
(iv) When there are 3 indoor heat exchanger temperatures (Thi-R), the highest temperature is detected.



(g) Over-current protection current safe controls I, II

Detecting the outdoor inverter input (primary) current and the output (secondary) current, if the current values exceed setting values, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to protect the inverter.

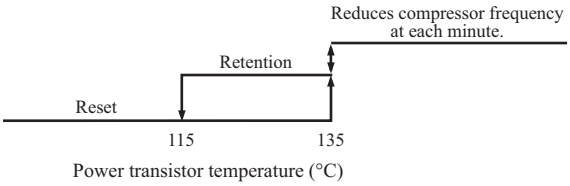


Model		Cooling		Heating	
		Control value A	Reset value B	Control value A	Reset value B
Primary current side	FDC200	16.0	15.0	16.0	15.0
	FDC250	18.0	17.0	18.0	17.0
Secandary current side	FDC200	15.5	14.5	15.5	14.5
	FDC250	17.0	16.0	17.0	16.0

(h) Power transistor temperature protection (model FDC250 only)

(i) Protective control

If the power transistor temperature (detected with TIP) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of power transistor temperature.



(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) If the power transistor temperature increases further, the protective switch in the power transistor trips and stops the compressor to protect the power transistor.
2) It enters the anomalous stop mode depending on one of the following conditions.
   a) When the protective switch in the power transistor trips and stops the compressor 5 times within 60 minutes (Displays E41.)
   b) When the protective switch in the power transistor trips and the state continues for 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor (Displays E51.)

(iii) Anomalous inverter PCB

1) If the power transistor detects anomaly 5 times within 60 minutes with compressor stop, E41 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
2) If the power transistor detects any anomaly for 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E51 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

(i) Anomalous power transistor current

(i) Prevents over-current on the inverter. If the current value in the power transistor exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.

(ii) If the current value in the power transistor exceeds the specified value and the compressor stops 4 times within 30 minutes, E42 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

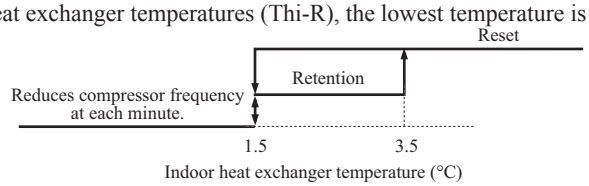
(j) Anomalous inverter communication

If the power transistor detects anomalies 4 times within 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E45 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

(k) Anti-frost control by the compressor frequency control

(i) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) exceeds the setting value at 4 minutes after the start of compressor, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to initiate the anti-frost control of indoor heat exchanger.

(ii) When there are 3 indoor heat exchanger temperatures (Thi-R), the lowest temperature is detected.



(iii) Regarding the anti-frost control by the operation stop, refer to the operation control function by the indoor control and the cooling, dehumidifying frost prevention of page 73.

(l) Dewing prevention control

[Control condition]

During cooling and dehumidifying operation, if all the following conditions are established, the compressor speed (frequency) is reduced to prevent dewing and water splash.

(i) Cooling electronic expansion valve aperture (EEVC) is 500 pulses.

(ii) Suction overheat is 10°C or higher.

(iii) Compressor speed (frequency) is **A** rps or higher.

[Control contents]

(i) When the suction overheat is 10°C or higher, the compressor speed (frequency) is reduced at each 1 minute.

(ii) Compressor speed (frequency) does not rise till the cooling expansion valve becomes 460 pulses.

(iii) This control takes **A** rps as its lower limit so that compressor speed is not controlled when it is less than **A** rps.

Model	**A** rps
FDC200	60
FDC250	60

(m) Broken wire detection on temperature sensor and low pressure sensor

(i) Outdoor heat exchanger sensor, outdoor air temperature sensor and low pressure sensor

If the following is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop.

Note (1) During defrosting and for 3 minutes after the end of defrosting, it is not detected.

- Outdoor heat exchanger sensor: -50°C or lower
- Outdoor air temperature sensor: -45°C or lower
- Low pressure sensor: 0V or under or 4.0V or over

(ii) Discharge pipe temperature sensor, suction pipe temperature sensor, compressor under dome temperature sensor

If the following is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop.

Note (1) During defrost operation and for 3 minutes after the end of defrost operation, it is not detected.

- Discharge pipe temperature sensor: -10°C or lower
- Suction pipe temperature sensor: -50°C or lower
- Compressor under dome temperature sensor : -50°C or lower

(n) Fan motor error

(i) If the fan speed of 100min^{-1} or under is detected for 30 seconds continuously under the outdoor fan control (with the operation command of fan tap at ① speed or higher), the compressor stops.

(ii) When the fan motor speed drops to 100min^{-1} or under 5 times within 60 minutes and the compressor stops, it enters the anomalous stop mode with E48 displayed on the remote control.

(o) Anomalous stop by the compressor start stop

(i) When it fails to shift to the compressor DC motor's rotor position defection operation at 5 seconds after establishing the compressor start condition, the compressor stops temporarily and restarts 3 minutes later.

(ii) If it fails to shift to the position detection operation again 20 times, it judges the anomalous compressor start and stops the compressor by the anomalous stop (E59).

(7) Silent mode

(a) As "Silent mode start" signal is received from the remote control, it operates by dropping the outdoor fan tap and the compressor speed (frequency).

(b) For details, refer to items (1) and (4) above.

(8) Test run

(a) It is possible to operate from the outdoor unit using the DIP switch on the outdoor unit control PCB.

SW3-3	ON	SW3-4	OFF	Cooling test run
			ON	Heating test run
	OFF	Normal and end of test run		

Make sure to turn SW3-3 to OFF after the end of operation.

(b) Test run control

(i) Operation is performed at the maximum compressor speed (frequency), which is determined for each model.

(ii) Each protective control and error detection control are effective.

(iii) If SW3-4 is switched during test run, the compressor is stopped once by the stop control and the cooling/heating operation is switched.

(iv) Setting and display of remote control during test run

Item / Mode	Contents of remote control setting/display
Cooling test run	Setting temperature of cooling is 5°C.
Heating test run	Setting temperature of heating (preparation) is 30°C.

(9) Pump-down control

Turning ON the pump-down switch SW1 for 2 seconds during the operation stop or anomalous stop (excluding the thermostat OFF), the pump-down operation is performed. (This is invalid when the indoor unit is operating. This is effective even when the indoor unit is stopped by the anomalous stop or the power source is turned OFF.)

(a) Control contents

(i) Close the service valve at the liquid side. (It is left open at the gas side.)

(ii) Compressor is started with the target speed (frequency) at FDC200:45, FDC250:55 rps in the cooling mode.

(iii) Red and green lamps (LED) keeps flashing on the outdoor control PCB.

(iv) Each of protection and error detection controls, excluding the low pressure control, anti-frost control and dewing prevention control, is effective.

(v) Outdoor fan is controlled as usual.

(vi) Electronic expansion valve is fully opened.

(b) Control ending conditions

Stop control is initiated depending on any of the following conditions.

(i) Low pressure of 0.087MPa or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously.
1) Red LED: Light, Green LED: keeps flashing, Remote control: Displays stop.
2) It is possible to restart when the low pressure is 0.087MPa or higher.
3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.

(ii) Stop by the error detection control
1) Red LED: keeps flashing, Green LED: keeps flashing
2) Restart is prohibited. To return to normal operation, reset the power source.
3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is left fully open.

(iii) When the cumulative operation time of compressor under the pump-down control becomes 5 minutes
1) Red LED: stays OFF, Green LED: keeps flashing, Remote control: Stop
2) It is possible to pump-down again.
3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is left fully open.

Note (1) After the stop of compressor, close the service valve at the gas side.

Caution: Since pressing the pump-down switch cancels communications with the indoor unit, the indoor unit and the remote control display "Transmission error – E5". This is normal.

(10) Base heater ON/OFF output control (Option)

(i) Base heater ON conditions

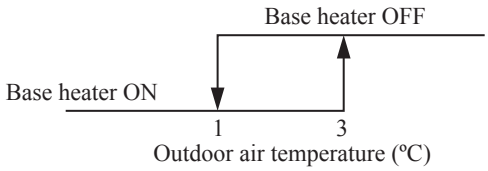
When all of following conditions are satisfied, the base heater is turned ON.

- Outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) is 1ºC or lower.
- In the heating mode
- When the compressor is turned ON

(ii) Base heater OFF conditions

When either one of following conditions is satisfied, the base heater is turned OFF.

- Outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) is 3ºC or higher.
- When the compressor stop has been detected for 30 minutes continuously
- In the cooling or dehumidifying mode



11. MAINTENANCE DATA

11.1 Diagnosing of microcomputer circuit

(1) Selfdiagnosis function

(a) Check indicator table

Whether a failure exists or not on the indoor unit and outdoor unit can be know by the contents of remote control error code, indoor/outdoor unit green LED (power pilot lamp and microcomputer normality pilot lamp) or red LED (check pilot lamp).

(i) Indoor unit

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Outdoor control PCB		Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Red LED	Green LED (1)				
No-indication	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	—	• **Normal operation**	—	—
		Stays OFF	Stays OFF	2-time flash	Stays OFF	Indoor unit power source	• Power OFF, broken wire/blown fuse, broken transformer wire	Repair	120
		* 3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires	• Poor connection, breakage of remote control wire * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF.	Repair	121
						Remote control	• Defective remote control PCB	Replacement of remote control	
WAIT or INSPECT I/U		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• Poor connection, breakage of indoor-outdoor units connection wire	Repair	122-125
						Remote control	• Improper setting of master and slave by remote control		
E 1		Stays OFF	* Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires (Noise)	• **Poor connection of remote control signal wire (White)** * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF • **Intrusion of noise in remote control wire**	Repair	127
						Remote control indoor control PCB	*• Defective remote control or indoor control PCB (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of remote control or PCB	
E 5		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• **Poor connection of wire between indoor-outdoor units during operation (disconnection, loose connection)** • **Anomalous communication between indoor-outdoor units by noise, etc.**	Repair	128
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	(Noise)	• **CPU-runaway on outdoor control PCB**	Power reset or Repair	
						Outdoor control PCB	*• Occurrence of defective outdoor control PCB on the way of power source (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Outdoor control PCB	• **Defective outdoor control PCB on the way of power source**	Replacement	
						Fuse	• **Blown fuse**		
E 6		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature sensor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	129
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E 7		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor return air temperature sensor	• **Defective indoor return air temperature sensor** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature sensor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	130
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E 8	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• **Heating over-load** (Anomalously high indoor heat exchanger temperature)	Repair	131
						Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (short-circuit)**	Replacement of temperature sensor	
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E 9		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Drain trouble	• **Defective drain pump (DM), broken drain pump wire**, disconnected connector	Replacement, repair of DM	132
						Float switch	• **Anomalous float switch operation** (malfunction)	Repair	
						Indoor control PCB	*• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective float switch input circuit) *• **Defective indoor control PCB** (Defective DM drive output circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
						Option	• **Defective option parts** (At optional anomalous input setting)	Repair	
E 10		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Number of connected indoor units	• **When multi-unit control by remote control is performed, the number of units is over**	Repair	133
E 11		Stays OFF	Keeps flshing	Stays OFF	Keeps flshing	Address setting error	• Address setting error of indoor units	Repair	134
E 16		1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor fan motor	• **Defective indoor fan motor**	Replacement, repair	135・136
						Indoor power PCB	• **Defective indoor power PCB**	Replacement	
E 19		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor control PCB	• **Indoor unit operation check error**	Repair	137
E20		1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor fan motor	• Indoor motor rotation speed anomaly	Replacement, repair	138・139
						Indoor power PCB	• Defective indoor power PCB	Replacement	
E28		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control temperature sensor	• Broken wire of remote control temperature sensor	Repair	140

Notes (1) **Normal indicator lamp (Indoor, outdoor units: Green) extinguishes (or lights continuously) only when CPU is anomalous. It keeps flashing in any trouble other than anomalous CPU.**

(2) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(ii) Outdoor unit

FDC200, 250VSA

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Outdoor control PCB		Outdoor inventer PCB	Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Yellow LED				
E35		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• Higher outdoor heat exchanger temperature	Repair	141
							Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	Replacement of temperature sensor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E36		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Higher discharge temperature	Repair	142
							Discharge pipe temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E37		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	143
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E38		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor air temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor air temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	144
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E39		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Discharge pipe temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	145
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E40		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Rising high pressure (Operation of 63H1) • Service valve closing operation	Repair	146
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective 63H input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E41		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	2-time or 8-time flash	Inverter PCB or radiator fin	• Power transistor overheat	Replacement of PCB or Repair	147
E42		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	1-time or 9-time flash	Outdoor control PCB compressor	• Current cut (Anomalous compressor over-current)	Replacement of PCB	148・149
							Installation or operating condition	• Service valve closing operation	Repair	
E45		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Outdoor control PCB	• Anomalous outdoor control PCB communication	Service valve opening check	150
							Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB communication	Replacement of PCB	
E48		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor fan motor	• Anomalous outdoor fan motor	Replacement, repair	151
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective motor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E49		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Low pressure error • Service valve closing operation	Repair	152・153
							Low pressure sensor	• Anomalous low pressure, broken wire of low pressure sensor or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of sensor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E51		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	2-time or 8-time flash	Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB	Replacement of PCB	154
E53		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Suction pipe temperature sensor	• Defective suction pipe temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	155
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E54		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Low pressure sensor	• Defective low pressure sensor	Replacement of sensor	156
							Outdoor control PCB	• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E55		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Compressor under dome temperature sensor	• Defective compressor under dome temperature sensor (Model FDC250 only)	Replacement of temperature sensor	157
							Outdoor control PCB	• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)? (Model FDC250 only)	Replacement of control PCB	
E57		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Operation status	• Shortage in refrigerant quantity	Repair	158
							Installation status	• Service valve closing operation	Service valve opening check	
E59		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	5-time flash	Keeps flashing	4-time flash	Compressor inverter PCB	• Anomalous compressor startup	Replacement	159・160

Note (1) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(iii) Option control in-use

		Indoor unit control PCB		Outdoor unit control PCB		Description of trouble	Repair method
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED	Red LED	Green LED		
E75	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	• Communication error (Defective communication circuit on the main unit of SC-SL2NA-E or SC-SL4-AE / BE) ete.	Replacement

(iv) Display sequence of error codes or inspection indicator lamps

■ **Occurrence of one kind of error**

Displays are shown respectively according to errors.

■ **Occurrence of plural kinds of error**

Section	Category of display
Error code on remote control	• Displays the error of higher priority (When plural errors are persisting)
Red LED on indoor control PCB	E1 > E5 > ····· > E10 > E32 > ····· E60
Red LED on outdoor control PCB	• Displays the present errors. (When a new error has occurred after the former error was reset.)

■ **Error detecting timing**

Section	Error description	Error code	Error detecting timing
Indoor	Drain trouble (Float switch activated)	E9	Whenever float switch is activated after 30 seconds had past since power ON.
	Communication error at initial operation	"WAIT"	No communication between indoor and outdoor units is established at initial operation.
	Remote control communication circuit error	E1	Communication between indoor unit and remote control is interrupted for more than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Communication error during operation	E5	Communication between indoor and outdoor units is interrupted for more than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Excessive number of connected indoor units by controlling with one remote control	E10	Whenever excessively connected indoor units is detected after power ON.
	Return air temperature sensor anomaly	E7	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	E6	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or 70°C or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously
Outdoor	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	E38	-45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or -45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.
	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	E37	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or -50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.
	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	E39	-10°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly	E53	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Low pressure sensor anomaly	E54	0V or lower or 4.0V or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous pressure.
	Compressor under dome temperature sensor anomaly	E55	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.

■ **Error log and reset**

Error indicator	Memorized error log	Reset
Remote control display	• Higher priority error is memorized.	• Stop the unit by pressing the ON/OFF switch of remote control. • If the unit has recovered from anomaly, it can be operated.
Red LED on indoor unit control PCB	• Not memorized.	
Red LED on outdoor unit control PCB	• Memorizes a mode of higher priority.	

■ **Resetting the error log**

1) RC-EX3A

• Resetting the memorized error log in the remote control

You touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Error display" → "Error history" on the TOP screen of remote control.And if you touch "Delete" → "Yes" button,all error log and anomaly data memorized in the remote control are deleted.

• Resetting the memorized error log in the indoor unit

You touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Error display" → "Error anomaly data" on the TOP screen of remote control.

The remote control transmits error log erase command to the indoor unit when "Yes" button is pressed on the erase anomaly data screen.

Receiving the command, the indoor unit erase the log and answer the status of no error.

2) RC-E5

• Resetting the memorized error log in the remote control

Holding down "CHECK" button, press "TIMER" button to reset the error log memorized in the remote control.

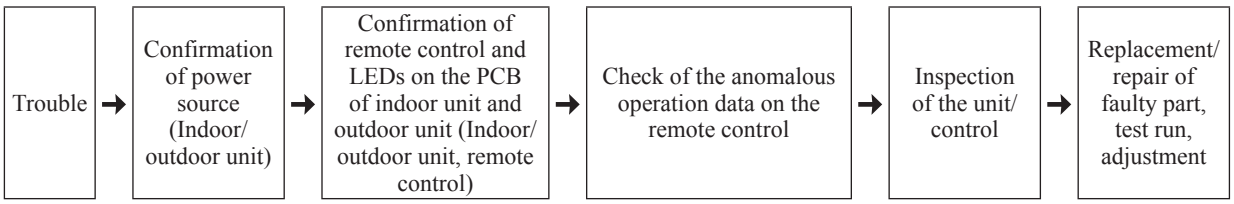
• Resetting the memorized error log in the indoor unit

The remote control transmits error log erase command to the indoor unit when "VENTI" button is pressed while holding down "CHECK" button.

Receiving the command, the indoor unit erase the log and answer the status of no error.

(2) Troubleshooting procedure

When any trouble has occurred, inspect as follows. Details of respective inspection method will be described on later pages.



(3) Troubleshooting at the indoor unit

(a) FDU series

With the troubleshooting, find out any defective part by checking the voltage (AC, DC), resistance, etc. at respective connectors at around the indoor unit PCB, according to the inspection display or operation status of unit (the compressor does not run, fan does not run, the 4-way valve does not switch, etc.), and replace or repair in the unit of following part.

(i) Replacement part related to indoor unit PCB's

Control PCB, power source PCB, temperature sensor (return air, indoor heat exchanger), remote control switch, limit switch, transformer and fuse

Note (1) With regard to parts of high voltage circuits and refrigeration cycle, judge it according to ordinary inspection methods.

(ii) Instruction of how to replace indoor control PCB

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the replacement in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, WARNING and CAUTION.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.

⚠ WARNING	Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
⚠ CAUTION	Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.

- After completing the replacement, do commissioning to confirm there are no anomaly.

⚠ WARNING

- Replacement should be performed by the specialist.
  If you replace the PCB by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as electric shock or fire.
- Replace the PCB correctly according to these instructions.
  Improper replacement may cause electric shock or fire.
- Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.
  Replacement during the applying the current would cause the electric shock, unit failure or improper running.
  It would cause the damage of connected equipment such as fan motor,etc.
- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- Check the connection of wiring to PCB correctly before turning on the power, after replacement.
  Defectiveness of replacement may cause electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- In connecting connector onto the PCB, connect not to deform the PCB. It may cause breakage or malfunction.
- Insert connecter securely, and hook stopper. It may cause fire or improper running.
- Bundle the cables together so as not to be pinched or be tensioned. It may cause malfunction or electric shock for disconnection or deformation.

Models FDU200, 250VH

PSB012D990B D

a) Control PCB

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

i) Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

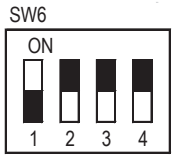
Item	Switch	Content of control	
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control	
Test run	SW7-1	—	Normal
		○	Operation check/drain motor test run

○:ON —:OFF

ii) Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
200VH	—	○	○	○
250VH	○	○	○	○



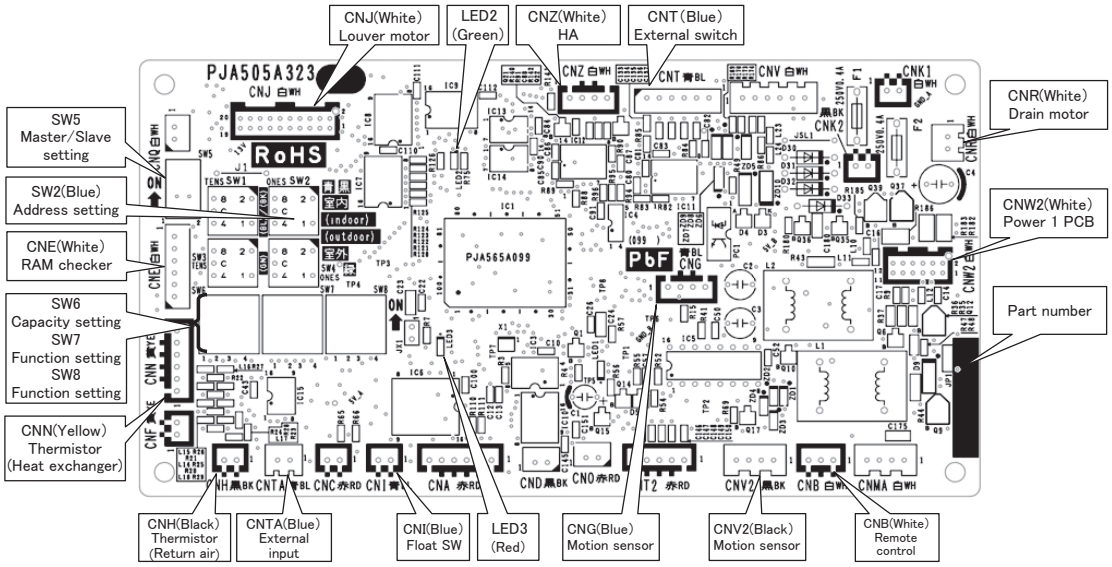
Example setting for 200VH

iii) Replace the PCB

① Exchange PCB after detaching all connectors connected with the PCB.
② Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the wiring.
③ Connect connectors to the PCB. Match the wiring connector to the connector color on the PCB and connect it.

iv) Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



b) Power PCB

PSC012D035

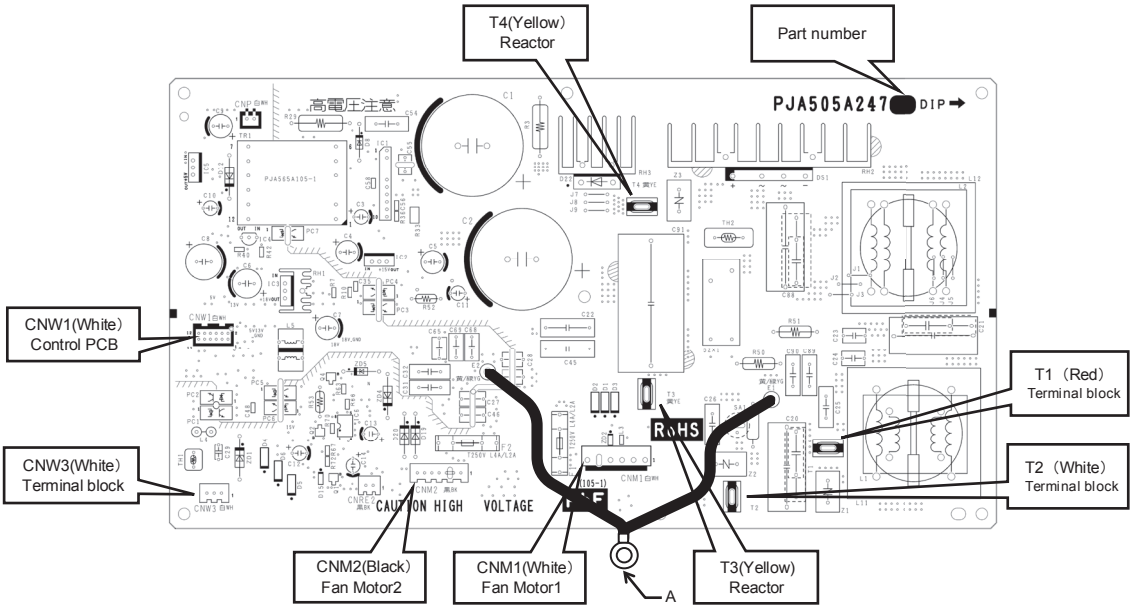
This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

i) Replace the PCB

①. Unscrew terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring(yellow/green) that is connected to PCB.
②. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
③. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
④. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
⑤. Screw back the terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring, that was removed in ①.

ii) Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



c) Motor control PCB

PSC012D036

① Replace the PCB

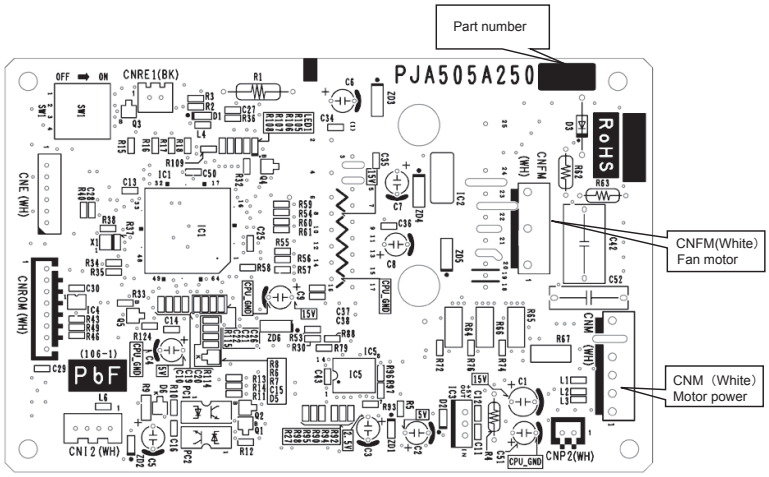
i) Take off the connection of connector and remove the screw of power transistor then remove the PCB.
Wipe off the silicon grease neatly on the control's radiation heat fins.

ii) Before installing the power transistor on the new PCB, **apply uniformly a bundled of silicon grease** first on the surface of power transistor. Make sure it is applied to prevent **damage on power transistor,** and install the PCB not to pinch the wirings.

iii) Tighten the screw of power transistor and reconnect the wirings to the PCB.
Confirm the connection and don't use soldering in the connection. **Tighten properly the power transistor with a screw and make sure there is no slack. Power transistor can be damage** if not properly tighten. (Recommended power transistor tightening torque:0.59-0.78N·m)

② Fan motor control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



●DIP switch setting list

Switches	Description		Default setting		Remark
SW2	Address No. setting at plural indoor units control by 1 R/C		0		0-F
SW6-1 SW6-2 SW6-3 SW6-4	Model selection		As per model		See table 1
SW7-1	Test run, Drain pump motor	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Normal	
SW7-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW7-3	Powerful mode	Valid*/Invalid	ON	Valid	
SW7-4	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-1	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-3	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-4	Setting of the external static pressure	Normal*/Range expand	OFF	Normal	
JSL1	Superlink terminal spare	Normal*/switch to spare	With		

* Default setting

Table 1: Indoor unit model selection with SW6-1-SW6-4

	200VH	250VH
SW6-1	OFF	ON
SW6-2	ON	ON
SW6-3	ON	ON
SW6-4	ON	ON

(4) Troubleshooting at the outdoor unit

When troubleshooting the outdoor unit, firstly assess the overview of malfunction and try to presume the cause and the faulty part by checking the error code dispalyed on the remote control and flashing pattern of indicator lamps (Red LED and Green LED), and then proceed further inspection and remedy it.

Self-diagnosis system by microcomputor on indoor unit and outdoor unit PCB can assist to find the cause of malfunction smoothly by making a diagnosis of not only the anomaly of microcomputer, but also the anomaly in power source system, installation space, overload resulting from improper charging amount of refrigerant and etc.

Unless the power is reset, the error log is saved in memory and the inspection indicator lamps on outdoor unit PCB keep flashing after automatical recovering from malfunction.

After automatical recovering from malfunction, if any another error mode which has a higher priority than the previous error saved in memory occurs, it is overwritten in memory and is displayed.

[Reset of power source]

Be sure to avoid electrical shock, when replacing or checking the outdoor unit control PCB, because some voltage is still retained in the electrolytic capacitor on the PCB even after shutting down the power source to the outdoor unit.

Be sure to start repairing work, after confirming that the red LED or green LED on the PCB has been extiguished for more than 10 seconds after more than 3 minutes had been passed since power shut down, and reconfirming that voltage has been discharged sufficiently by measuring the voltage (DC) between both terminals of electrolytic capacitor (C58) (Measurment of voltage may be disturbed by the moisture-proof coating. In such case, remove the coating and measure it by taking care of avoiding electrical shock)

(a) Module of part to be replaced for outdoor unit control

Outdoor unit control PCB, Inverter PCB, Temperature sensor (of outdoor heat exchanger, discharge pipe, outdoor air, IPM, suction pipe and under dome), Fuses (for power source and control PCB), Noise filter, Capacitor and Reactor.

(b) Replacement procedure of outdoor control PCB

Precautions for Safety

- Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them. WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows:

⚠WARNING Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ WARNING

- Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire.
- After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock.

PCA012D050

● **Models FDC200VSA, 250VSA**

Replace the control PCB according to the following procedure.

(i) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF.**

(ii) Measurement was done on both ends of connector (CNA1) during measurement, **the voltage(DC) might charged the electrolytic capacitor, be sure that the voltage is discharged sufficiently. (Refer to Fig.2)**

(iii) Disconnect the connectors from the control PCB.

(iv) Disconnect the white or blue wiring passing through CT1 on the PCB before replacing the PCB.

(v) Match the setting switches (SW3-5,7, JSW1) with the former PCB.

(vi) Tighten up a screw after passing white or blue wiring through CT1 of the changed.

(vii) Please connect the connectors with the same place. **(Confirm the connectors are not half inserted.)**

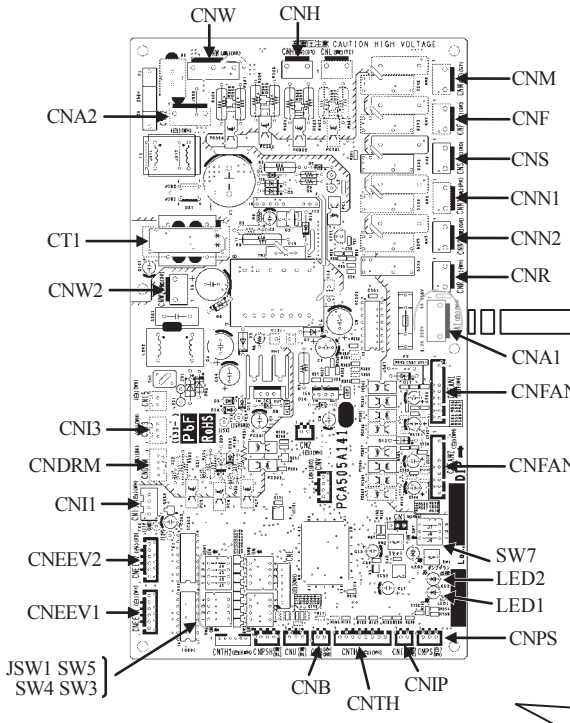


Fig.1 Parts arrangement view

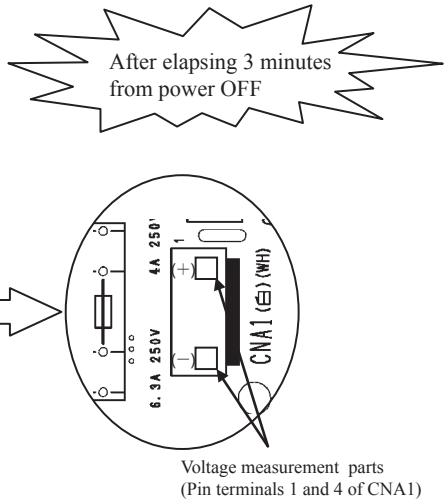
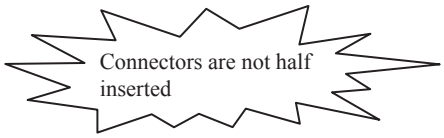


Fig.2 Enlarged figure of parts location



(c) Outdoor inverter PCB replacement procedure

Precautions for Safety

- Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them.
  WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows:

⚠ WARNING Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ WARNING

- Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure.
  If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire.
- After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock.

Replace the inverter PCB according to the following procedure.

(i) Model FDC200VSA

PCA012D063

Replace the inverter PCB (Fig.1) according to the following procedure.

1) Replace the inverter PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.
   (Be sure to measure **voltage (DC) of two places ((A) power source for fan motor (DC), (B) power source for inverter)**, and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**.(Refer to Fig.2))
2) Take off the wirings and connectors of inverter PCB, the screws of power transistor. Then remove the PCB from the control. Wipe off the silicon grease neatly on the control's radiation fins.
3) Match the setting of switches (JSW10, 11) of new PCB with the former PCB.
4) Before installing the new PCB to the control, **apply the bundled silicon grease uniformly** on the surface of power transistor, and all use it up at that time. **The power transistor can be damaged**, if the silicon grease is not applied.
5) Tighten the screws of power transistor on inverter PCB and reconnect the wirings and connectors to inverter PCB. After connection, confirm **the screws are tightened and connectors are not half inserted**.
   However, tighten the power transistor with the screws according to recommended tightening torque after tightening the screws temporarily once.
   Power transistor can be damage if not tightened according to this procedure.
   (Temporary tightening torque:0.20 − 0.44N・m, Recommended tightening torque:0.98 − 1.47 N・m)

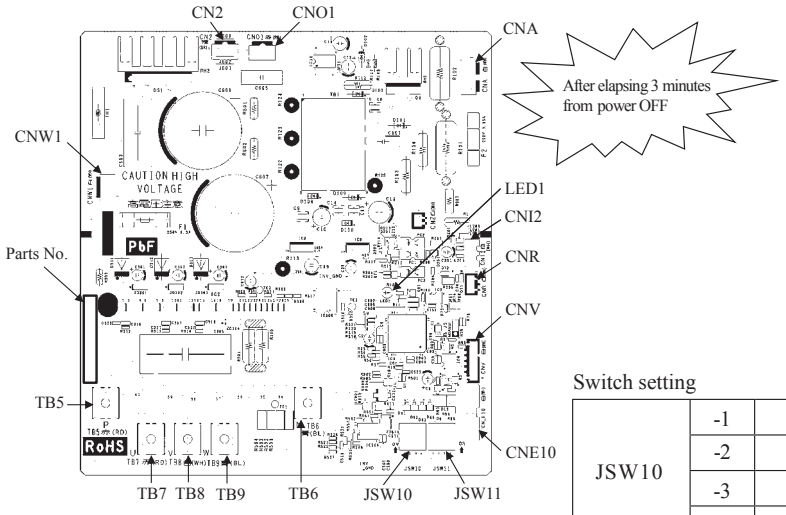


Fig.1 Parts arrangement view of inverter PCB

Switch setting

JSW10	-1	OFF	JSW11	-1	OFF
	-2	OFF		-2	OFF
	-3	OFF		-3	OFF
	-4	OFF		-4	OFF

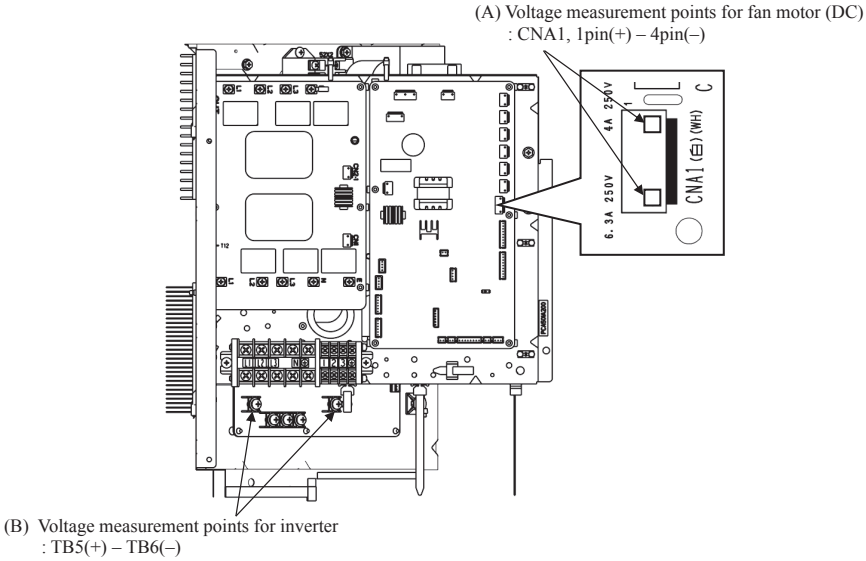


Fig.2 Voltage measurement points

PCB012D057A D

(ii) Model FDC250VSA

Replace the inverter PCB (Fig.1) according to the following procedure.

1) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.
2) In the situation that harnesses are connected to control PCB, **be sure to measure voltage (DC) of two places ((A), (B))** and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**. (Refer to Fig.2)
3) Remove the harnesses from bands, clips and connectors on the control PCB. Then, remove the appointed screws (4 places) of a control. (Refer toFig.3)
4) Open main layer and **measure voltage (DC) of aplace (C)** and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**. (Refer to Fig.4)
5) Disconnect connectors from the inverter PCB (Refer to Fig.1), remove a snubber capacitor (Refer to Fig.4) and harnesses (“P”, “N” ,“U”, “V” and “W”), and exchange the inverter PCB then. In the situation of being opening main layer, do not press the control from above. It will cause the product deformation or injury.
6) Match the setting of switches (JSW10, 11) of new PCB with former PCB.
7) After exchanging the inverter PCB, install the snubber capacitor to power transistor (Refer to Fig.5), and reconnect the connectors and the harnesses as before. (Confirm the **connectors are not half inserted**.)
Be careful not to pinch the wiring at the time of closing main layer. The wiring is damaged, and it will cause a short circuit or fire.

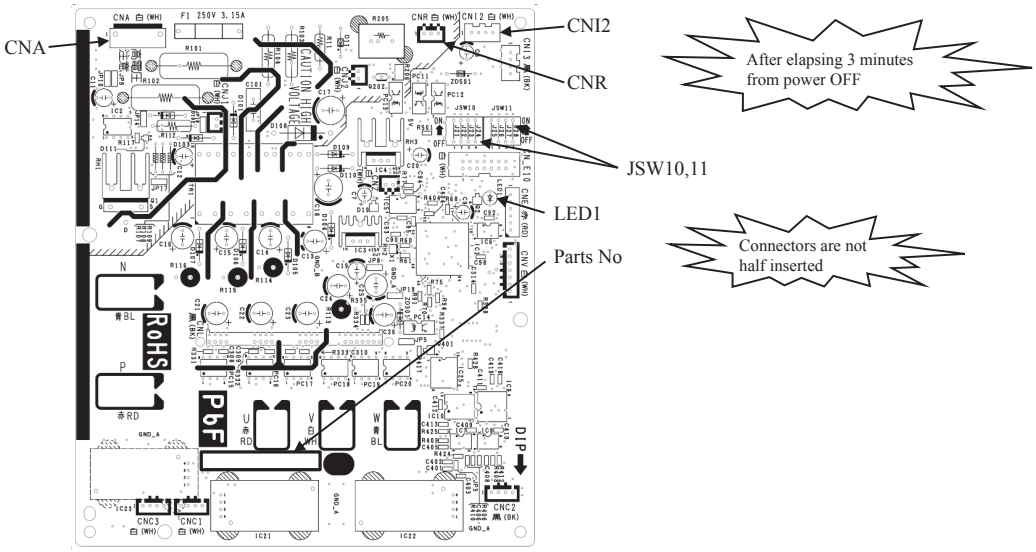


Fig.1 Parts arrangement view of inverter PCB

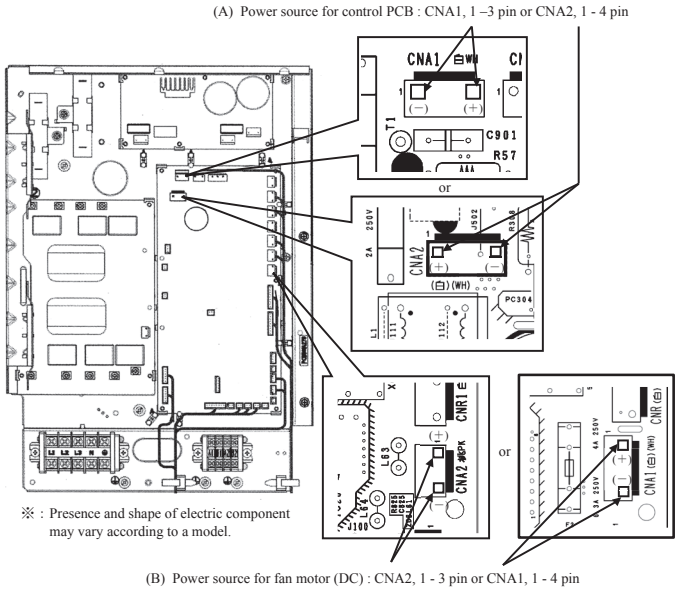


Fig.2 Voltage measurement points

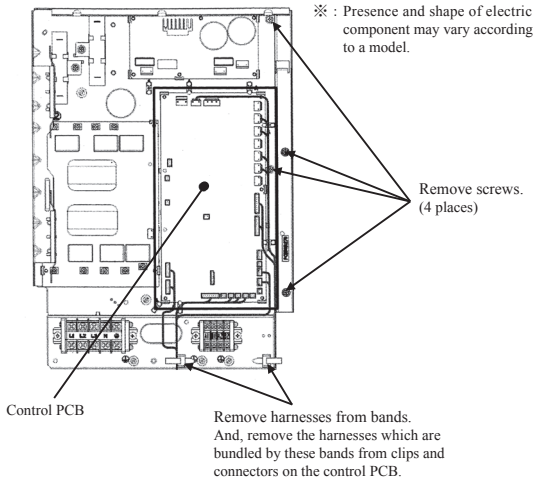


Fig.3 Target places which are removed harnesses and screws

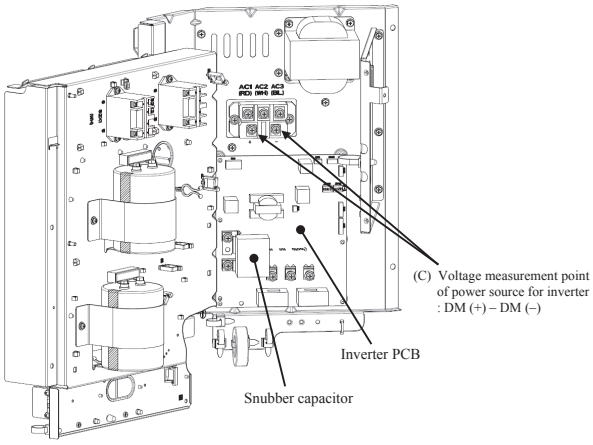
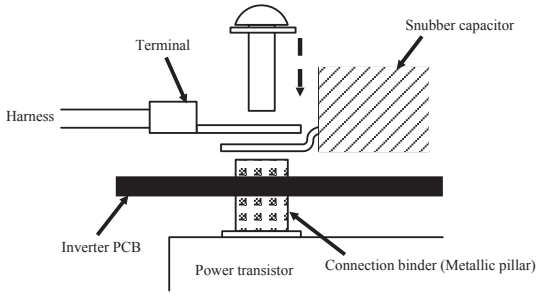


Fig.4 Installation place of inverter PCB



Procedure on tightening harness (Snubber capacitor) and power transistor with screw.
A metallic connection binder is set in each hole of the inverter PCB of "P", "N", "U", "V", and "W" beforehand.
Then tighten the harness (Snubber capacitor) and the power transistor with the screw together.
(Set the harness wires to be fixed to "U" and "W" with screws in respective holes after passing them through IC21 and 22.)
(Connect the snubber capacitor with "P" and "N".)

Fig.5 Installation method to power transistor

●DIP switch setting list (Outdoor unit)

Models FDC200, 250VSA

(1) Control PCB

Switch	Description		Default setting		Remark
SW1	Pump down operation	Normal*/Pump down	OFF	Normal	
JSW1-1	Model selection		As per model		See table 1
JSW1-2					
JSW1-3					
JSW1-4					
SW3-1	Defrost condition	Normal*/Cold region	OFF	Normal	
SW3-2	Snow protection control	Normal*/Snow protection	OFF	Normal	
SW3-3	Test run Switch	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Normal	
SW3-4	Test run mode	Cooling*/Heating	OFF	Cooling	
SW4-1	Model selection	Domestic/Overseas*	ON	Overseas	See table 1
SW4-2	Model selection	3 phase/Single phase	As per model		See table 1
SW4-3	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW4-4	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-1	Utilization of existing piping control	Normal*/Existing piping control	OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-2	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-3	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW5-4	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW7-1	Silent mode setting	Capacity priority/Silent priority	ON	Silent priority	
SW7-2	Reserved		ON		Keep ON
SW7-3	Anti frost control	Invalid/Valid	ON	Valid	

* Default setting

Table 1: Outdoor unit model selection with JSW1-1-JSW1-4 and SW4-1-SW4-2

Switch	FDC200	FDC250
JSW1-1	ON	OFF
JSW1-2	ON	OFF
JSW1-3	OFF	ON
JSW1-4	OFF	OFF
SW4-1	ON	ON
SW4-2	OFF	OFF

(2) Inverter PCB

Switch	FDC200	FDC250
JSW10-1	OFF	OFF
JSW10-2	OFF	ON
JSW10-3	OFF	OFF
JSW10-4	OFF ∗	OFF ∗
JSW11-1	OFF	OFF
JSW11-2	OFF	OFF
JSW11-3	OFF	OFF
JSW11-4	OFF	OFF

∗ When checking inverter PCB of FDC200, 250 models with inverter checker, turn JSW10-4 ON.
(Regarding the checking method of inverter PCB with inverter checker, refer to page 103, 104 for details)

(5) Check of anomalous operation data with the remote control

(a) In case of RC-EX3A remote control

[Operating procedure]

① On the TOP screen, touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Set" → "Error display" → "Error history".

② When only one indoor unit is connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1. When there is any anomaly: "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly

Contents of display

・Error code

・Number and data item

2. When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, and this mode is terminated.

③ When two or more indoor units are connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1. When there is any anomaly: If the unit having anomaly is selected on the "Select IU" screen, "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly.

Contents of display

・Indoor unit No.

・Error code

・Number and data item

2. When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, ant this mode is terminated.

Note (1) When the number of connected units cannot be shown in a page, select "Next".

④ If you press [RUN/STOP] button, the display returns to the TOP screen.

◎ **If you touch "Back" button on the way of setting, the display returns to the last precious screen.**

Note (1) When two remote controls are used to control indoor units, the check of anomaly operation data can be made on the master remote control only. (It cannot be operated from the slave remote control.)

■ Anomaly operation data (Corresponding data may not be provided depending on models. Such items will not be displayed.)

Number		Data Item
01	❄	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR__℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR__℃	(Remote Control Temperature Sensor)
05	THI-R1__℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2__℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3__℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
13	SUPPLY AIR__℃	(Supply Air Temperature)
21	OUTDOOR__℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM__℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH__℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED____	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

●Details of compressor protection status No. 33
Models FDC200, 250VSA

No.	Contents of display	Reference page
"0"	Normal	
"1"	Discharge pipe temperature protection control	Page 88, (6).(a).(i)
"2"	Discharge pipe temperature anomaly	Page 88, (6).(a).(ii)
"3"	Current safe control of inverter primary current	Page 90, (6).(g)
"4"	High pressure protection control	Page 88, (6).(b).(i), Page 89, (6).(c).(i)
"5"	High pressure anomaly	Page 88, (6).(b).(ii)
"6"	Low pressure protection control	Page 89, (6).(e).(i)
"7"	Low pressure anomaly	Page 89, (6).(e).(ii)
"8"	Anti-frost prevention control	Page 90, (6).(k)
"9"	Current cut	Page 90, (6).(g)
"10"	Power transistor protection control	Page 90, (6).(h)
"11"	Power transistor anomaly (Overheat)	Page 90, (6).(i)
"12"	Compression ratio control	Page 89, (6).(f)
"13"	Spare	
"14"	Dewing prevention control	Page 91, (6).(1)
"15"	Current safe control of inverter secondary current	Page 90, (6).(g)
"16"	Stop by compressor rotor lock	
"17"	Stop by compressor startup failure	Page 91, (6).(o)
"18"	Active filter anomaly	

Note(1) Operation data display on the remote control.
・Data is dispalyed until canceling the protection control.
・In case of multiple protections controlled, only the younger No. is displayed.
Note(2) Common item.
① In heating mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "4" is displayed.
② In cooling and dehumidifying mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "8" is displayed.

(b) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Operation data can be checked with remote control unit operation.

① Press the CHECK button.
The display change " OPER DATA ▼"

② Press the ○ (SET) button while " OPER DATA ▼ " is displayed.

③ When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, " DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
Next, operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step ⑦.

④ When plural indoor units is connected, the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
[Example]:
" SELECT I/U " (blinking 1 seconds) → " I/U000 ▲ " blinking.

⑤ Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.

⑥ Determine the indoor unit number with the ○ (SET) button.
(The indoor unit number changes from blinking indication to continuous indication)
" I/U000 " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
↓
" DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
Next, the operation data of the indoor unit is indicated.

Number	Data Item	
01	※	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR___℃	(Remote Control Temperature Sensor)
05	THI-R1___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM___℃	(Compressor Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

⑦ Upon operation of the ▲ ▼ button, the current operation data is displayed in order from data number 01.
The items displayed are in the above table.
*Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.

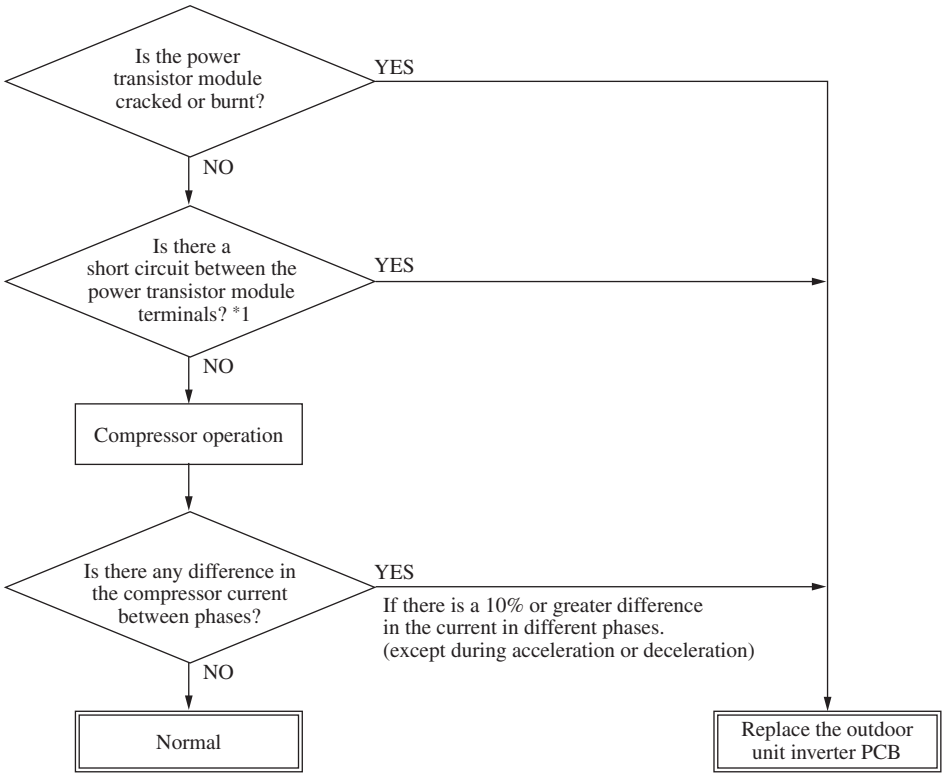
⑧ To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON No. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen.

⑨ Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.
Pressing the // (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

⊙If two (2) remote controls are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

●Details of compressor protection status No. 33
Refer to page 107.

(6) Power transistor module (Including the driver PCB) inspection procedure



*1 Power transistor module terminal short circuit check procedure

Disconnect the compressor wiring, then conduct a short circuit check.

P-U, P-V, P-W

N-U, N-V, N-W

Check between the P-N terminals.

Bring the tester probes in contact with the following places on each te rminal.

P: Power transistor P terminal,

N: Power transistor N terminal,

U: End of red harness to compressor

V: End of white harness to compressor

W: End of black or blue harness to compressor

Check for a power transistor short-circuit.

- When you do not have a diagnostic checker for judging if the inverter is defective, measure between the terminals of the power transistor parts, judge whether the power transistor is defective or not.
- Disconnect the compressor, then measure with the control incorporated.

Models FDC200, 250VSA

Tester		Normal value (Ω)	
Terminal (+)	Terminal (-)	Model FDC200	Model FDC250
P	N	Scores of M	Scores of M
N	P	Approx. 4.5M	Approx. 8.9M
P	U	Scores of M	Scores of M
P	V		
P	W		
N	U	Approx. 130k	Approx. 4.6M
N	V		
N	W		
U	P	Approx. 4.5M	Approx. 4.8M
V	P		
W	P		
U	N	Approx. 6.7M	Scores of M
V	N	Approx. 6.0M	
W	N	Approx. 5.7M	

If the measured values range from 0 - several kW, there is a possibility that the elements are damaged, so replace the power transistor parts.

(7) Inverter checker for diagnosis of inverter output
Models FDC200, 250VSA

●Checking method

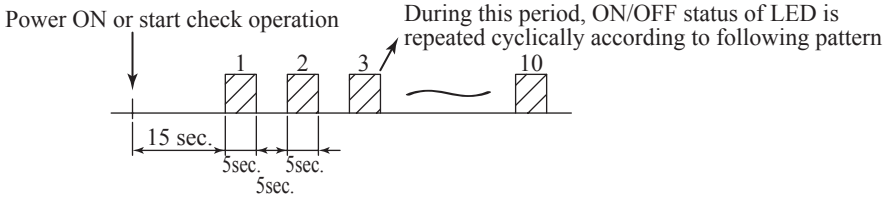
(i) Setup procedure of checker.

1) Power OFF (Turn off the breaker).
2) Remove the terminal cover of compressor and disconnect the wires (U, V, W) from compressor.
3) Connect the wires U (Red) , V (White) and W (Black) of checker to the terminal of disconnected wires (U, V, W) from compressor respectively.

(ii) Operation for judgment.

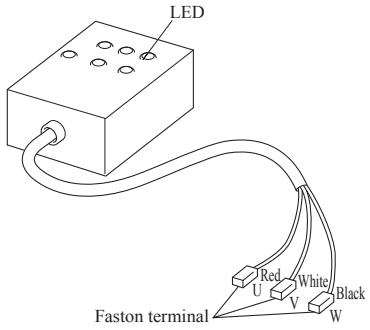
1) Power ON after JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB was turned ON.
2) After 15 seconds since power has turned ON, LED start ON/OFF for 5 seconds cyclically and it repeats 10 times.
3) Check ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.
4) Judge the PCB by ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.

ON/OFF status of LED	If all of LED are ON/OFF according to following pattern	If all of LED stay OFF or some of LED are ON/OFF
Control PCB	Normal	Anomalous



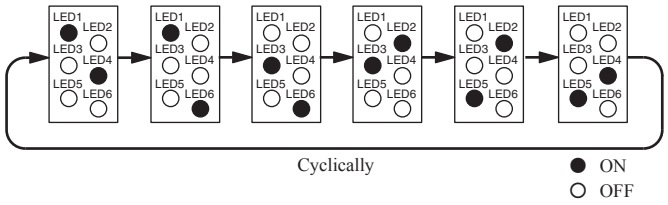
5) Be sure to turn off JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB, after finishing the check operation.

〈**Inverter checker**〉

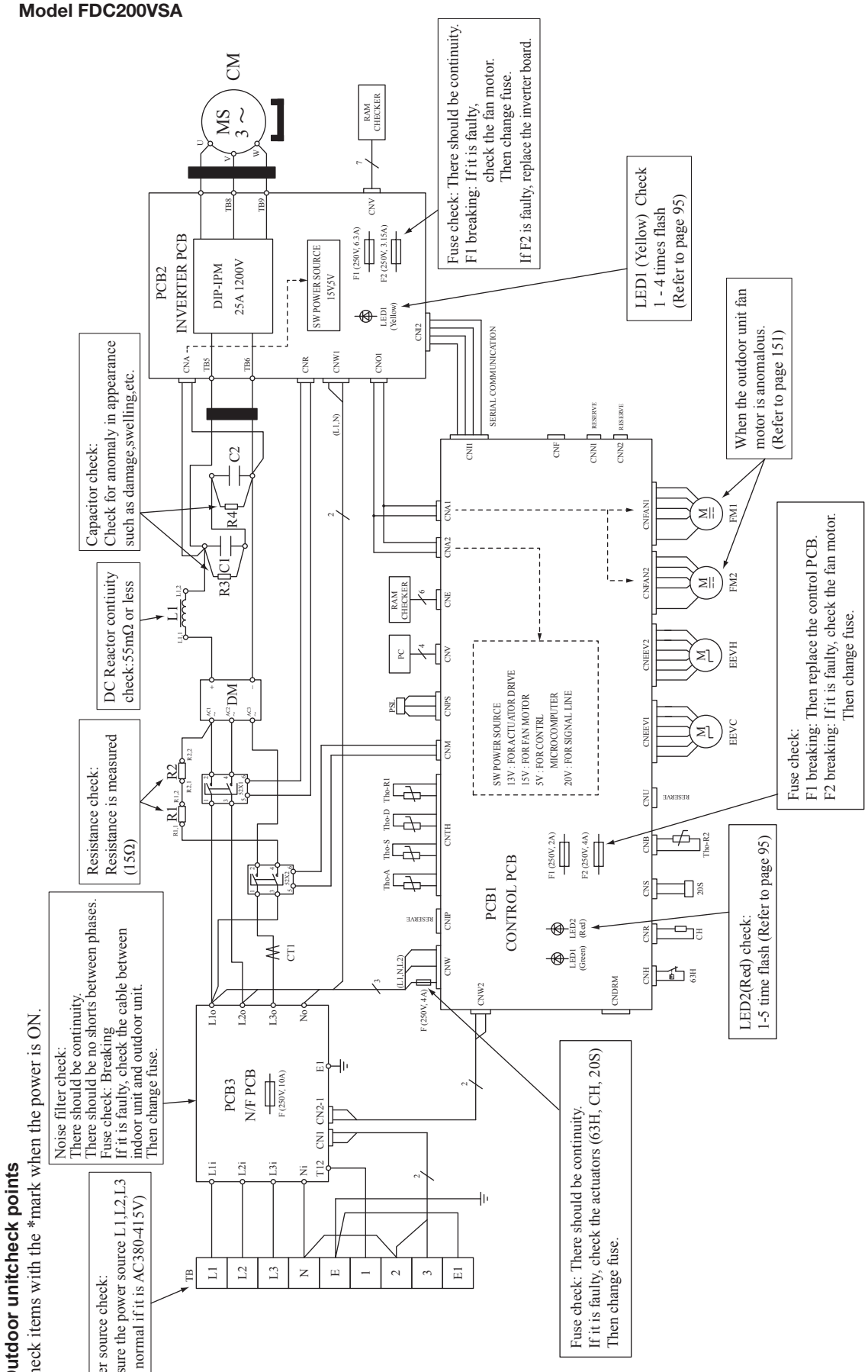


Connect to the terminal of the wires which are disconnected from compressor.

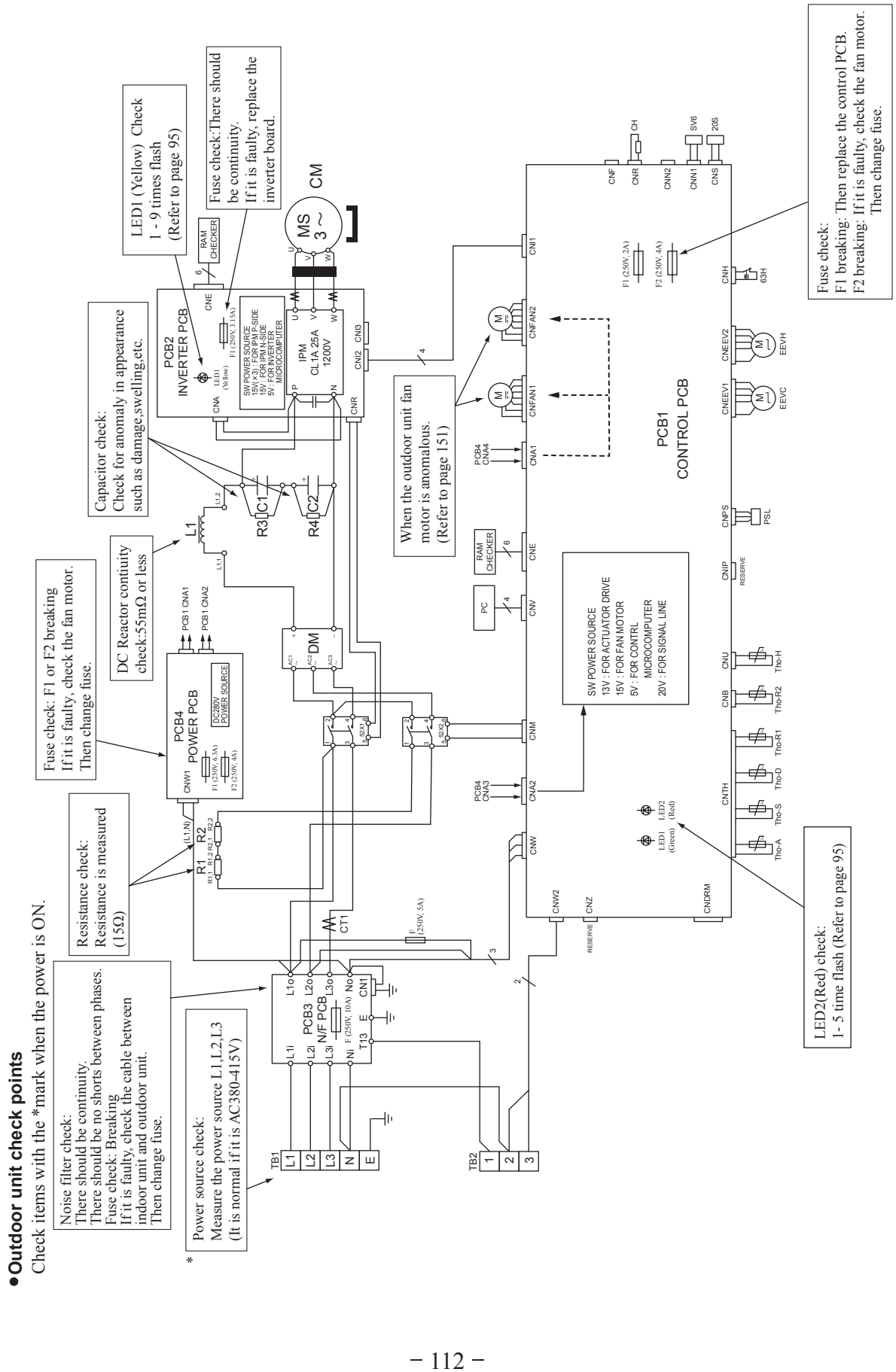
LED ON/OFF pattern



Model FDC200VSA



Model FDC250VSA



11.2 Troubleshooting flow

(1) List of troubles

Models FDC200, 250VSA

Remote control display	Description of trouble	Reference page
None	Operates but does not cool	114
None	Operates but does not heat	115
None	Earth leakage breaker activated	116
None	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)	117
None	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)	118
None	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)	119
None	Power source system error (Power source to indoor unit control PCB)	120
None	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)	121
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)	122
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)	123
WAIT	Communication error at initial operation	124 · 125
None	No display	126
E1	Remote control communication circuit error	127
E5	Communication error during operation	128
E6	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	129
E7	Return air temperature sensor anomaly	130
E8	Heating overload operation	131
E9	Drain trouble	132
E10	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control	133
E11	Address setting error of indoor units	134
E16	Indoor DC fan motor anomaly	135 · 136
E19	Indoor unit operation check, drain pump motor check setting error	137
E20	Indoor DC fan motor rotation speed anomaly	138 · 139
E28	Remote control temperature sensor anomaly	140
E35	Cooling overload operation	141
E36	Discharge pipe temperature error	142
E37	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	143
E38	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	144
E39	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	145
E40	High pressure error (63H1 activated)	146
E41	Power transistor overheat	147
E42	Current cut	148 · 149
E45	Communication error between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB	150
E48	Outdoor fan motor anomaly	151
E49	Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly	152 · 153
E51	Inverter or power transistor anomaly	154
E53	Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly	155
E54	Low pressure sensor anomaly	156
E55	Compressor under dome temperature sensor anomaly (Model FDC250VSA only)	157
E57	Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure	158
E59	Compressor startup failure	159 · 160

(2) Troubleshooting

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Operates but does not cool
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

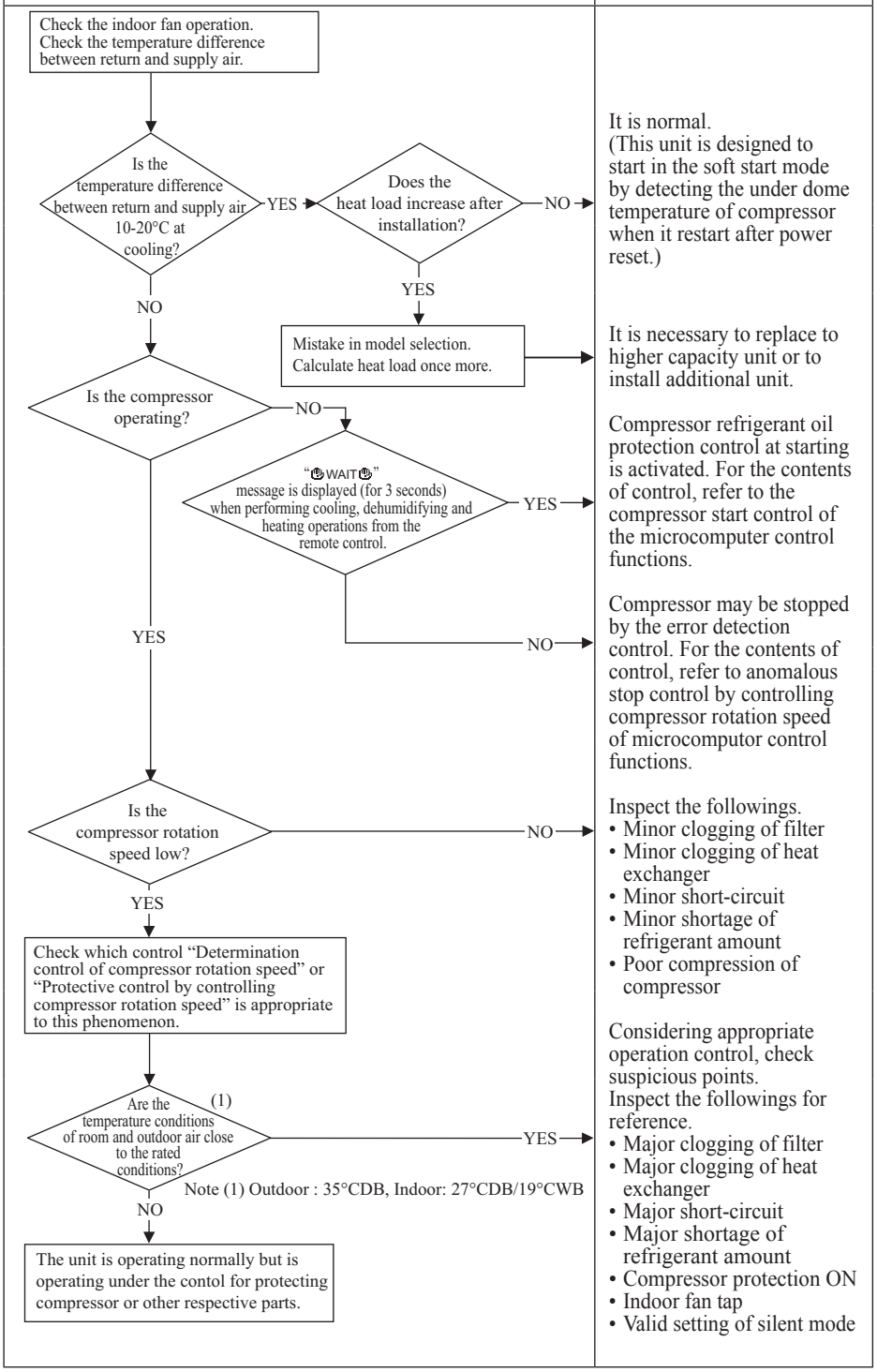
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Operates but does not heat
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

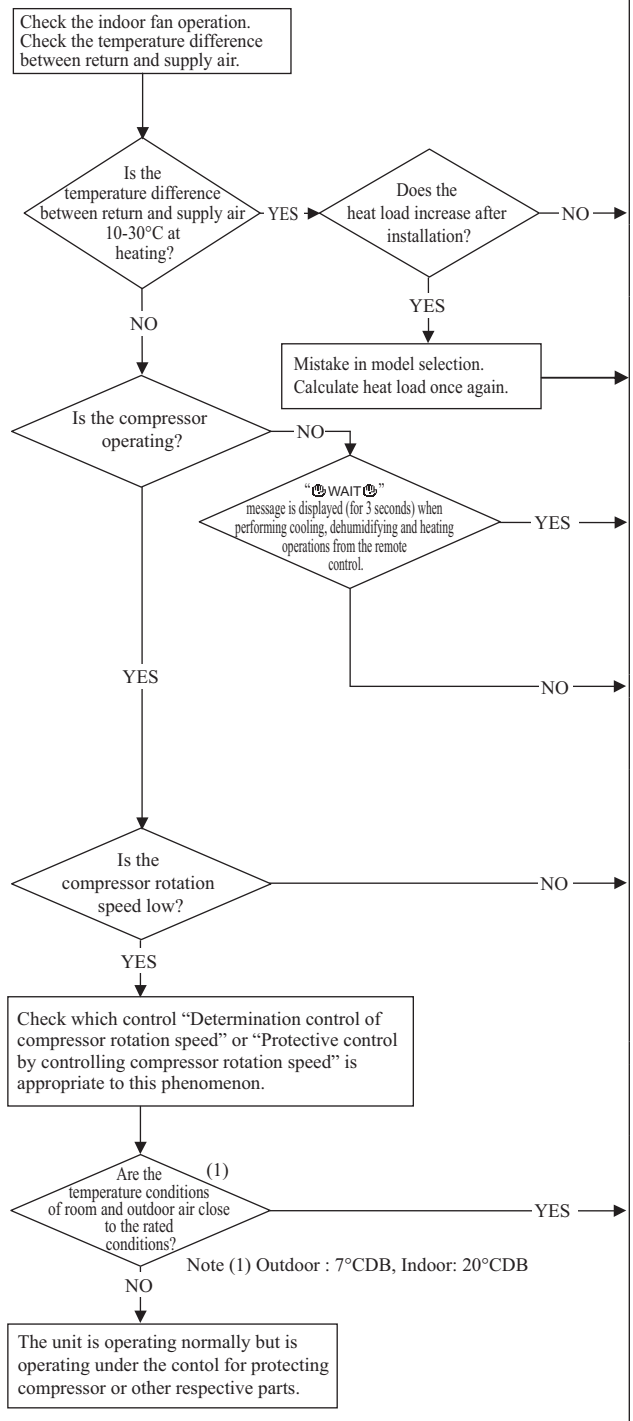
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Faulty 4-way valve operation
- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5.Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Check the indoor fan operation. Check the temperature difference between return and supply air.	
Is the temperature difference between return and supply air 10-30°C at heating? YES → Does the heat load increase after installation? NO	It is normal. (This unit is designed to start in the soft start mode by detecting the under dome temperature of compressor when it restart after power reset.)
Does the heat load increase after installation? YES	It is necessary to replace to higher capacity unit or to install additional unit.
Is the compressor operating? NO → "WAIT" message is displayed (for 3 seconds) when performing cooling, dehumidifying and heating operations from the remote control. YES	Compressor refrigerant oil protection control at starting is activated. For the contents of control, refer to the compressor start control of the microcomputer control functions.
YES / NO	Compressor may be stopped by the error detection control. For the contents of control, refer to anomalous stop control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputor control functions.
Is the compressor rotation speed low? NO	Inspect the followings. • Minor clogging of filter • Minor clogging of heat exchanger • Minor short-circuit • Minor shortage of refrigerant amount • Poor compression of compressor
YES → Check which control "Determination control of compressor rotation speed" or "Protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed" is appropriate to this phenomenon.	
Are the temperature conditions of room and outdoor air close to the rated conditions? (1) YES	Considering appropriate operation control, check suspicious points. Inspect the followings for reference. • Major clogging of filter • Major clogging of heat exchanger • Major short-circuit • Major shortage of refrigerant amount • Compressor protection ON • Indoor fan tap • Valid setting of silent mode
Note (1) Outdoor : 7°CDB, Indoor: 20°CDB	
NO → The unit is operating normally but is operating under the contol for protecting compressor or other respective parts.	

Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF

Content

Earth leakage breaker activated

1.Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

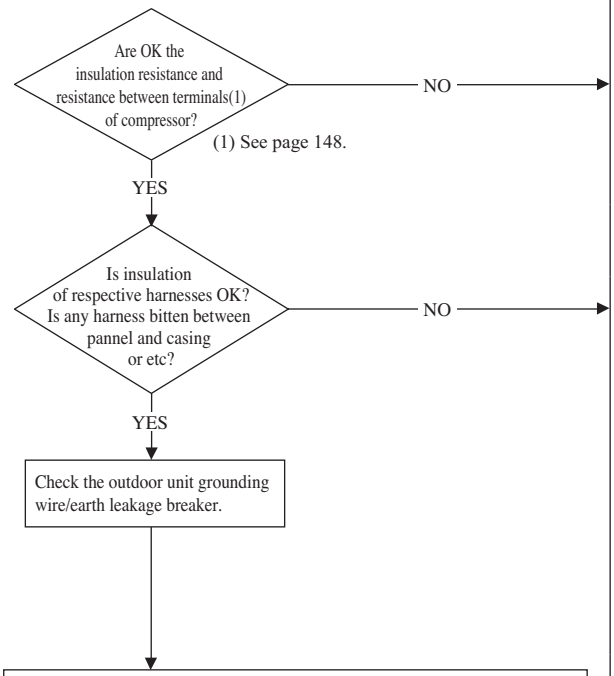
3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

• Defective compressor
• Noise

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure



Check of the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker

① Run an independent grounding wire from the grounding screw of outdoor unit to the grounding terminal on the distribution panel. (Do not connect to another grounding wire.)
② In order to prevent malfunction of the earth leakage breaker itself, confirm that it is conformed to higher harmonic regulation.

* Insulation resistance of compressor
• Immediately after installation or when the unit has been left for long time without power source, the insulation resistance may drop to a few MΩ because of refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
When the earth breaker is activated at lower insulation resistance, check the following points.
① 6 hours after power ON, check if the insulation resistance recovers to normal.
When power ON, crankcase heater heat up compressor and evaporate the refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
② Check if the earth leakage breaker is conformed to higher harmonic regulation or not.
Since the unit is equipped with inverter, it is necessary to use components conformed to higher harmonic regulation in order to prevent malfunction of earth leakage breaker.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

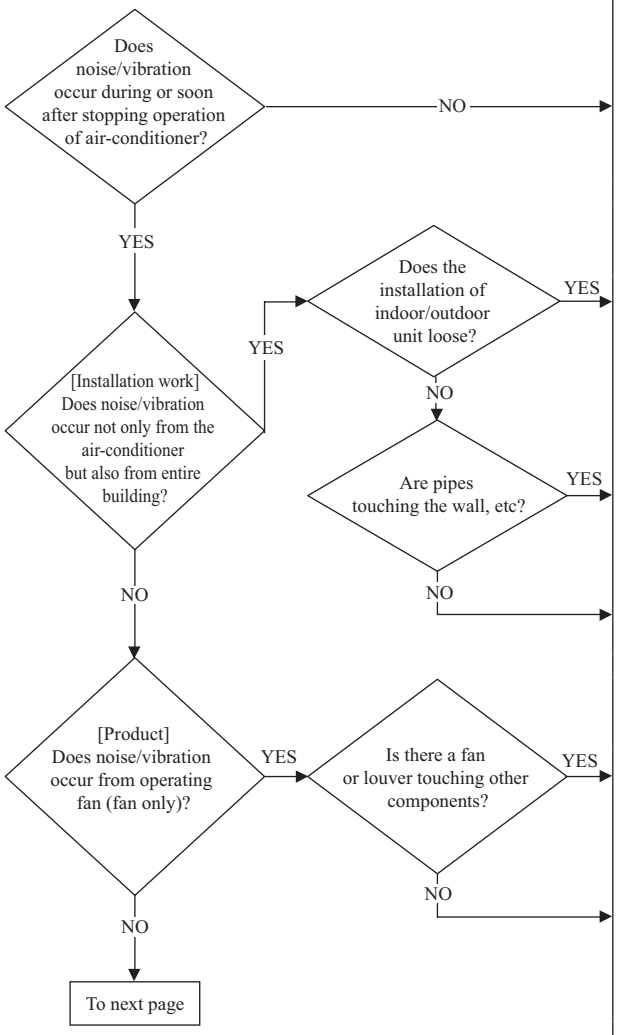
4.Presumable cause

① Improper installation work
- Improper anti-vibration work at installation
- Insufficient strength of mounting face

② Defective product
- Before/after shipping from factory

③ Improper adjustment during commissioning
- Excess/shortage of refrigerant, etc.

5.Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	If excessive noise/vibration persists when sufficient time has elapsed after stopping the unit, it is considered that the air-conditioner is not the source. Check the installed condition carefully, and correct the position or insert rubber cushions or others into the gap, if necessary. Prevent the vibration from transmitting to wall and etc by fixing pipes on the wall or wrapping rubber cushion around the pipe which goes through the hole in the wall or applying other appropriate means. Strength of ceiling wall, floor, etc. may be insufficient. Review the installing position or reinforce it. Check for leaning of installed unit or anomalous mounting of fan, louver or motor and specify the contacting point and correct it. When the heat exchanger or filter is clogged, clean them. In case that the unit is installed at the site where background noise is very low, small noise from indoor unit can be heard, but it is normal. Before installation, check for background noise. If backgound nois is very low, convince client prior to installation.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

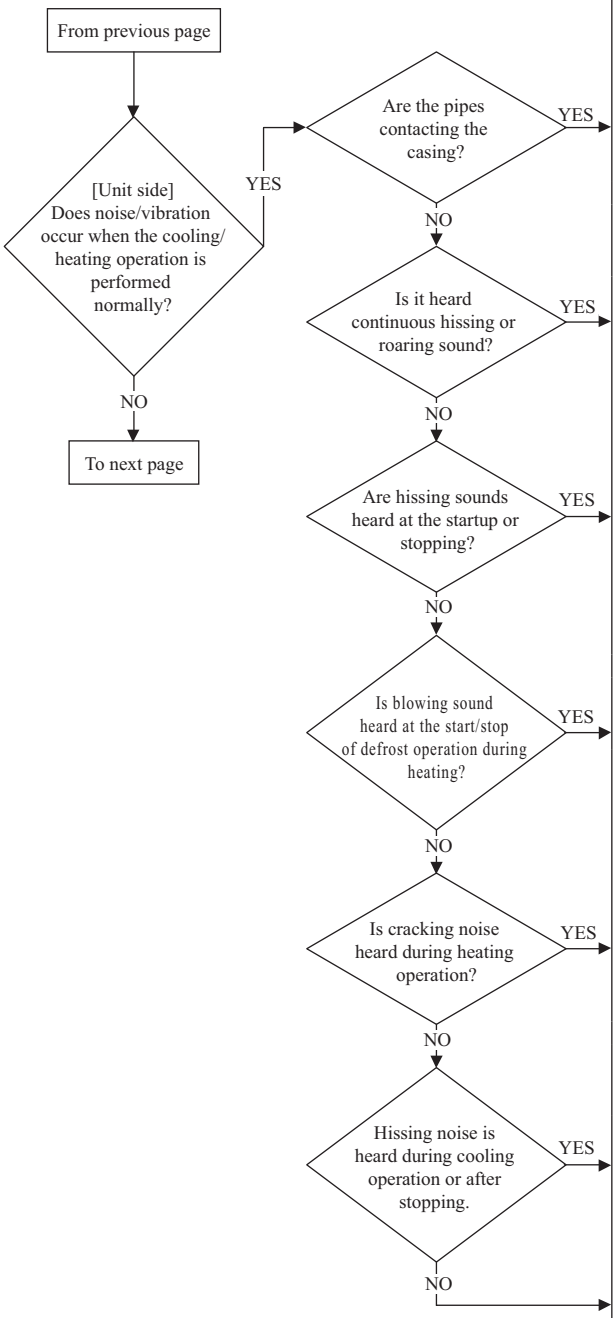
1. Applicable model

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are the pipes contacting the casing? YES	Rearrange the piping to avoid contact with the casing.
Is it heard continuous hissing or roaring sound? YES	It is noise/vibration that is generated when the refrigerant gas or liquid flow through inside of piping of air-conditioner. It is likely to occur particularly during cooling or defrost operation in the heating mode. It is normal.
Are hissing sounds heard at the startup or stopping? YES	The noise/vibration occurs when the refrigerant starts or stops flowing. It is normal.
Is blowing sound heard at the start/stop of defrost operation during heating? YES	When the defrost operation starts or stops during heating, the refrigerant flow is reversed due to switching 4-way valve. This causes a large change in pressure which produces a blowing sound. It may accompany also the hissing sounds as mentioned above. They are normal.
Is cracking noise heard during heating operation? YES	After the start or stop of heating operation or during defrost operation, abrupt changes in temperature cause resin parts to shrink or expand. This is normal.
Hissing noise is heard during cooling operation or after stopping. YES	It is the sound produced by the drain pump that discharges drain from the indoor unit. The pump continues to run for 5 minutes after stopping the cooling operation. This is normal.
NO	Apply the damper sealant at places considered to be the sources such as the pressure reducing mechanism (expansion valve), capillary, etc.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

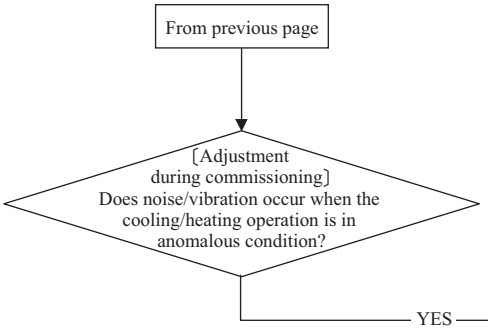
1.Applicable model

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	If insufficient cooling/ heating problem happens due to anomalous operating conditions at cooling/ heating, followings are suspicious. • Overcharge of refrigerant • Insufficient charge of refrigerant • Intrusion of air, nitrogen, etc. In such occasion, it is necessary to recover refrigerant, vacuum-dry and recharge refrigerant. * Since there could be many causes of noise/ vibration, the above do not cover all. In such case, check the conditions when, where, how the noise/vibration occurs according to following check point. • Indoor/outdoor unit • Cooling/heating/fan mode • Startup/stop/during operation • Operating condition (Indoor/outdoor air temperatures, pressure) • Time it occurred • Operation data retained by the remote control such as compressor rotation speed, heat exchanger temperature, EEV opening degree, etc. • Tone (If available, record the noise) • Any other anomalies

Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content: Power source system error (Power source to indoor unit control PCB)

1.Applicable model

All models

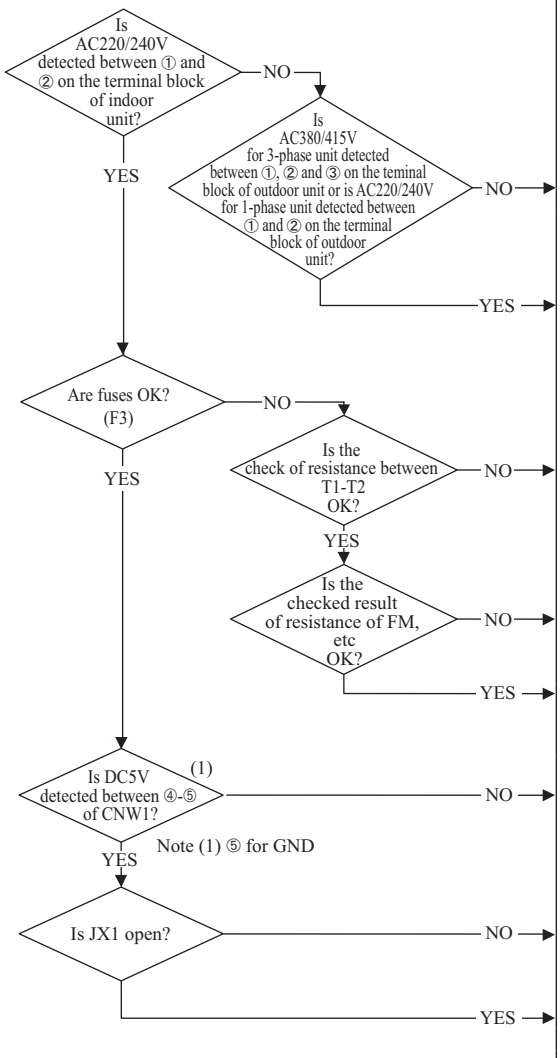
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Misconnection or breakage of connecting wires
- Blown fuse
- Faulty transformer
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB (Noise filter)

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	3-time flash	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

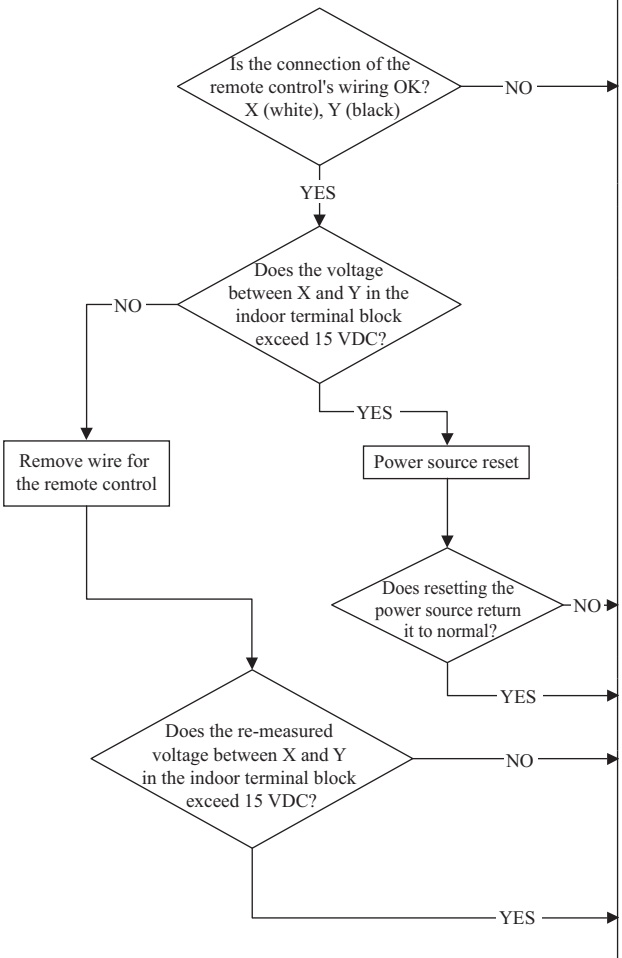
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Remote control wire breakage/short-circuit
- Defective remote control
- Malfunction by noise
- Broken harness
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Communication between indoor unit and remote control is disabled for more than 30 minutes after the power on.

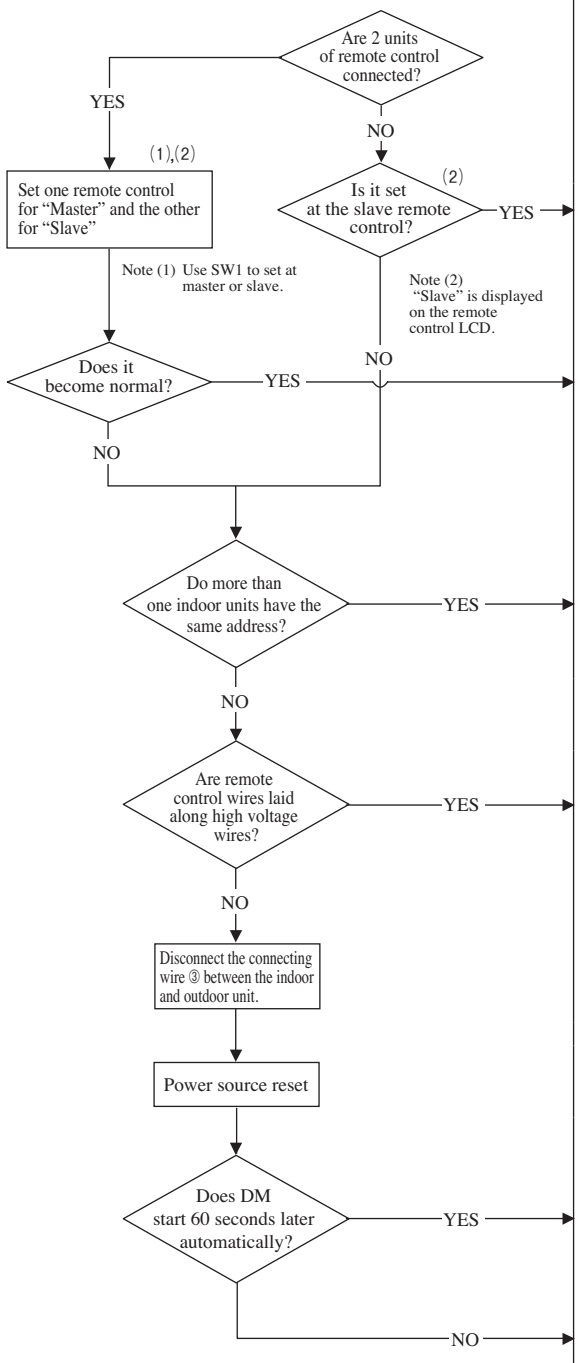
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor unit cannot communicate for more than 30 minutes after the power on with remote control.

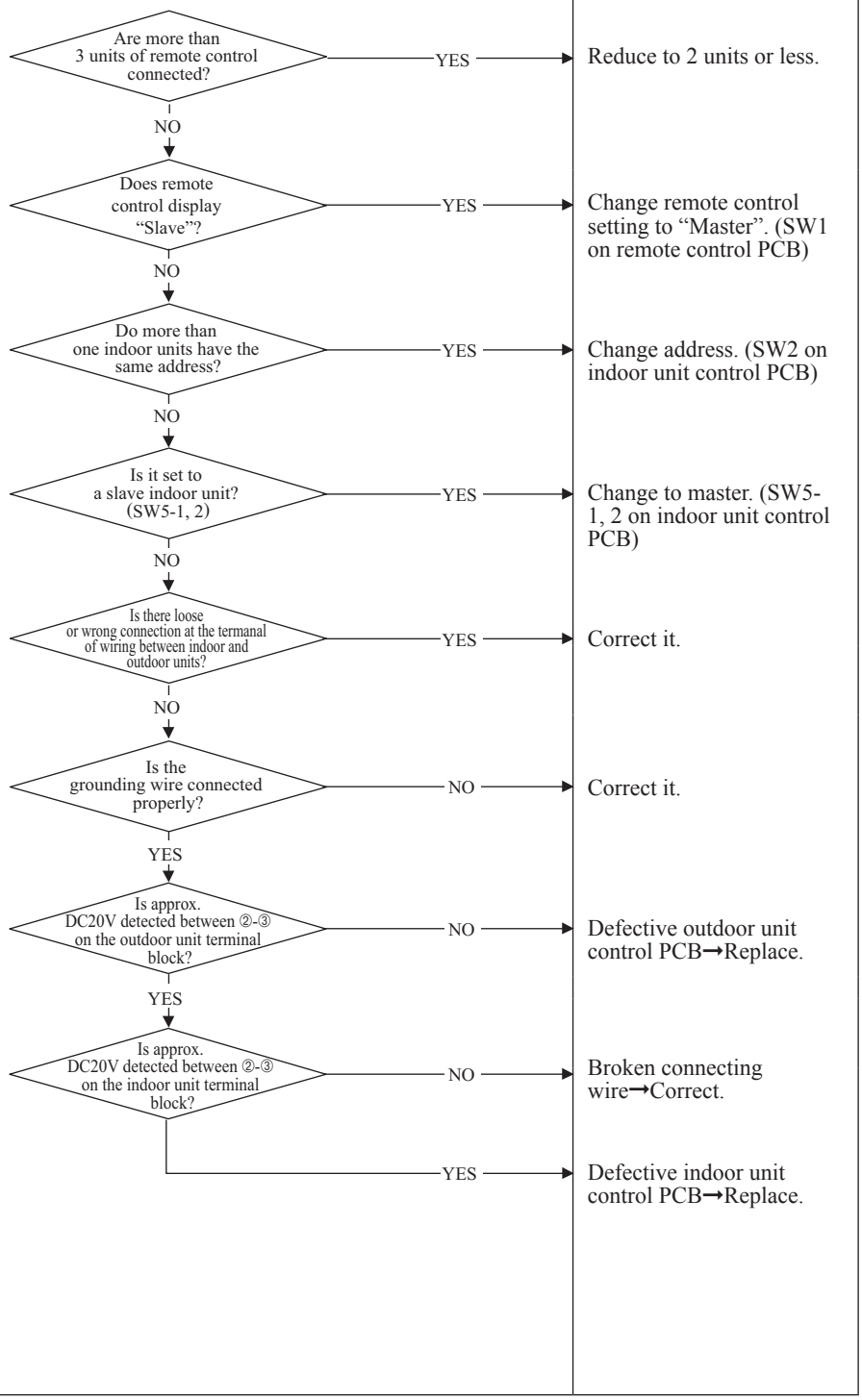
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code

Remote control: WAIT

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

Communication error at initial operation (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

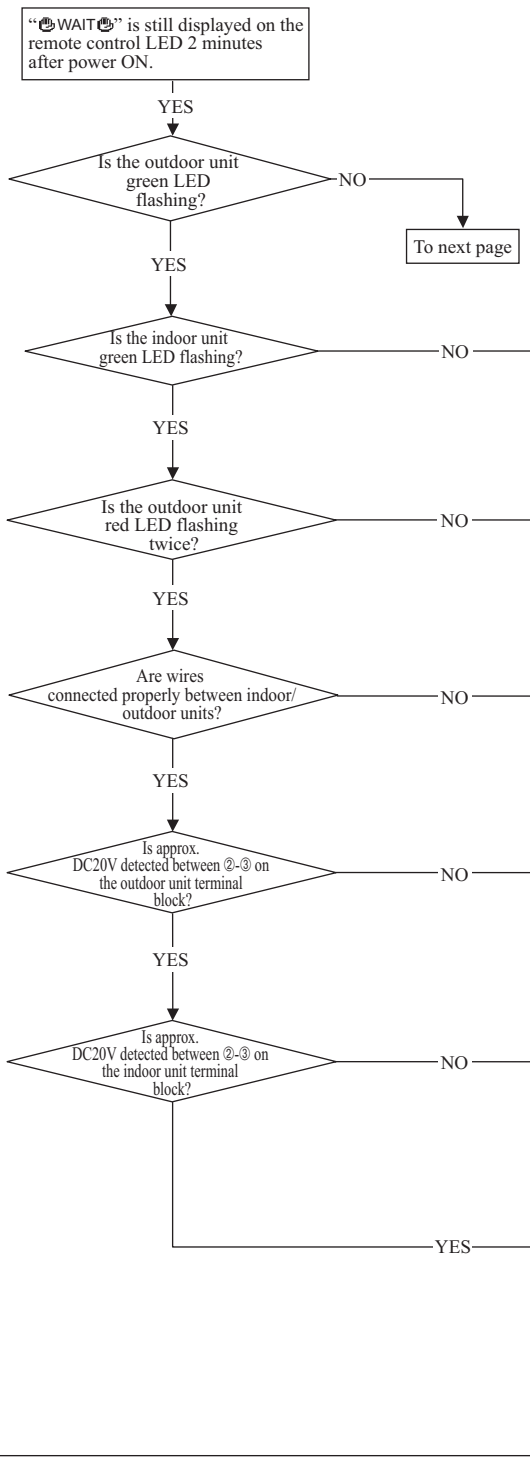
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken connection wires

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: WAIT

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

Communication error at initial operation (2/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

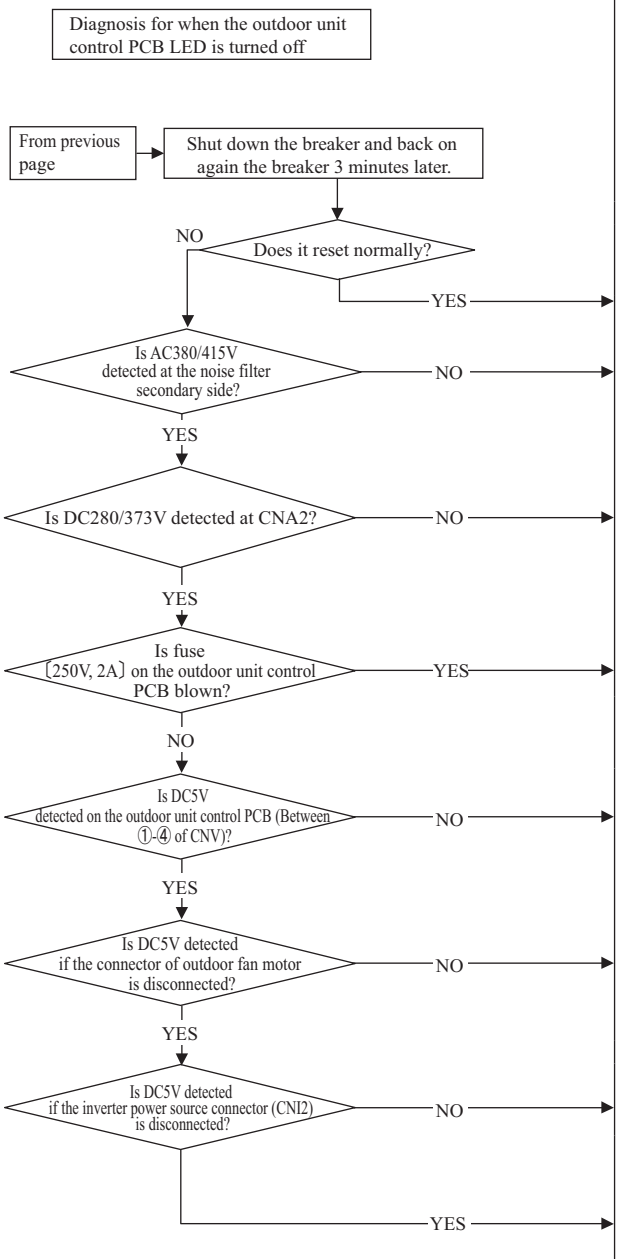
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty noise filter
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Faulty inverter PCB
- Faulty fan motor

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	No display
	Outdoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

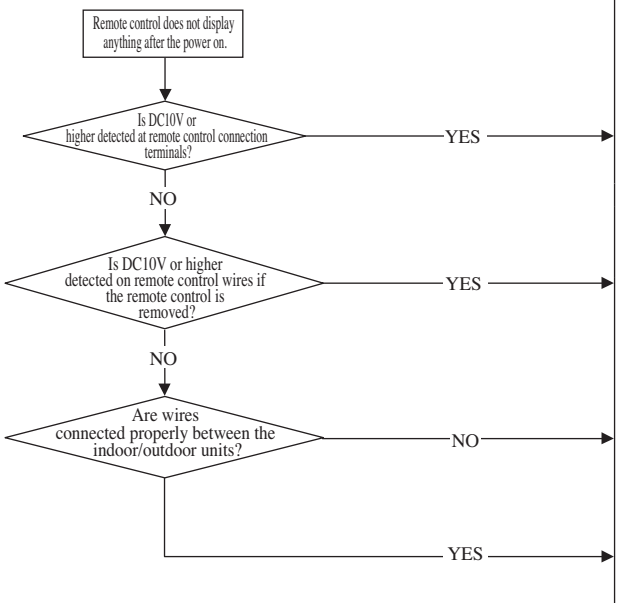
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E1	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control communication circuit error
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between the remote control and the indoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes. (Detectable only with the remote control)

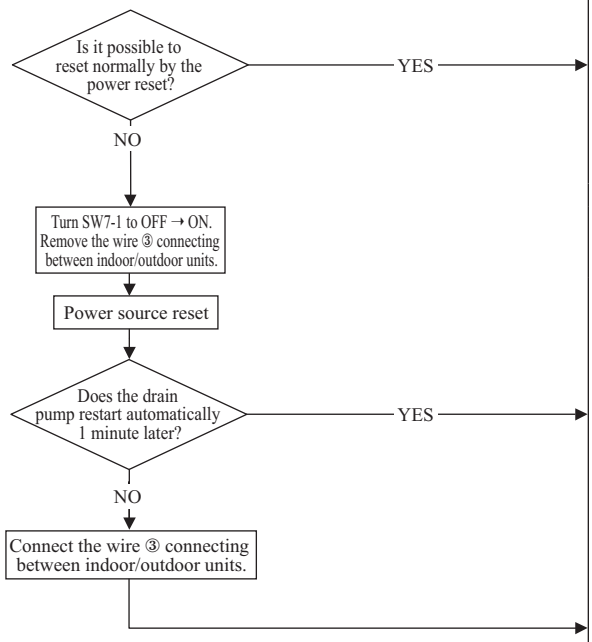
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective communication circuit between remote control-indoor unit
- Noise
- Defective remote control
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If the indoor unit cannot communicate normally with the remote control for 180 seconds, the indoor unit PCB starts to reset automatically.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E5	Indoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Communication error during operation
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	See below	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between indoor and outdoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes.

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above is detected during operation.

4. Presumable cause

- Unit No. setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty remote control wire connection
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
●In case that the outdoor unit red LED flashes 2-time	
Note (1) Inspect faulty connections (disconnection, looseness) on the outdoor unit terminal block.	
Is the connection of signal wires at the outdoor unit side OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES	
Note (2) Check for faulty connection or breakage of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units.	
Is the connection of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES	
Power source reset	
Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	To the diagnosis of "WAIT".
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)
●In case that the outdoor unit red LED stays OFF	
Power source reset	
Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	Defective outdoor unit PCB (Defective network communication circuit) → Replace.
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)

Note: Pressing the pump-down switch cancels communications between indoor and outdoor unit so that "communication error-E5" is displayed on indoor unit and remote control, but it is normal.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E6	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected on the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1, R2 or R3).

3. Condition of error displayed

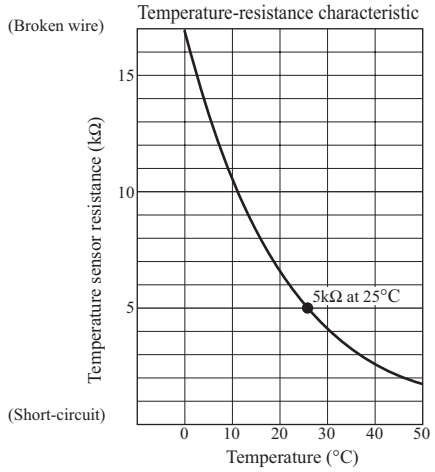
- When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.
- Or if short-circuit is detected for 5 seconds continuously

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector
- Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct it. → Insert connector securely.
YES → Are characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E7	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Return air temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected by indoor return air temperature sensor (Thi-A)

3. Condition of error displayed

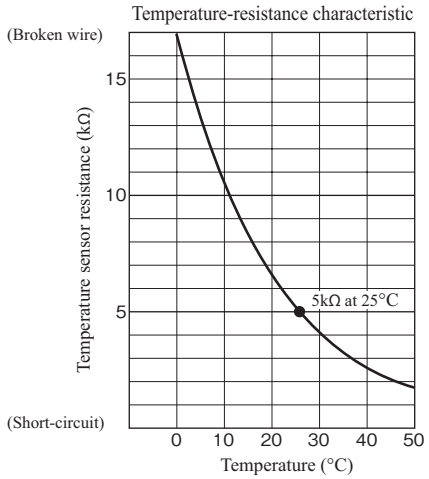
- When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective return air temperature sensor connector
- Defective return air temperature sensor
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of return air temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct it. → Connect connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of return air temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective return air temperature sensor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace. (Defective return air temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E8	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Heating overload operation
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1, R2, R3)

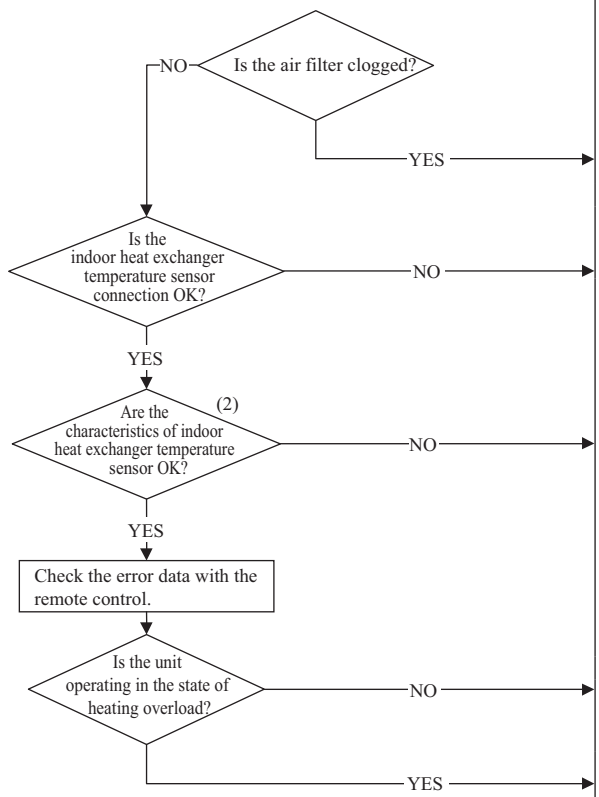
3.Condition of error displayed

When it is detected 5 times within 60 minutes from initial detection or when the overload condition is detected for 6 minutes continuously

4.Presumable cause

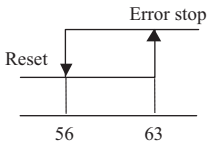
- Clogged air filter
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Anomalous refrigerant system

5.Troubleshooting



Note (1) Judge if it is in the state of overload or not as follows.
- Is there any short-circuit of air?
- Isn't there any fouling or clogging on the indoor heat exchanger?
- Is the outdoor fan control normal?
- Isn't the room and outdoor air temperature too high?

Note (2) For characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, see the error display E6.



Note: During heating operation; After starting compressor, compressor rotation speed is decreased by detecting indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) in order to control high pressure.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E9	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Drain trouble
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Float switch is activated

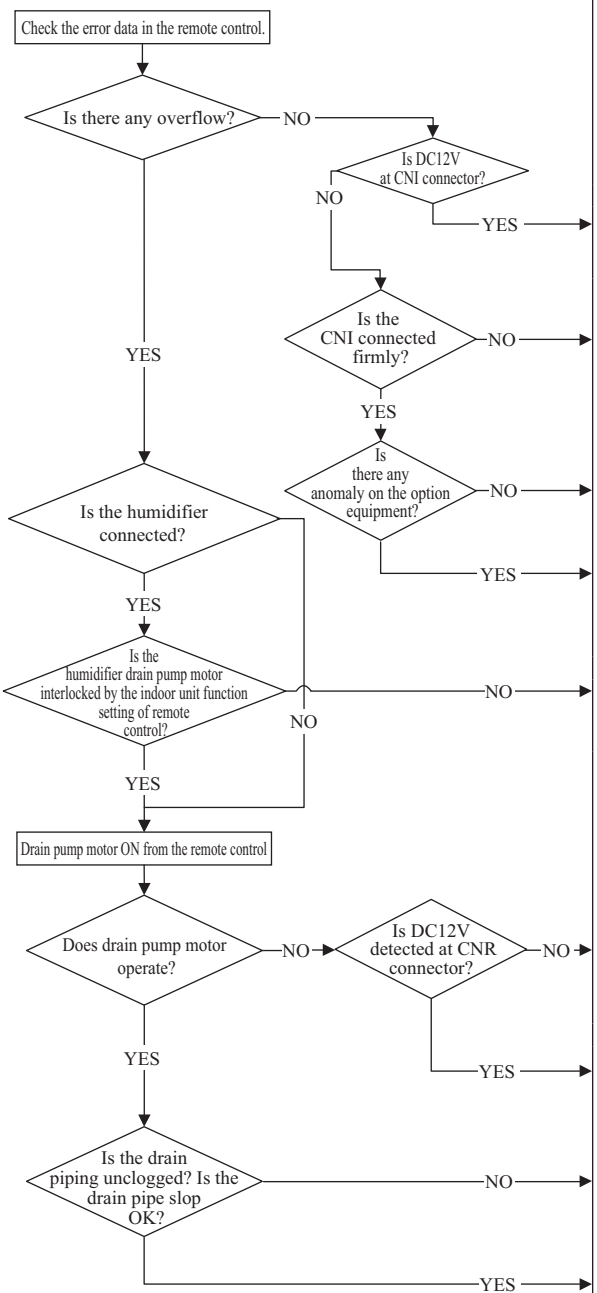
3. Condition of error displayed

If the float switch OPEN is detected for 3 seconds continuously or if float switch connector or wire is disconnected

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Float switch setting error
- Humidifier drain pump motor interlock setting error
- Option equipment setting error
- Drain piping error
- Defective drain pump motor
- Disconnection of drain pump motor wiring

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When this error occurred at power ON, disconnection of wire or connector of the float switch is suspected. Check and correct it (or replace it, if necessary).

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E10	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it detects more than 17 of indoor units connected to one remote contorl

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Excessive number of indoor units connected
- Defective remote control

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are more than 17 indoor units connected to one remote control? → NO	Defective remote control → Replace.
Are more than 17 indoor units connected to one remote control? → YES	Reduce to 16 or less units.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E11	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Address setting error of indoor units
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

IU address has been set using the "Master IU address set" function of remote control.

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

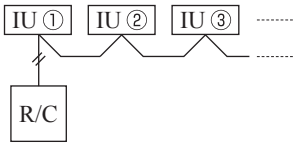
4. Presumable cause

Mistake of address setting method
(Address setting from remote control can't be done)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
E11 occurs ↓ Is "Master IU address set" function of remote control used? YES →	Change of address setting method Set the address by DIP switch SW2 on indoor unit control PCB.

In case the wiring is below and "Mastar IU address set" is used, E11 is appeared.



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E16	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor DC fan motor anomaly (1/2)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

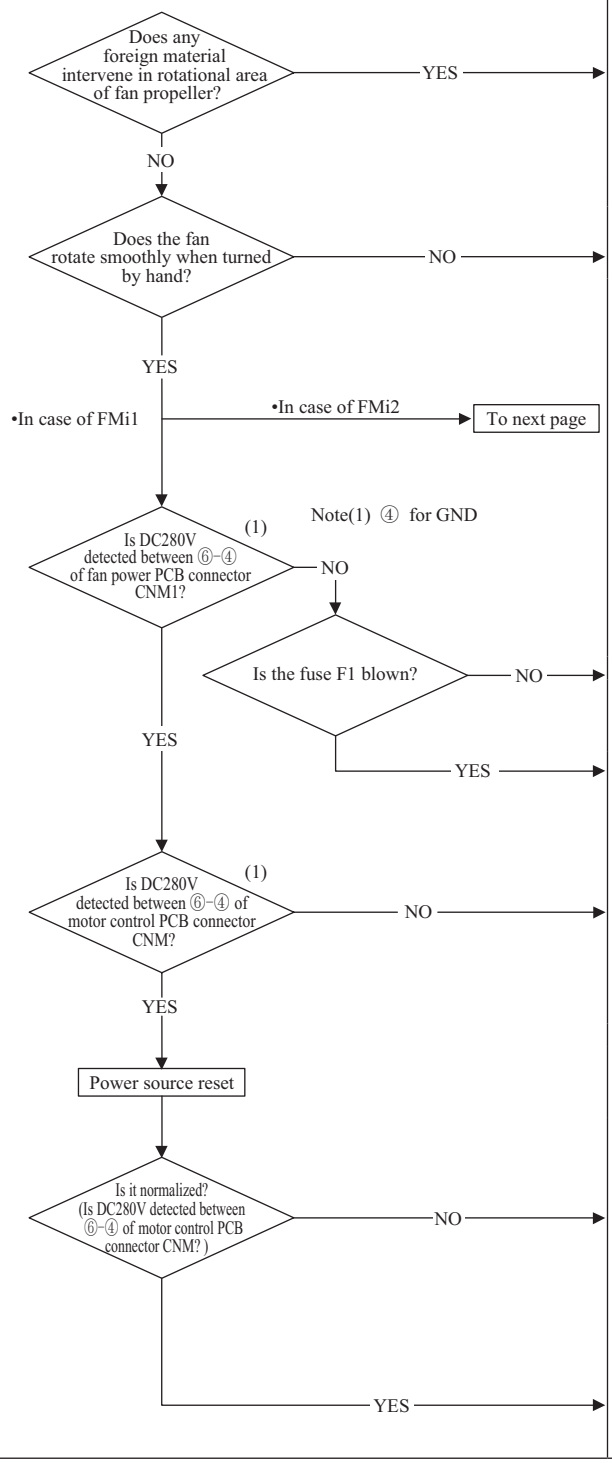
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 200min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop. After 2-seconds, it starts again automatically, but if this error occurs 4 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E16	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor DC fan motor anomaly (2/2)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

DC fan motor only

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

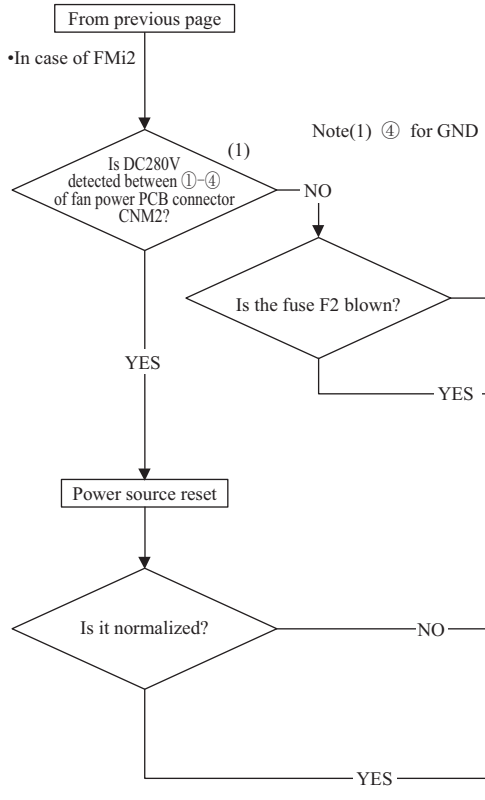
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 200min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop. After 2-seconds, it starts again automatically, but if this error occurs 4 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E19	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor unit operation check, drain pump motor check setting error
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

After indoor operation check, when the communication between indoor and outdoor unit is established and SW7-1 is still kept ON.

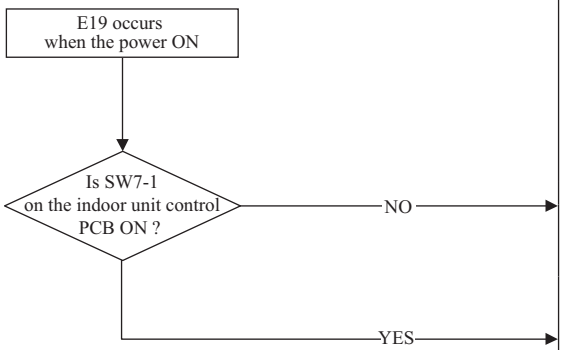
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Mistake in SW7-1 setting
(Due to forgetting to turn OFF SW7-1 after indoor operation check)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective SW7)→Replace. Turn SW7-1 on the indoor unit control PCB OFF and reset the power.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E20	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor DC fan motor rotation speed anomaly (1/2)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

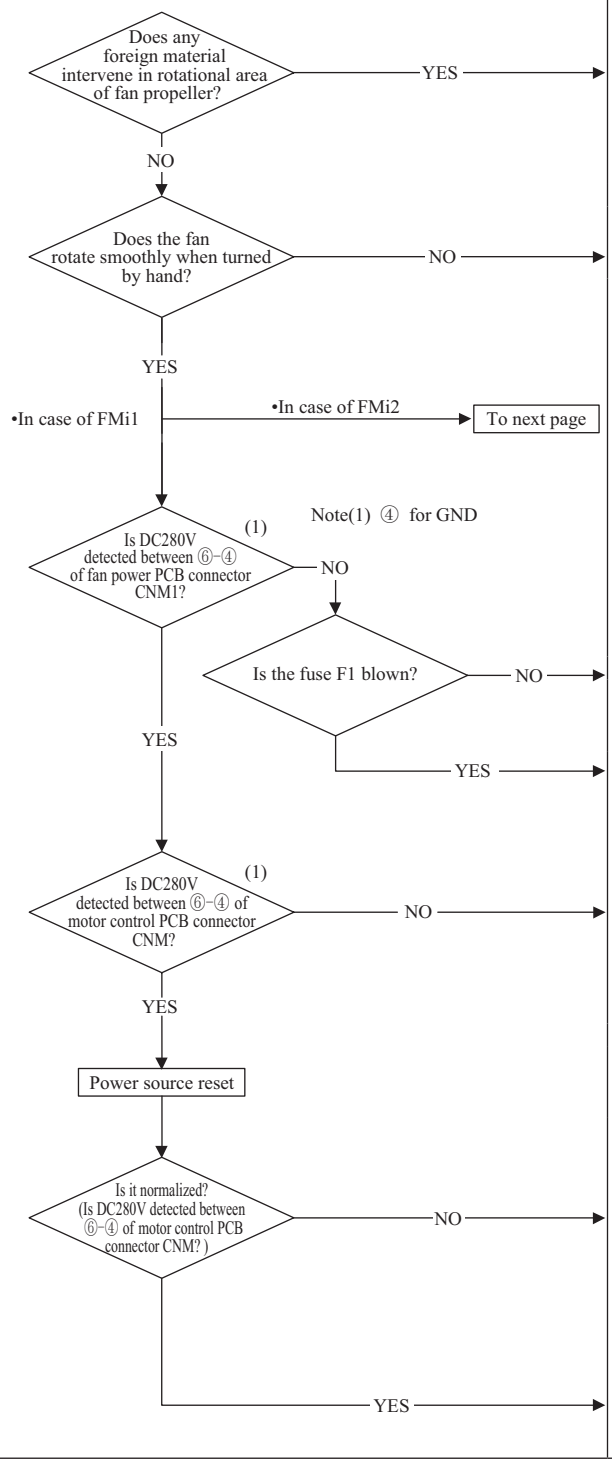
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the actual fan rotation speed does not reach to the speed of [required speed -500 min^{-1}] after 2 minutes have been elapsed since the fan motor rotation speed command was output, the unit stops by detecting indoor fan motor anomaly.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E20	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor DC fan motor rotation speed anomaly (2/2)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

DC fan motor only

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

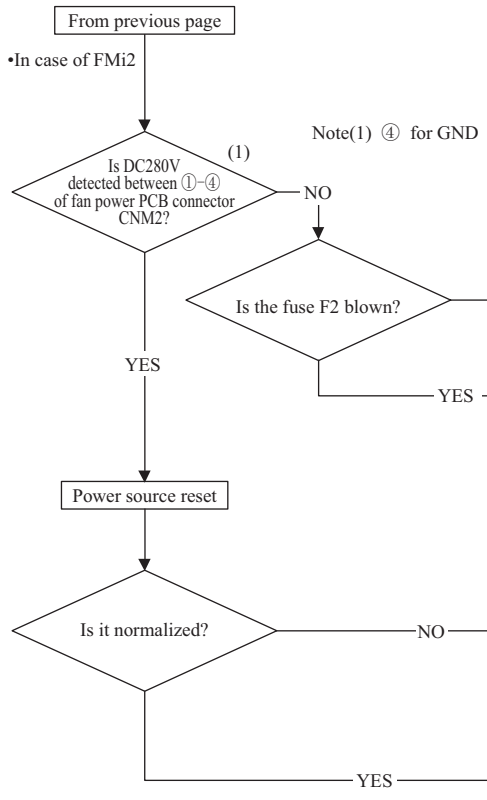
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the actual fan rotation speed does not reach to the speed of [required speed -500 min^{-1}] after 2 minutes have been elapsed since the fan motor rotation speed command was output, the unit stops by detecting indoor fan motor anomaly.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E28	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) of remote control temperature sensor (Thc)

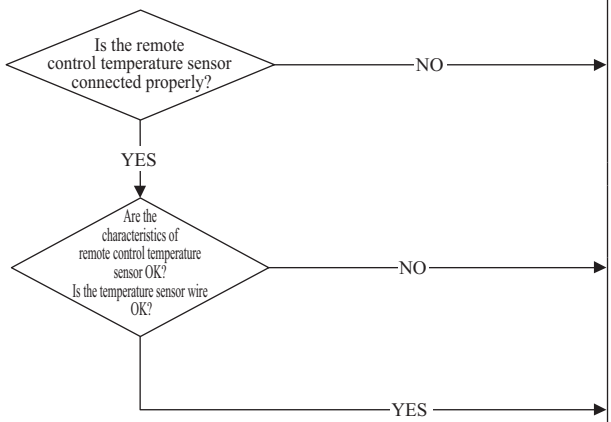
3. Condition of error displayed

When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty connection of remote control temperature sensor
- Defective remote control temperature sensor
- Defective remote control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Temperature-resistance characteristics of remote control temperature sensor (Thc)

Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)	Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)
0	65	30	16
1	62	32	15
2	59	34	14
4	53	36	13
6	48	38	12
8	44	40	11
10	40	42	9.9
12	36	44	9.2
14	33	46	8.5
16	30	48	7.8
18	27	50	7.3
20	25	52	6.7
22	23	54	6.3
24	21	56	5.8
26	19	58	5.4
28	18	60	5.0

Note: After 10 seconds has passed since remote control temperature sensor was switched from invalid to valid, E28 will not be displayed even if the temperature sensor harness is disconnected. At same time the temperature sensor, which is effective, is switched from remote control temperature sensor to indoor return air temperature sensor. Even though the remote control temperature sensor is set to be effective, the return air temperature displayed on remote control for checking still shows the value detected by indoor return air temperature sensor, not by remote control temperature sensor.

Error code

Remote control: E35

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Cooling overload operation

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to cooling high pressure protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

3. Condition of error displayed

When outdoor heat exchanger temperature anomaly is detected 5 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control (or main) PCB
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Excessive refrigerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
* For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, refer to E37.	
Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor normal? — NO	Replace outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor.
YES	
Is the unit operating in the state of cooling overload? — YES	Check unit side. • Isn't the air circulation of outdoor unit short-circuited? • Are installation spaces adequate? • Isn't there any fouling or clogging on heat exchanger?
NO	
Is the high pressure control normal? — NO	Control operation check *
YES	
Is the temperature (measured actually) at detection of error correct? — NO	Defective outdoor unit control (or main) PCB→Replace.
YES	Excessive refrigerant amount : Recharge refrigerant by weighing proper amount on a scale.

* For the contents of control, refer to cooling high pressure protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E36	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Discharge pipe temperature error
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to compressor overheat protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

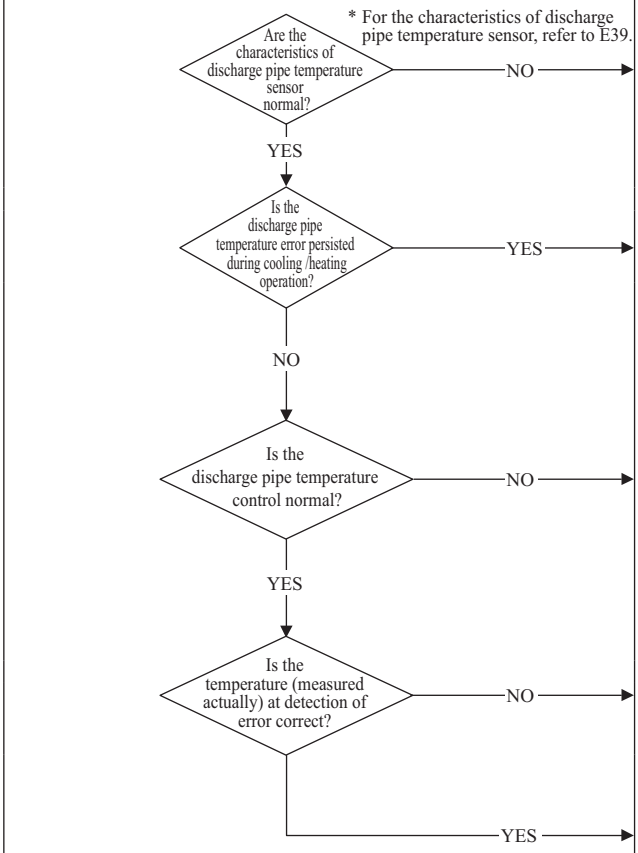
3. Condition of error displayed

When discharge pipe temperature anomaly is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor
- Clogged filter
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger

5. Troubleshooting



* For the contents of control, refer to compressor overheat protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E37	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content: **Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly**

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

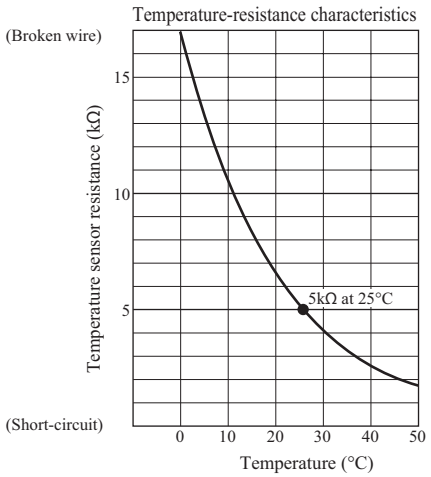
- When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.
- When -50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E38	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on outdoor air temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

- When the temperature sensor detects -45°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.
- When -45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.

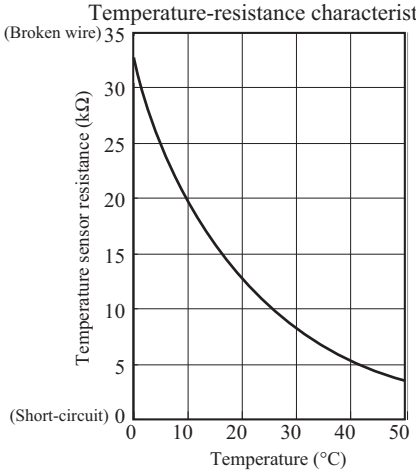
4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor air temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Is the characteristics of the outdoor air temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of outdoor air temperature sensor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective outdoor air temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor air temperature sensor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code

Remote control: E39

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the discharge pipe temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

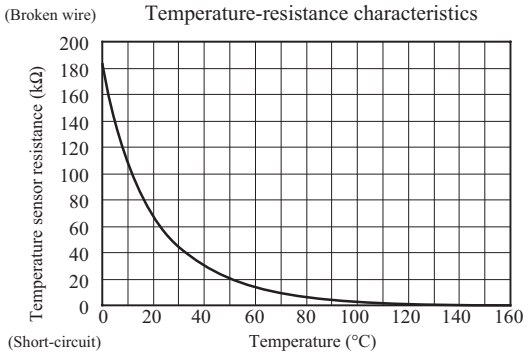
When the temperature sensor detects -10°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the discharge pipe temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E40	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

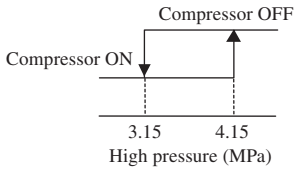
High pressure error (63H1 activated)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the high pressure switch 63H1 is activated.



3. Condition of error displayed

If 63H1 turns OFF (opened), the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts. If this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes or continues for 60 minutes continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Short-circuit of air flow, disturbance of air flow and clogging filter at outdoor heat exchanger/Breakdown of fan motor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective 63H1 connector
- Defective electronic expansion valve connector
- Closed service valve
- Mixing of non-condensing gas (nitrogen, etc.)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
If the power source breaker is turned OFF and ON too quickly, E40 may be displayed. (This is normal.)	
Is the service valve fully opened? — NO	Open the service valve.
YES	
Has 63H1 activated? — NO	
On operation of 63H1 — YES	
1. During cooling ・ Is the outdoor fan motor running? ・ Isn't any short-circuit of air on the outdoor unit? ・ Are sufficient return air/supply air space secured? 2. During heating ・ Isn't the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor disconnected from the sensor casing? ・ Isn't the filter clogged? * Under the condition of overcharging refrigerant, 63H1 may activate due to delay of starting the preventive control by compressor speed control, because detected heat exhanger temperature, which conducts compressor speed control, becomes lower than normal condition due to excess sub-cooling degree.	
Is 63H1 connector connected properly? — NO	Correct 63H1 connector.
YES	
Is the electronic expansion valve connector connection OK? — NO	Correct electronic expansion valve connector.
If any anomaly exists on the electronic expansion valve connector connection, the power source must be reset.	
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective 63H1 input circuit)

Note: In the protective control range for compressor startup (initial startup after power ON), even if 63H1 is activated only once (63H1 turns OFF), immediately the error is displayed.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E41	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		2-time flash or 8-time flash(1)	

Content

Power transistor overheat

Note (1) 8-time flash FDC250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anomalously high temperature is detected by power transistor

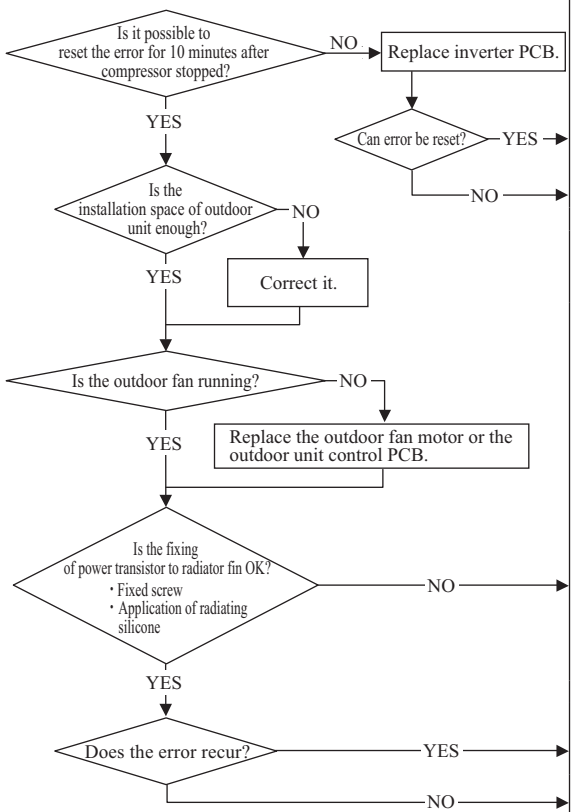
3. Condition of error displayed

Anomalously high temperature of power transistor is detected 5 times within 60 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Improperly fixing of power transistor to radiator fin
- Inadequate installation space of outdoor unit
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Power transistor module anomaly

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E42	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		1-time flash or 9-time flash(1)	

Content

Current cut (1/2)

Note (1) 9-time flash is for the FDC250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

3. Condition of error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minutes after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- The service valves closed
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the power source voltage OK? — NO	Check power source.
YES → Are the service valves opened? — NO	Open the service valves.
YES → Is the high pressure during operation OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refregerant circuit. *In case of transitional increase of high pressure and/or test run, several times restarting may recover it, because liquid refrigerant (migrated) in the compresser is discharged from the compressor.
YES → Is the checked result of insulation resistance and resistance between terminals (1) of compressor motor OK? — NO	Replace compressor.
(1) 1.172Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200VSA) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC250VSA)	
YES → To next page.	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E42	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		1-time flash or 9-time flash(1)	

Content

Current cut (2/2)

Note (1) 9-time flash is for the FDC250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

3. Condition of error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minutes after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective inverter PCB
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
From previous page	
Is the checked result of power transistor module OK? — NO	Defective inverter PCB→Replace. *Replace also the power transistor module. (FDC250 only)
YES	
• Is the space for installation of indoor and/or outdoor unit enough? • Is there any short-circuit of air on indoor and/or outdoor unit? • At cooling, does the outdoor fan motor run? Are the service valves fully opened? Is the filter clogged? • At heating, does the indoor fan motor run? Are the service valves fully opened? Is the filter clogged? • Is there any liquid flooding? Is the superheat within normal range? Is the low pressure sensor and suction pipe temperature sensor normal? • Is there any anoumalous sound on the compressor?	
YES	
After resetting power for several times does it become normal? — NO	Defective inverter PCB→Replace. *Replace also the power transistor module. (FDC250 only)
YES	
Temporary noise may cause of anomaly. If noise source can be found, take countermeasure.	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E45	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Communication error between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the communication between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB is not established

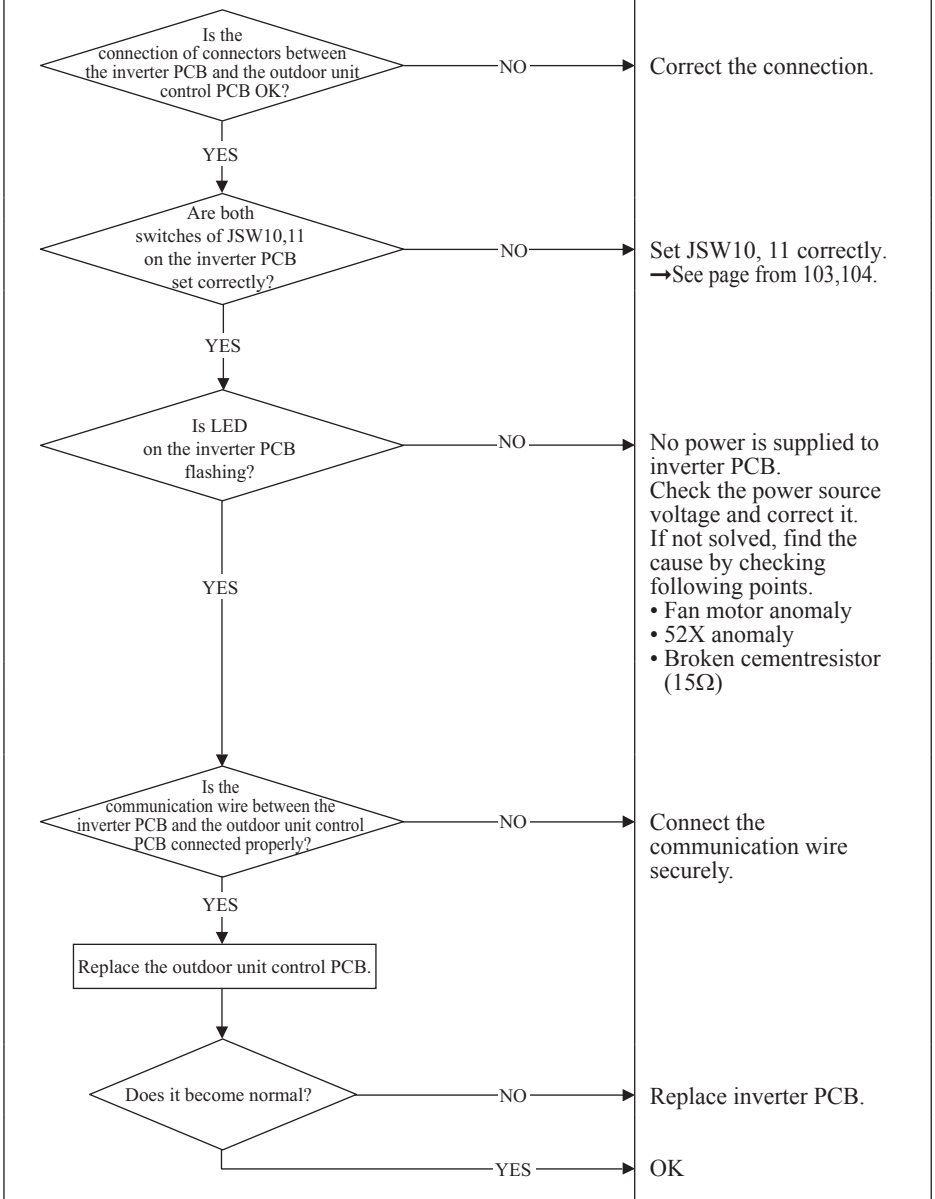
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous connection of connector between the outdoor unit control PCB and inverter PCB
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E48	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Outdoor fan motor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of outdoor fan motor

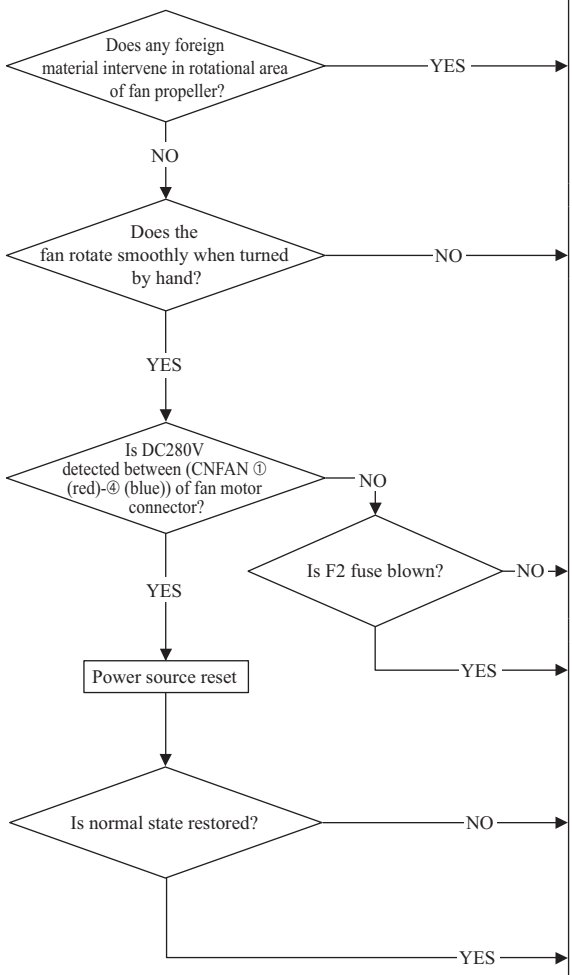
3. Condition of error displayed

When actual rotation speed of outdoor fan motor (FMo1, 2) drops to 100min^{-1} or lower for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the outdoor fan motor stop. After 3-minute delay, it starts again automatically, but if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on outdoor unit control PCB
- Blow fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When E48 error occurs, in almost cases F2 fuse (4A) on the outdoor unit control PCB is blown. There are a lot of cases that fuse is blown and E48 occurs due to defective fan motor. And even though only the outdoor unit control PCB (or fuse) is replaced,, another trouble (*1) could occur. Therefore when fuse is blown, check whether the fan motor is OK or not.
After confirming the fan motor normal, check by power ON. (Don't power ON without confirming the fan motor normal.)
*1 The error which does not seem to relate E48 may occur like as "WAIT", Stay OFF of LED on outdoor unit control PCB, inverter communication error (E45) and etc.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E49	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by low pressure drop and suction superheat

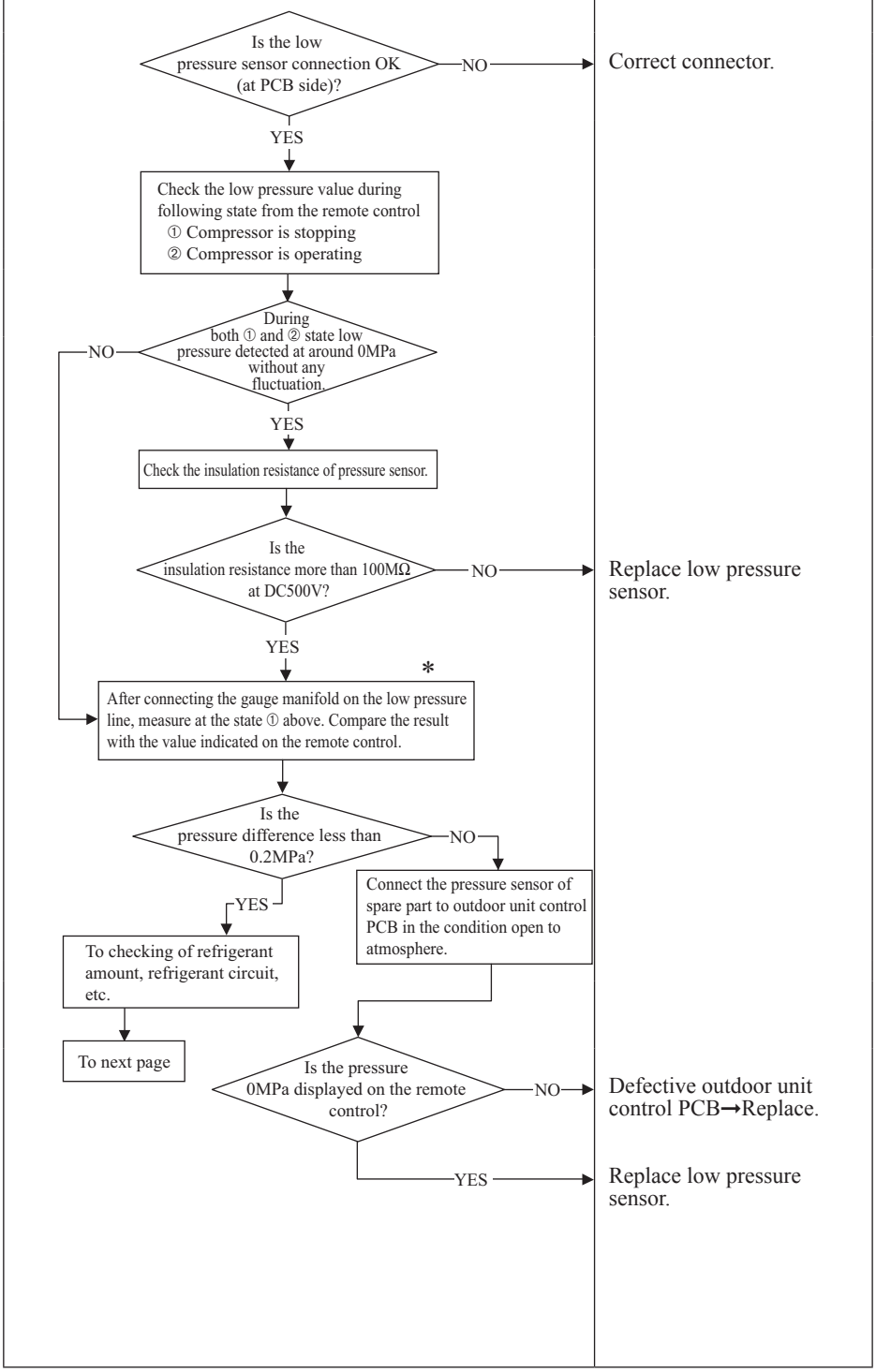
3. Condition of error displayed

① When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously, compressor stops and it restarts automatically after 3-minute delay. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
② 10 minutes after the compressor starts, if the low pressure sensor detects 0.15MPa or lower for 60 seconds continuously and compressor suction superheat is detected 30degC or higher for 60 seconds continuously. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
③ If low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 5 minutes continuously (Including the compressor stop status)

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective low pressure sensor connector
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connector
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor

5. Troubleshooting



Note: * Connect the gauge manifold to the service valve check joint during cooling, or connect it to the check joint at internal piping of outdoor unit during heating.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E49	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (2/2)

1. Applicable model

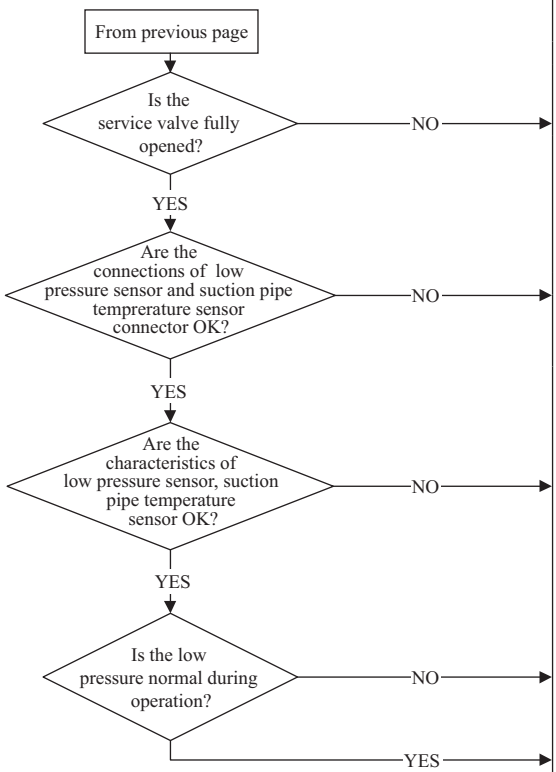
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control:E51	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Inverter or power transistor anomaly
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		2-time flash or 8-time flash(1)		

Note (1) 8-time flash FDC250 model only.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When power transistor anomaly is detected for 15 minutes continuously

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Power transistor anomaly

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Replace inverter PCB. → Did it return? → YES	OK
Did it return? → NO	Replace power transistor. (FDC250 model)

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E53	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the suction pipe temperature sensor detects anomalously low temperature

3. Condition of error displayed

If the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

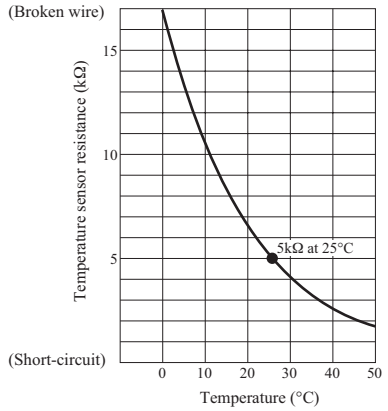
4. Presumable cause

- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connection
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of suction pipe temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct connection of suction pipe temperature sensor connector.
YES → For the characteristics of suction pipe temperature sensor, see the following graph.	
Are the characteristics of suction pipe temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective suction pipe temperature sensor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective suction pipe temperature sensor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E54	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Low pressure sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anomalous voltage (pressure) is detected

3. Condition of error displayed

If the pressure sensor detects DC0V or lower and DC4.0V or higher for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly occurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective low pressure sensor connection
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Improper amount of refrigerant
- Anomalous refrigeration circuit

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are the connection of low pressure sensor connectors (at sensor side and PCB side) OK? — NO	Correct low pressure sensor connector connection.
YES → Are the pressure (actual measurement) matched with the value indicated on the remote control? — YES	Is refrigerant amount charged properly?. Is there any anomaly on the refrigeration circuit?.
NO → Replace the low pressure sensor. → Is normal condition restored? — NO	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective low pressure sensor input circuit)
YES	OK

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control:E55	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keep flashing	

Content

Compressor under dome temperature sensor anomaly (Model FDC250VSA only)

1. Applicable model

Model FDC250VSA

2. Error detection method

When anoumalous low temperature (resistance) is detected by the compressor under dome temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

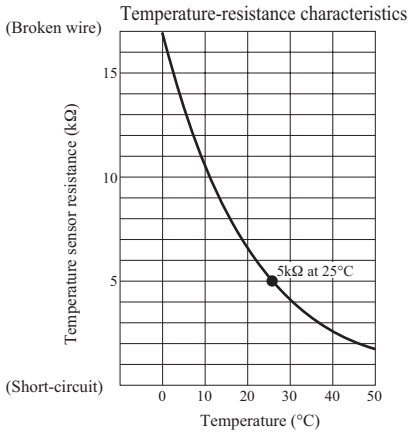
If the temperature sensor detcts -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective under dome temperature sensor connection
- Defective under dome temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of under dome temperature sensor connector OK? → NO	Correct connection of under dome temperature sensor connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of under dome temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective under dome temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Replace outdoor unit control PCB. (Defective under dome temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E57	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

- Judge insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature differnce between indoor heat exchanger (Thi-R) and indoor return air (Thi-A).
- It detects at initial startup in cooling or dehumidifying mode after power ON.

3. Condition of error displayed

Anomalous stop at initial detection

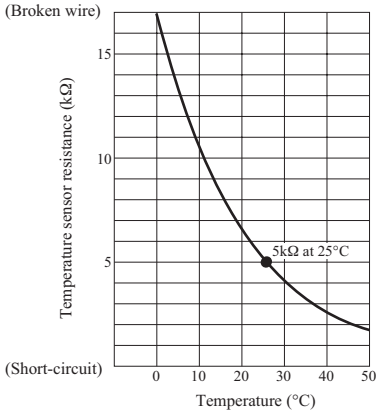
4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Defective indoor return air temperature sensor
- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Insufficient refrigerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the service valve fully opened? NO	Open fully.
YES → Are the connections of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature sensor connectors OK? NO	Correct indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor connector connections.
YES → For the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger,return air temperature sensor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature sensor OK? NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor →Replace.
YES → Is the low pressure during operation normal? NO	Charge refrigerant.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor input circuits)

Indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor
Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note: Insufficient refrigerant amount preventive control makes compressor stopped, if it judges insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature difference between indoor heat exchanger (Thi-R) and return air temperature (Thi-A) for 5 minutes after compressor ON in cooling or dehumidifying mode and for 9 minutes after compressor ON in heating mode. [in cooling mode: (Thi-A)-(Thi-R)<4degC, in heating mode: (Thi-R)-(Thi-A)<4degC]

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E59	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	5-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		4-time flash	

Content

Compressor startup failure (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it fails to change over to the operation for rotor position detection of compressor motor

3. Condition of error displayed

If the compressor fails to startup for 20 times (10 patterns x2 times) continuously

4. Presumable cause

- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous power source voltage
- Insufficient or excessive refrigerant amount
- Faulty component for refrigerant circuit
- Compressor anomaly (Motor or bearing)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
In case that the compressor does not start at all and no sound or vibration exists	
Is power source voltage OK? — NO	Check the power source voltage and correct it.
YES	
Is the pressure equalized at starting OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit.
YES	
Is the insulation resistance and resistance between terminals(1) of compressor OK? — NO (1) 1.172Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200VSA) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC250VSA)	Replace compressor.
YES	
To next page	

Note: Insulation resistance
- The unit is left for long period without power source or soon after installation, insulation resistance may decrease to several MΩ or lower due to the liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor. If the electric leakage breaker is activated due to low insulation resistance, check followings.
  ① Check whether the insulation resistance can recover or not, after 6 hours has passed since power ON.
  (By energize the crankcase heater, liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor can be evaporated.)
  ② Check whether the electric leakage breaker conforms to high-harmonic specifications.
  (As INV PAC units has inverter, in order to prevent from improper operation, be sure to use the breaker of high-harmonic type.)

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E59	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	5-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		4-time flash	

Content

Compressor startup failure (2/2)

1. Applicable model

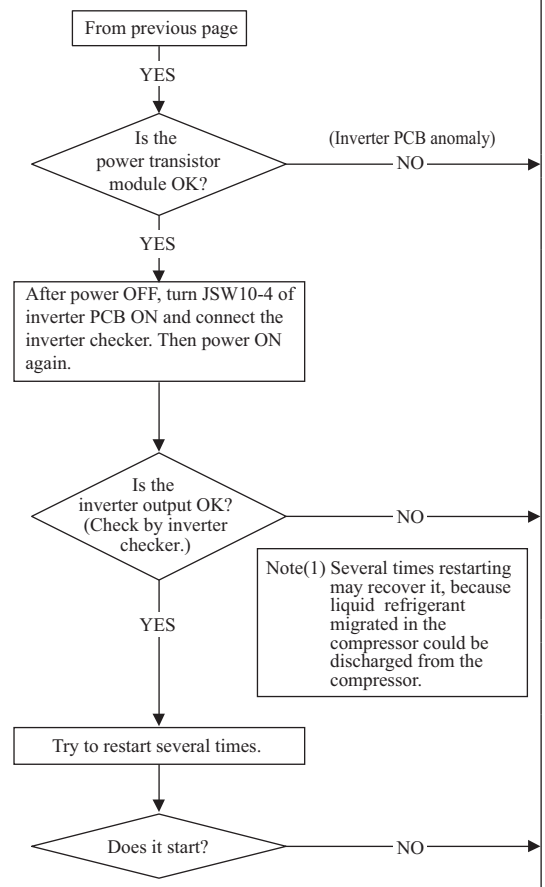
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis | Countermeasure

Note:

12. TECHNICAL INFORMATJON

Model FDU200VSAVH

Model(s) :	FDC200VSA ／ FDU200VH						
Outdoor side heat exchanger of air conditioner :	air						
Indoor side heat exchanger of air conditioner :	air						
Type :	vapour compression						
if applicable :	electric motor						
Item	Symbol	Value	Unit	Item	Symbol	Value	Unit
Rated cooling capacity	Prated,c	**19.0**	kW	Seasonal space cooling energy efficiency ηs,c		**199.5**	%
Declared cooling capacity for part load at given outdoor temperatures Tj and indoor 27℃/19℃(dry/wet bulb)				Declared energy efficiency ratio or gas utilization efficiency / auxiliary energy factor for part load at given outdoor temperatures Tj			
Tj=+35℃	Pdc	**19.0**	kW	Tj=+35℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**308.0**	%
Tj=+30℃	Pdc	**14.0**	kW	Tj=+30℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**440.0**	%
Tj=+25℃	Pdc	**9.0**	kW	Tj=+25℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**667.0**	%
Tj=+20℃	Pdc	**4.5**	kW	Tj=+20℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**647.0**	%
Degradation coefficient for air conditioners**	Cdc	**0.25**	-				
Power consumpiton in other than 'active mode'							
Off mode	P_{OFF}	**0.020**	kW	Crankcase heater mode	P_{CK}	**0.010**	kW
Thermostat-off mode	P_{TO}	**0.190**	kW	Standby mode	P_{SB}	**0.020**	kW
Other items							
Capacity control		**variable**		For air-to-air air conditioner: air flow-rate,outdoor measured		**8,100**	m^3/h
Sound power level, outdoor	L_{WA}	**72.0**	dB				
If engine driven: Emissions of nitrogen oxides	NOx ***	**-**	mg/kWh fuel input GCV				
GWP of the refrigerant		**2,088**	kg CO_2 eq. (100years)				
Contact details	Mitsubishi heavy industries thermal systems,LTD						

** If Cdc is not determined by measurement then the default degradation coefficient air conditioners shall be 0,25.

*** from 26 September 2018

Where information relates to multi-spilt air conditioners,the test result and performance data be obtained on the basis of the performance of the outdoor unit, with a combination of indoor unit(s) recommended by the manufacturer or importer.

Information to identify the model(s) to which the information relates :				FDC200VSA ／ FDU200VH			
Outdoor side heat exchanger of heat pump :		air					
Indoor side heat exchanger of heat pump :		air					
Indication if the heater is equipped with a supplementary heater :				No			
if applicable :		electric motor					
Parameters shall be declared for the average heating season , parameters for the warmer and colder heating seasons are optional.							
Item	Symbol	Value	Unit	Item	Symbol	Value	Unit
Rated heating capacity	Prated,h	**22.4**	kW	Seasonal space heating energy efficiency ηs,h		**137.6**	%
Declared heating capacity for part load at indoor temperature 20℃ and outdoor temperature Tj				Declared coefficient of performance or gas utilization efficiency / auxiliary energy factor for part load at given outdoor temperatures Tj			
T_j=-7℃	Pdh	**11.1**	kW	T_j=-7℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**310.0**	%
T_j=+2℃	Pdh	**6.7**	kW	T_j=+2℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**327.0**	%
T_j=+7℃	Pdh	**4.3**	kW	T_j=+7℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**440.0**	%
T_j=+12℃	Pdh	**3.9**	kW	T_j=+12℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**438.0**	%
T_{biv}=bivalent temperature	Pdh	**12.5**	kW	T_{biv}=bivalent temperature	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**263.0**	%
T_{OL}=operation limit	Pdh	**10.5**	kW	T_{OL}=operation limit	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**239.0**	%
For air-to-water heat pumps : T_j=-15℃ (if T_{OL}＜-20℃)	Pdh	**–**	kW	For air-to-water heat pumps:T_j=-15℃ (if T_{OL}＜-20℃)	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**–**	%
Bivalent temperature	T_{biv}	**-10.0**	℃	For water-to-air heat pumps:Operation limit T_{ol} temperature		**–**	℃
Degradation coefficient heat pumps**	C_{dh}	**0.25**	-				
Power consumpiton in modes other than 'active mode'				Supplementary heater back-up heating capacity	elbu	**–**	kW
Off mode	P_{OFF}	**0.020**	kW	Type of energy input Standby mode	P_{SB}	**0.020**	kW
Thermostat-off mode	P_{TO}	**0.210**	kW				
Crankcase heater mode	P_{CK}	**0.010**	kW				
Other items							
Capacity control		**variable**		For air-to-air heat pumps: air flow-rate,outdoor measured		**8,100**	m^3/h
Sound power level, outdoor measured	L_{WA}	**74.0**	dB	For water-/brine-to-air heat pumps : Rated brine or water flow-rate, outdoor side heat exchanger		**–**	m^3/h
Emissions of nitrogen oxides(if applicable)	NOx ***	**–**	mg/kWh fuel input GCV				
GWP of the refrigerant		**2088**	kg CO_2 eq. (100years)				
Contact details	Mitsubishi heavy industries thermal systems,LTD						

** If Cdh is not determined by measurement then the default degradation coefficient air conditioners shall be 0,25.

*** from 26 September 2018

Where information relates to multi-spilt air conditioners,the test result and performance data be obtained on the basis of the performance of the outdoor unit, with a combination of indoor unit(s) recommended by the manufacturer or importer.

PJG000Z575F

Model FDU250VSAVH

Model(s) :	FDC250VSA ／ FDU250VH						
Outdoor side heat exchanger of air conditioner :	air						
Indoor side heat exchanger of air conditioner :	air						
Type :	vapour compression						
if applicable :	electric motor						
Item	Symbol	Value	Unit	Item	Symbol	Value	Unit
Rated cooling capacity	Prated,c	**24.0**	kW	Seasonal space cooling energy efficiency ηs,c		**189.9**	%
Declared cooling capacity for part load at given outdoor temperatures Tj and indoor 27℃/19℃(dry/wet bulb)				Declared energy efficiency ratio or gas utilization efficiency / auxiliary energy factor for part load at given outdoor temperatures Tj			
Tj=+35℃	Pdc	**24.0**	kW	Tj=+35℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**301.0**	%
Tj=+30℃	Pdc	**17.7**	kW	Tj=+30℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**395.0**	%
Tj=+25℃	Pdc	**11.4**	kW	Tj=+25℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**622.0**	%
Tj=+20℃	Pdc	**6.5**	kW	Tj=+20℃	EERd or GUEc,bin / AEFc,bin	**638.0**	%
Degradation coefficient for air conditioners**	Cdc	**0.25**	-				
Power consumpiton in other than 'active mode'							
Off mode	P_{OFF}	**0.020**	kW	Crankcase heater mode	P_{CK}	**0.010**	kW
Thermostat-off mode	P_{TO}	**0.190**	kW	Standby mode	P_{SB}	**0.020**	kW
Other items							
Capacity control		**variable**		For air-to-air air conditioner: air flow-rate,outdoor measured		**8,580**	m^3/h
Sound power level, outdoor	L_{WA}	**73.0**	dB				
If engine driven: Emissions of nitrogen oxides	NOx ***	**-**	mg/kWh fuel input GCV				
GWP of the refrigerant		**2,088**	kg CO_2 eq. (100years)				
Contact details	Mitsubishi heavy industries thermal systems,LTD						

** If Cdc is not determined by measurement then the default degradation coefficient air conditioners shall be 0,25.

*** from 26 September 2018

Where information relates to multi-spilt air conditioners,the test result and performance data be obtained on the basis of the performance of the outdoor unit, with a combination of indoor unit(s) recommended by the manufacturer or importer.

Information to identify the model(s) to which the information relates :				FDC250VSA ／ FDU250VH			
Outdoor side heat exchanger of heat pump :				air			
Indoor side heat exchanger of heat pump :				air			
Indication if the heater is equipped with a supplementary heater :				No			
if applicable :				electric motor			
Parameters shall be declared for the average heating season , parameters for the warmer and colder heating seasons are optional.							
Item	Symbol	Value	Unit	Item	Symbol	Value	Unit
Rated heating capacity	Prated,h	**27.0**	kW	Seasonal space heating energy efficiency ηs,h		**137.5**	%
Declared heating capacity for part load at indoor temperature 20℃ and outdoor temperature Tj				Declared coefficient of performance or gas utilization efficiency / auxiliary energy factor for part load at given outdoor temperatures Tj			
T_j=-7℃	Pdh	**12.6**	kW	T_j=-7℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**269.0**	%
T_j=+2℃	Pdh	**7.7**	kW	T_j=+2℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**351.0**	%
T_j=+7℃	Pdh	**4.9**	kW	T_j=+7℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**402.0**	%
T_j=+12℃	Pdh	**6.4**	kW	T_j=+12℃	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**527.0**	%
T_{biv}=bivalent temperature	Pdh	**14.2**	kW	T_{biv}=bivalent temperature	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**260.0**	%
T_{OL}=operation limit	Pdh	**12.5**	kW	T_{OL}=operation limit	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**254.0**	%
For air-to-water heat pumps : T_j=-15℃ (if T_{OL}＜-20℃)	Pdh	**—**	kW	For air-to-water heat pumps:T_j=-15℃ (if T_{OL}＜-20℃)	COPd or GUEh,bin / AEFh,bin	**—**	%
Bivalent temperature	T_{biv}	**-10.0**	℃	For water-to-air heat pumps:Operation limit T_{ol} temperature		**—**	℃
Degradation coefficient heat pumps**	C_{dh}	**0.25**	-				
Power consumpiton in modes other than 'active mode'				Supplementary heater back-up heating capacity	elbu	**—**	kW
Off mode	P_{OFF}	**0.020**	kW	Type of energy input Standby mode	P_{SB}	**0.020**	kW
Thermostat-off mode	P_{TO}	**0.210**	kW				
Crankcase heater mode	P_{CK}	**0.010**	kW				
Other items							
Capacity control		**variable**		For air-to-air heat pumps: air flow-rate,outdoor measured		**9,060**	m^3/h
Sound power level, outdoor measured	L_{WA}	**75.0**	dB	For water-/brine-to-air heat pumps : Rated brine or water fiow-rate, outdoor side heat exchanger		**—**	m^3/h
Emissions of nitrogen oxides(if applicable)	NOx ***	**—**	mg/kWh fuel input GCV				
GWP of the refrigerant		**2088**	kg CO_2 eq. (100years)				
Contact details	Mitsubishi heavy industries thermal systems,LTD						

** If Cdh is not determined by measurement then the default degradation coefficient air conditioners shall be 0,25.

*** from 26 September 2018

Where information relates to multi-spilt air conditioners,the test result and performance data be obtained on the basis of the performance of the outdoor unit, with a combination of indoor unit(s) recommended by the manufacturer or importer.

PJG000Z575F

13. OPTION PARTS

PJZ012D112Ⓐ

13.1 Wireless kit (RCN-KIT4-E2)

Safety precautions

●Please read this manual carefully before starting installation work to install the unit properly.
Every one of the followings is important information to be observed strictly.
⚠WARNING Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in serious consequences such as death, severe injury, etc.
⚠CAUTION Failure to follow these instructions properly may cause injury or property damage. It could have serious consequences depending on the circumstances.
●The following pictograms are used in the text.

⃠	Never do.	❗	Always follow the instructions given.

●Keep this manual at a safe place where you can consult with whenever necessary. Show this manual to installers when moving or repairing the unit. When the ownership of the unit is transferred, this manual should be given to a new owner.

⚠WARNING

- **Consult your dealer or a professional contractor to install the unit.**
  Improper installation made on your own may cause electric shocks, fire or dropping of the unit.
- **Installation work should be performed properly according to this installation manual.**
  Improper installation work may result in electric shocks, fire or break-down.
- **Be sure to use accessories and specified parts for installation work.**
  Use of unspecified parts may result in drop, fire or electric shocks.
- **Install the unit properly to a place with sufficient strength to hold the weight.**
  If the place is not strong enough, the unit may drop and cause injury.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Shut OFF the main power source before starting electrical work.**
  Otherwise, it could result in electric shocks, break-down or malfunction.
- **Do not modify the unit.**
  It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.
- **Be sure to turn OFF the power circuit breaker before repairing/inspecting the unit.**
  Repairing/inspecting the unit with the power circuit breaker turned ON could cause electric shocks or injury.
- **Do not install the unit in appropriate environment or where inflammable gas could generate, flow in, accumulate or leak.**
  If the unit is used at places where air contains dense oil mist, steam, organic solvent vapor, corrosive gas (ammonium, sulfuric compound, acid, etc) or where acidic or alkaline solution, special spray, etc. are used, it could cause electric shocks, break-down, smoke or fire as a result of significant deterioration of its performance or corrosion.
- **Do not install the unit where water vapor is generated excessively or condensation occurs.**
  It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.
- **Do not use the unit in a place where it gets wet, such as laundry room.**
  It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.
- **Do not operate the unit with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shocks.

⚠WARNING

- **Do not wash the unit with water.**
  It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.
- **Use the specified cables for wiring, and connect them securely with care to protect electronic parts from external forces.**
  Improper connections or fixing could cause heat generation, fire, etc.
- **When installing the unit at a hospital, telecommunication facility, etc., take measures to suppress electric noises.**
  It could cause malfunction or break-down due to hazardous effects on the inverter, private power generator, high frequency medical equipment, radio communication equipment, etc.
  The influences transmitted from the remote control to medical or communication equipment could disrupt medical activities, video broadcasting or cause noise interference.
- **Do not leave the remote control with its PCB case removed.**
  If dew, water, insect, etc. enters through the hole, it could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

⚠CAUTION

- Do not install the wireless kit at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.
  It could cause break-down or deformation of remote control.
  (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
  (2) Places near heat devices
  (3) High humidity places
  (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
  (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
  (6) Uneven surface
  (7) Places affected by the direct air flow of the AC unit
  (8) Places where the receiver is influenced by the fluorescent lamp (especially inverter type) or sunlight
  (9) Places where the receiver is affected by infrared rays of any other communication devices
  (10) Places where some object may obstruct the communication with the remote control

① Accessories

Please make sure that you have all of the following accessories.

① Receiver		1
② Wiring (3m)		1
③ Parts set (A)		1
④ Parts set (B)		1
⑤ Parts set (C)		1
⑥ Installation manual		1

① Wireless remote control		1
② Remote control holder		1
③ Screw for holder		2
④ AAA dry cell battery (LR03)		2
⑤ User's manual		1

① Screw for receiver		2
② Fixing band		1
③ Clamp		5
④ Screw for clamp		5

① Receiver installation bracket		1
② Screw for the bracket		2
③ Installation fitting		2

② Preparation before installation

Setting on site

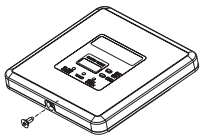
PCB on the receiver has the following switches to set the function. Default setting is shown with ☐ mark.

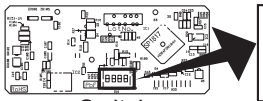
SW1	Prevents interference during plural setting	☐ ON : Normal	OFF : Customized
SW2	Receiver master/ slave setting	☐ ON : Master	OFF : Slave
SW3			
SW4	Auto restart	ON : Valid	☐ OFF : Invalid

② Preparation before installation (continued)

To change setting

1. Remove one screws located on the under of the receiver and detach the board.
2. Change the setting by the switch on PCB.





Switch

Default settings

3. When SW1 is turned to OFF position, change the wireless remote control setting. For the method of changing the setting, refer to Setting to avoid mixed communication of ④ Wireless remote control .

*The receivable area of the signal refer to ⑤ Receiver .

Master/Slave setting when using plural remote controls

Up to two receiver or wired remote control can be installed in one indoor unit group.
When two receiver or wired remote control are used, it is necessary to change SW on the PCB to set it as slave.

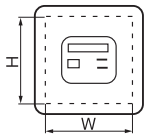
③ How to install the receiver

The following two methods can be used to install the receiver onto a ceiling or a wall.
Select a method according to the installation position.

<Installation position> (A) Direct installation onto the ceiling with wood screws.
(B) Installation with accessory's bracket

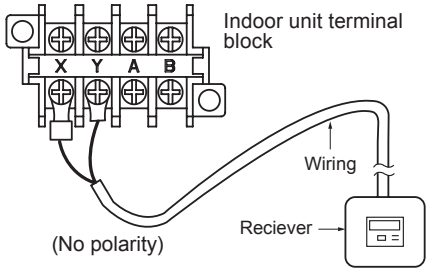
(1) Drilling of the ceiling (ceiling opening)

Drill the receiver installation holes with the dimensions shown right at the ceiling position where wires can be connected.



(A) Direct installation onto the ceiling with wood screws.	88mm(H)×101mm(W)
(B) Installation with enclosed bracket	108mm(H)×108mm(W)

(2) Wiring connection of receiver

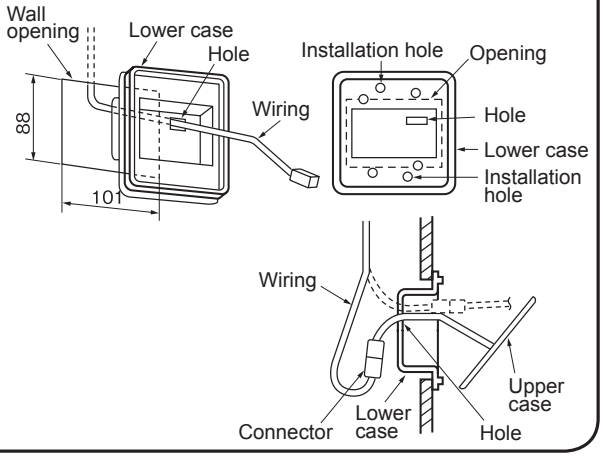


⚠ Caution
Do not connect the wiring to the power source of the terminal block. If it is connected, printed board will be damaged.

(3) Installation of the receiver

Remove the screw on the side of the receiver and sprit it into the upper case and lower case.
Install the receiver with one of the two installation methods (A) to (C) shown below.

(A) Direct installation onto the ceiling with screws



▷ Use this installation method when the ceiling is wooden, and there is no problem for strength in installing directly with wood screws.

① Put through the wiring from the back side to the hole of the lower case.

② Fit the lower case into the ceiling opening. Make sure that the clearance between the convex part of the back of the lower case and the ceiling opening must be as equal as possible on both sides.

③ Using the two installation holes shown right, fix the lower case onto the ceiling with the enclosed wood screws. (The other four holes are not used.)

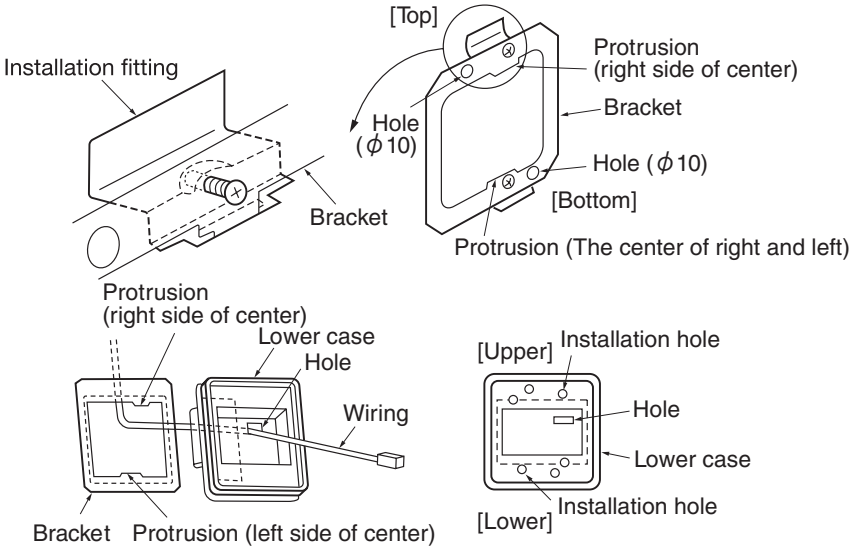
④ Connect the wiring with the wiring from the upper case by the connector.

③ How to install the receiver(continued)

⑤ Take out the connector to the backside from the hole of the lower case putting through the wiring at ①.
⑥ Fit the upper case and the lower case, and tighten the screws.

(B) Installation with enclosed bracket

Use this method when installaing onto a gypsum board (7 to 18mm), etc.

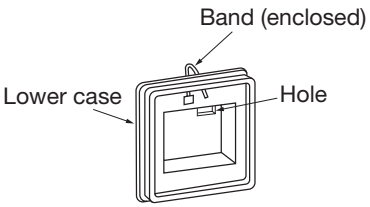


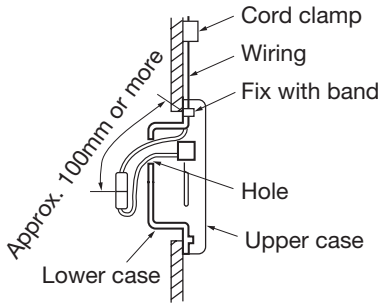
① Catch the two protrusion of the enclosed bracket onto the fitting as shown above, and temporarily fix with the screws. (The bracket has an Upper/Lower and front/back orientation. Confirm the Upper/Lower protrusion positions and the positional relation of the ϕ10 holes on the bracket and the installation hole on the lower case with the above drawing.)
② Insert the end of the installation fitting into the back of the ceiling from the opening, and tighten the screws to fix the bracket onto the ceiling.
③ Pass the wiring from the rear side through the hole on the lower case.
④ Fit the lower case onto the bracket, and fix the lower case to the bracket using the two installation holes shown above. (The other four holes are not used.)
⑤ Follow step ① to ⑥ for (A) to complete the installation.

③ How to install the receiver (continued)

(C) Exposed installation

Use the following procedure when installing the case with the wiring exposed.





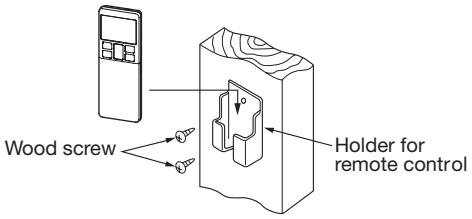
① Cut off the thin section on the side of the upper case with a pair of nippers or a knife, and remove the burrs with a file, etc. (The wiring is passed through this section.)
② Pass the enclosed band through the wiring outlet hole on the lower case.
③ Use on of the light detection adaptor installation methods (A) or (B) explained in section 3, and fix the lower case onto the wall. Do not pass the wiring through the hole on the lower case.
④ Fix the wiring using the band while leaving the wiring length from the band fixing section to the end of the wiring connector at 100mm or more.
⑤ Connect the wiring with the wiring protruding front the upper case using a connector.
⑥ Pass the connected connector and the excess wiring through the hole on the lower case.
⑦ Fit the upper case onto the lower case, and tighten the screws.
⑧ Adequately fix the wiring with the enclesed cord clamp.

④ Wireless remote control

Installation tips for the remote control holder

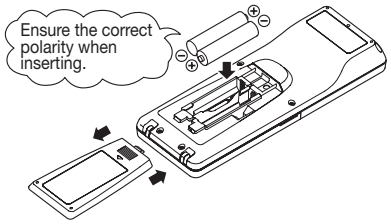
Fix the remote control holder using the screws supplied with this product.

* Precautions for installing the holder
- Adjust the position so that it is upright.
- Ensure that the screw heads are not protruding.
- Do not attach the holder on plaster wall.



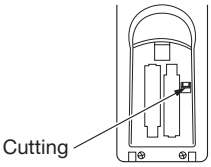
How to insert batteries

1. Detach the back lid.
2. Insert the batteries. (two AAA batteries)
3. Reattach the back lid.



Setting to avoid mixed communication

1. Detach the back lid, and remove the batteries.
2. Cut off the switching wire in the battery compartment using nippers.
3. Insert the batteries, and attach the back lid.

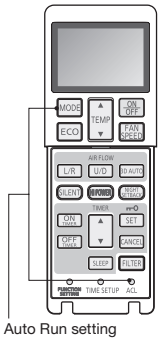


④ Wireless remote control (continued)

Changing the wireless remote control setting

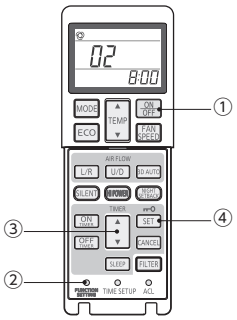
How to change the Auto Run setting
The Auto Run mode is not available on the building air-conditioner and gas heat pump series (excluding the cooling/heating free multi system).
When using the wireless remote control to operate those models, set the wireless remote control to disable the Auto Run mode.
To disable the Auto Run mode, press the ACL switch while holding down the MODE button, or insert batteries while holding down the MODE button.

* Note: Once the batteries are removed, the setting is reset to the factory default.
When the batteries are removed, repeat the steps described above.



Indoor function settings

1. How to set indoor functions
   ① Press the ON/OFF button to stop the unit.
   ② Press the desired one of the buttons shown below while holding down the FUNCTION SETTING switch.
   ③ Use the selection buttons, ▲ and ▼, to change the setting.
   ④ Press the SET button.
   The buzzer on the wireless remote control signal receiver beeps twice, and the LED lamp flashes four times at two-second intervals.
2. Setting details
   The following functions can be set.



Button	Number indicator	Function setting
FAN SPEED	00	Fun speed setting : Standard
	01	Fun speed setting : Setting 1 *
	02	Fun speed setting : Setting 2 *
MODE	00	Room heating temperature adjustment : Disable
	01	Room heating temperature adjustment : +1°C
	02	Room heating temperature adjustment : +2°C
	03	Room heating temperature adjustment : +3°C
FILTER	00	Filter sign display : OFF
	01	Filter sign display : 180 hours
	02	Filter sign display : 600 hours
	03	Filter sign display : 1000 hours
	04	Filter sign display : Operation stop after 1000 hours have elapsed
U/D	00	Anti draft setting : Disable
	01	Anti draft setting : Enable
SILENT	00	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Enable
HI POWER	00	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control only
	02	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Auto OFF only
	03	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control and Auto OFF

Button	Number indicator	Function setting
ON TIMER	00	Cooling fan residual-period running : Disable
	01	Cooling fan residual-period running : 0.5 hours
	02	Cooling fan residual-period running : 2 hours
	03	Cooling fan residual-period running : 6 hours
OFF TIMER	00	Heating fan residual-period running : Disable
	01	Heating fan residual-period running : 0.5 hours
	02	Heating fan residual-period running : 2 hours
	03	Heating fan residual-period running : 6 hours
NIGHT SETBACK	00	Remote control signal receiver LED : Brightness High
	01	Remote control signal receiver LED : Brightness Low
	02	Remote control signal receiver LED : OFF

* Refer to page 74.

⑤ Receiver

1 Control plural indoor units with one remote control

Up to 16 indoor units can be connected.

1. Connect the XY terminal with 2 cores wire. As for the size, refer to the following note.
2. For Packaged air-conditioner series, set the indoor unit address with SW2 on the indoor unit PCB from [0] to [F] so as not to duplicate.

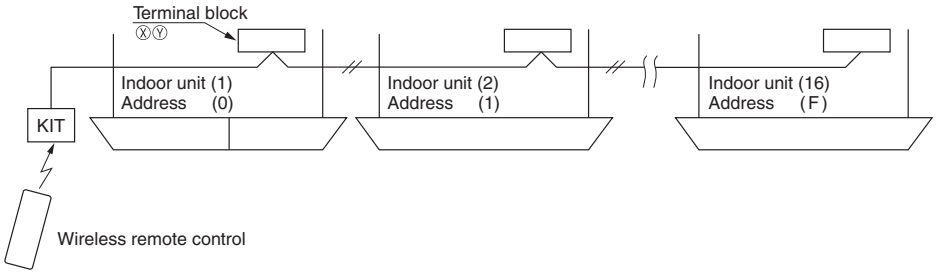
Restrictions on the thickness and length of wire (Maximun total extension 600m.)

Standard	Within 0.3 mm² × 100m
	Within 0.5 mm² × 200m
	Within 0.75mm² × 300m
	Within 1.25mm² × 400m
	Within 2.0 mm² × 600m

⑤ Receiver (continued)

For the shop series

For VRF series, set the indoor unit address with SW1, SW2 and SW5-2 on the indoor unit PCB from [000] to [127] so as not to duplicate.

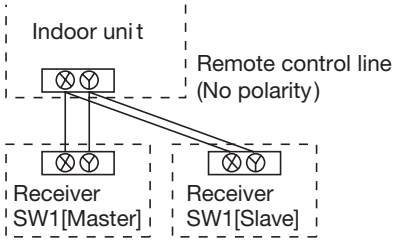


For the building air-conditioner and gas heat pump series

Set the indoor unit and outdoor unit numbers by manually specifying the addresses.
Use the rotary switches SW1 and SW2 provided on the indoor unit PCB (printed circuit board) to set the indoor unit numbers so that they are not duplicated.

Master/Slave setting when using plural remote control

Up to two receivers can be installed in one indoor unit group.

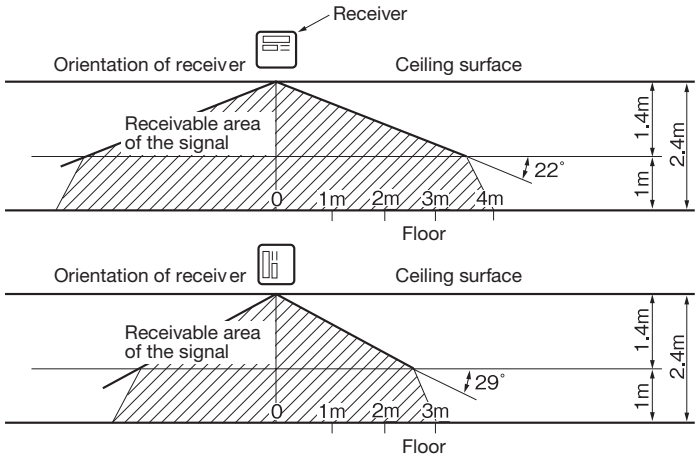


Switch	Setting	Function
SW2	ON	Master
	OFF	Slave

When installed on ceiling

1. Standard reachable area of the signa

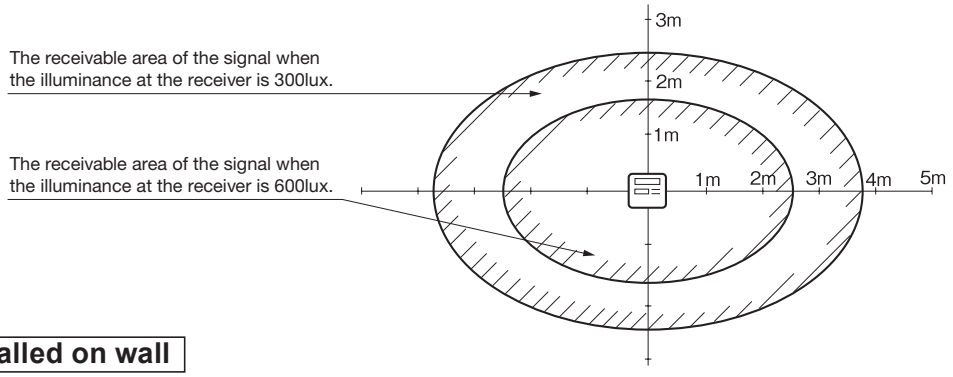
[Condition] Illuminance at the receiver : 300lux (when no lighting is installed within 1m of the receiver in an ordinary office.)l



2. Correlation between illuminance at the receiver and reachable area of the signal in a plain view.

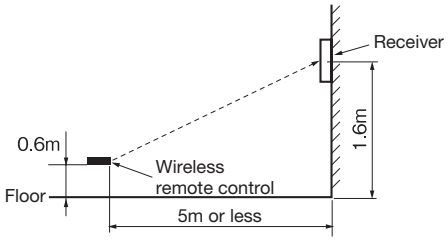
[Condition] Correlation between the reachable area of the signal and illuminance at the receiver when the wireless remote control is operated at 1m high under the condition of ceiling height of 2.4m. When the illuminance becomes double, the area is narrowed down to two third.

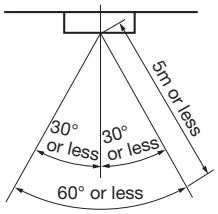
⑤ Receiver (continued)



When installed on wall

[Condition] Illuminance at the receiver : 800lux.

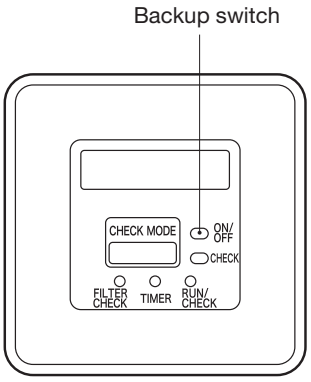




Backup switch

A backup switch is provided on the receiver section of the panel surface. When operation from the wireless remote control unit is not possible (due to flat batteries, a mislaid unit, a unit failure), you can use it as an emergency means. You should operate this switch manually.

1. If pressed while the air-conditioner is in a halt, it will cause the air-conditioner to start operation in the automatic mode (in the case of cooling only, in the cooling mode). Wind speed: Hi fan, Temperature setting: 23°C, Louver: horizontal
2. If pressed while the air-conditioner is in operation, it will stop the air-conditioner.



Cooling test run operation

- After safety confirmation, turn on the power.
- Transmit a cooling operation command with the wireless remote control unit, while the backup switch on the receiver is depressed.
- If the backup switch on the receiver is pressed during a test run, it will end the test run.
- If you cannot operate the unit properly during a test run, please check wiring by consulting with inspection guides.

How to read the 6-digit display

A 6-digit indicator (7-segment indicator) is provided on the receiver section.

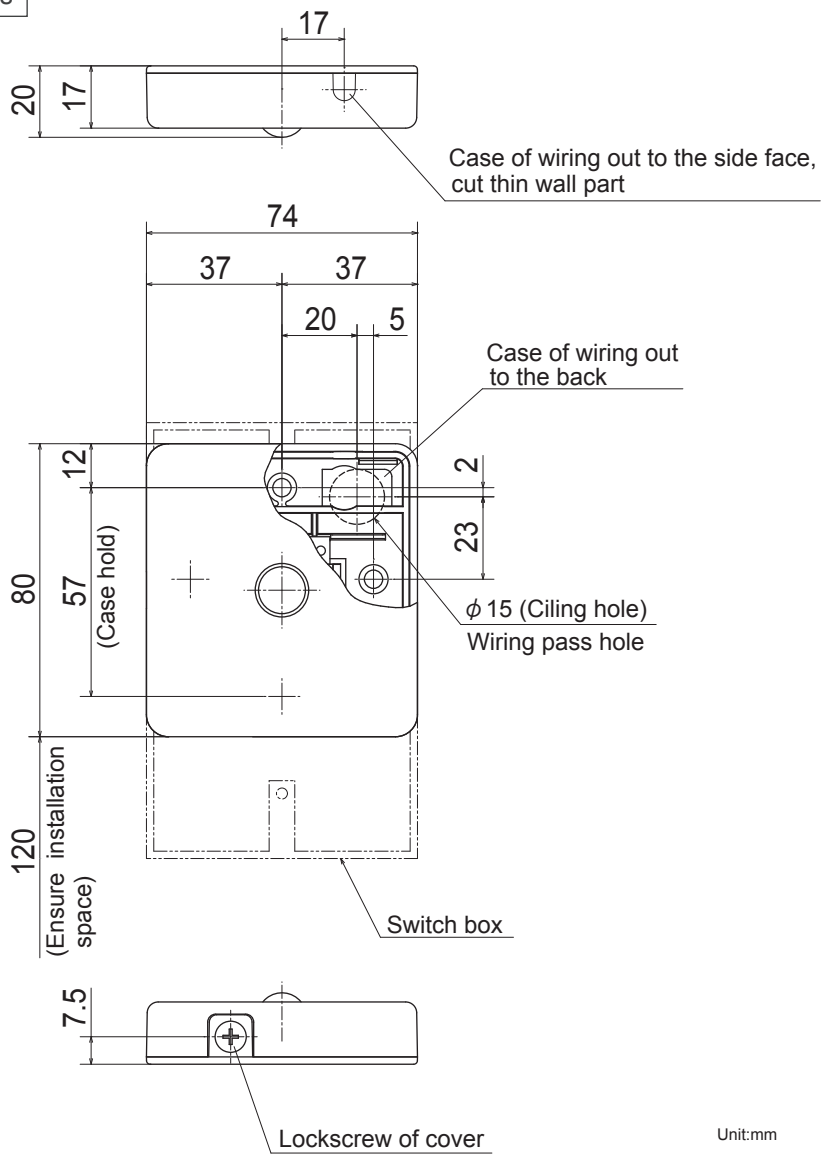
1. An indication will be displayed for one hour after power on.
2. An indication appears for 3.5 seconds when a “Stop” command is sent from the wireless remote control unit while the air-conditioner is not running.
3. An indication appearing in (1) or (2) above will go off as soon as the unit starts operation.
4. When there are no error records to indicate, addresses are displayed for all of the connected units.
5. When there are some error records remaining, the error records are displayed.
6. Error records can be cleared by transmitting a “Stop” command from the wireless remote control unit, while the backup switch is depressed.

13.2 Motion sensor kit (LB-KIT2)

(1) Specification

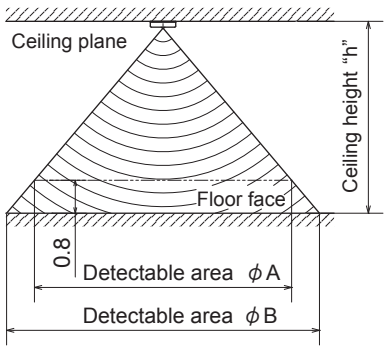
PJZ000Z341

External dimensions



Unit:mm

Detectable area



High of the ceiling h[m]	2.7	3.5	4.0
Detectable area ϕA[m]	4.5	6.4	7.6
Detectable area ϕB[m]	6.4	8.3	9.5

Notes
(1) The recommended height, is lower than 4m for motion sensor. When the installation height is higher, motion detection accuracy might be reduced.
(2) Connenction wiring (prepare on site) for signal wiring is 0.2mm^2 × 3 cores wire or more (Red,White,Black) and maximum total extension 8m.
(3) Motion sensor kit can be installed on the wall, but recommend installing is the ceiling plane.
(4) In the case of wall installation, the detectable area is 5m in front and about 100° left and right.
(5) Refer to the installation sheet for details.

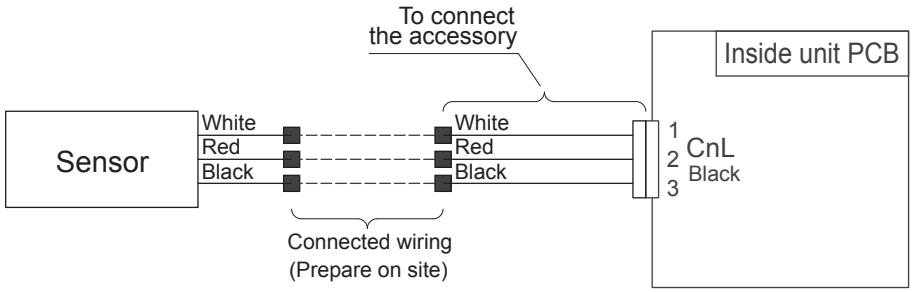
Installation precautions

Do not install the motion sensor kit at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.

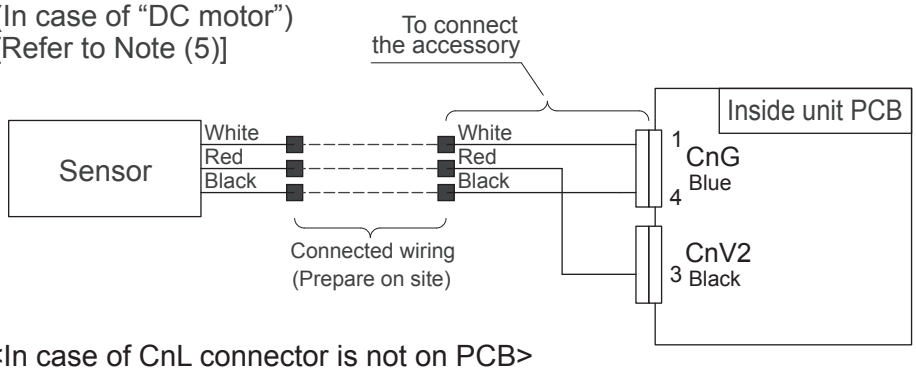
(1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
(2) Places near heat devices
(3) High humidity places
(4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
(5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
(6) Uneven surface
(7) Places affected by the direct air flow of the AC unit
(8) Places where the motion sensor is influenced by the fluorescent lamp (especially inverter type) or sunlight
(9) Places where the motion sensor is affected by infrared rays of any other communication devices
(10) Place that the motion sensor have a shock
(11) Place with the strong radio wave or static electricity
(12) Place that motion sensor lens become tainted or have damaged.Dusty place
(13) Do not run in parallel with strong voltage lines such as power source wiring

Wiring connection

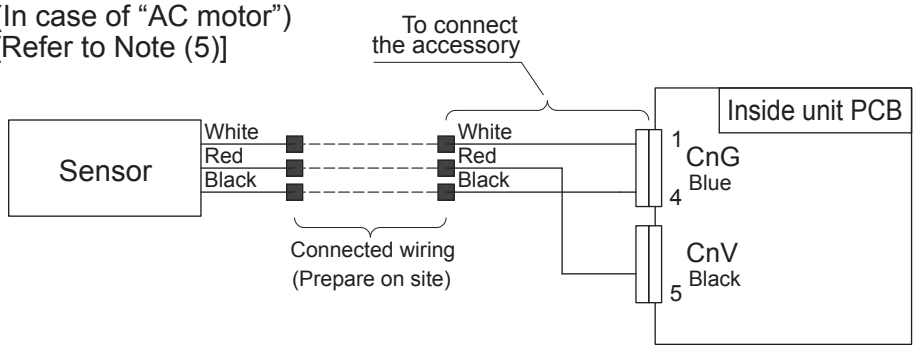
<In case of CnL connector is on PCB>



<In case of CnL connector is not on PCB>
(In case of “DC motor”)
[Refer to Note (5)]



<In case of CnL connector is not on PCB>
(In case of “AC motor”)
[Refer to Note (5)]



(2) Installation manual

PJZ012D134

⚠ WARNING

● Connect the wiring to the PCB in the control box on the indoor unit and hold the wiring securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the PCB.
Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.

● Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work.
Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

● Do not install the motion sensor kit at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.

(1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
(2) Places near heat devices
(3) High humidity places
(4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
(5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
(6) Places affected by the direct air flow of the Indoor unit
(7) Places where the motion sensor is influenced by the fluorescent lamp or sunlight
(8) Places where the motion sensor is affected by infrared rays of any other communication devices
(9) Places where some object may obstruct the motion sensor
(10) Place that the motion sensor have a shock
(11) Place with the strong radio wave or Static electricity
(12) Place that motion sensor lens become tainted or have damaged. Dusty place
(13) Place where it runs in parallel with strong voltage lines such as power source wiring

● Do not leave the motion sensor without the cover.
In case the cover needs to be detached, protect the motion sensor with a packaging or bag in order to keep it away from water and dust.

Attention

- This manual describes how to install the motion sensor kit.
- Instruct the customer how to operate it correctly referring to the instruction manual.
- For the installation method of the air-conditioner itself, refer to the installation manual enclosed in the package.

① Accessories

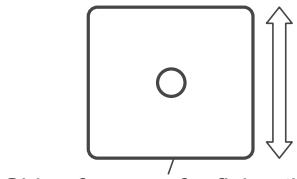
Please make sure that all components are in the package.

Motion sensor	Wiring <1>	Wiring <2>	Wiring <3>	2 screws	Manual
	In case of CnL connector on the indoor unit PCB (FDT/FDK/FDTC) 	In the case of CnV2 connector on the indoor unit PCB 	In the case of CnV connector on the indoor unit PCB (FDTQ/FDFL/FDFU) 		

ø Please prepare a relay wiring for connecting the motion sensor and indoor unit on site. (0.2 mm^2 or thicker, triplex (red, white and black) cable for communication, with the maximum length of 8 m.)

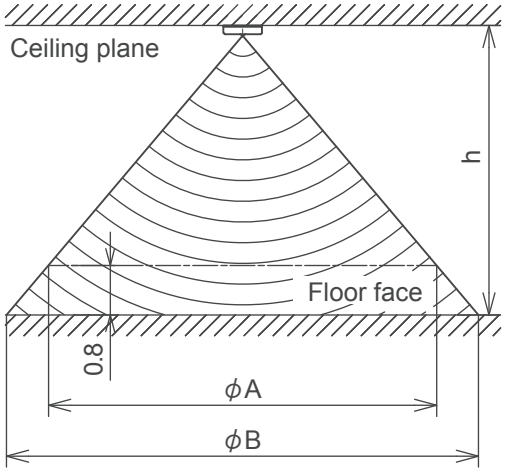
② Installing the motion sensor

- The recommended height is lower than 4000mm for motion sensor. When the installation height is higher, motion detection accuracy might be reduced.
- Sensor will detect the object with a different temperature from the surrounding.
- Motion sensor is more sensitive to motions in the direction of ⇔ mark.
- Sensor may not detect small children or infants with little motion.
- Although motion sensor can be installed on a wall, it is recommended to install it on the ceiling plane.
- If the sensor is installed on the wall, the sensing distance in the front direction is about 5m, covering the angle of about 100 degrees.



Side of screws for fixing the case

The detectable area



Height of the ceiling	h (m)	2.7	3.5	4.0
Detectable area	ϕ A (m)	4.5	6.4	7.6
Detectable area	ϕ B (m)	6.4	8.3	9.5

Installing the motion sensor

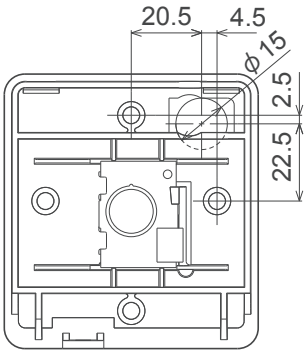
There are the following 3 methods to install the motion sensor on the ceiling plane or wall surface (hereinafter called “ceiling plane”). Select the method according to the installation position.

<How to install>

(A) Direct installation by screws to the ceiling plane with the wiring in the ceiling space.

(B) Direct installation by screws to the ceiling plane with the wiring in the room.

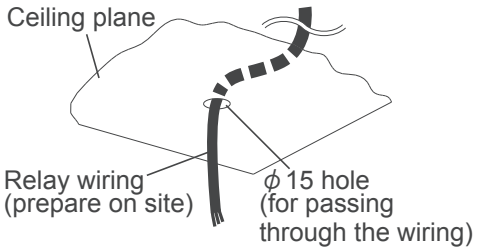
(C) Installation with switch box (prepare at the site)



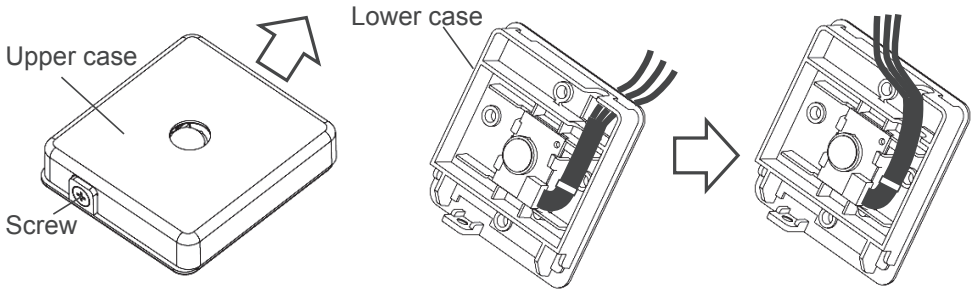
Positional relation for pulling out relay wiring hole and installing holes.

Option (A)

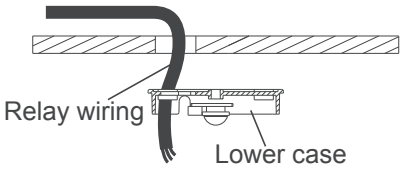
►Select this method if the ceiling plane has sufficient strength to install the motion sensor directly with screws.

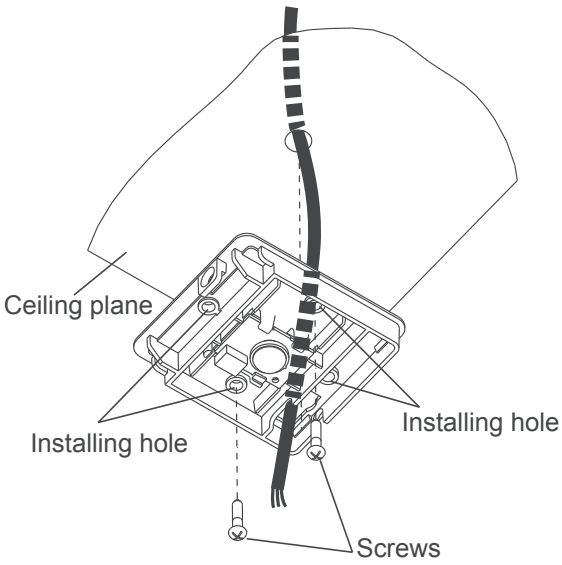


① Prepare a relay wiring on site and lay out the wiring in advance.
② Remove the screw at the side of the motion sensor and slide the upper case in the direction of the arrow.
③ Pull the wiring of the motion sensor as below.

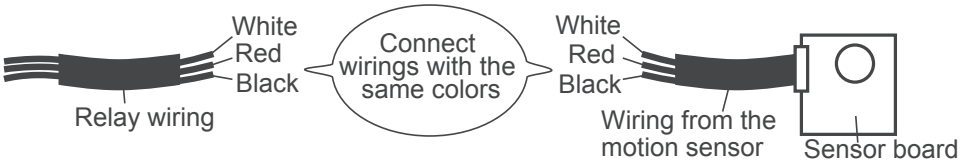


④ Pass the relay wiring through the hole on the lower case.
⑤ When fixing the lower case to the ceiling plane, tighten it in 2 locations of the installing holes (4 locations) with the attached screws.

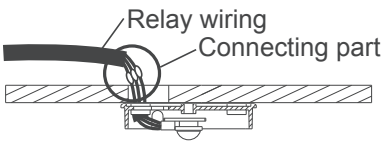




⑥ Using a crimping terminal, etc., connect the same color to the relay wiring (prepare on site) and the wiring of motion sensor.



⑦ Place the connecting part inside of the ceiling space.
⑧ Seal the wiring hole on the lower case with putty.
⑨ Taking care not to pinch the wirings, slip the upper case into the lower case, and tighten the screws.

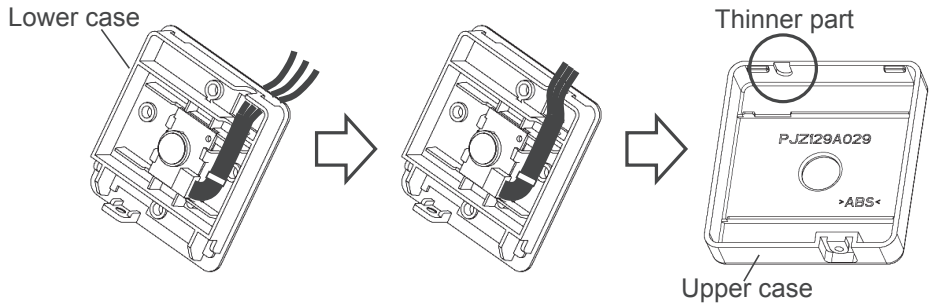


Caution:
In order to prevent tracking, be sure to perform construction so as not to clog up the connecting part with dust, etc.

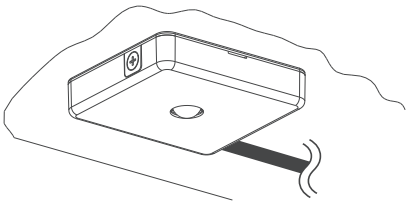
Option (B)

►Select this method if the ceiling plane has sufficient strength to install the motion sensor directly with screws.

① Remove the screw at the side of the motion sensor and slide the upper case in the direction of the arrow. (The same as ② of Option (A))
② Pull the wiring of the motion sensor toward the side. Cut off the thinner part of the upper case.

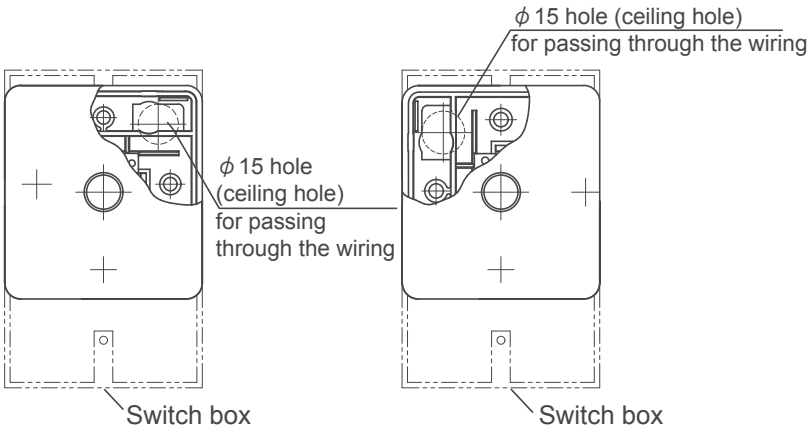


③ When fixing the lower case to the ceiling plane, tighten it in 2 locations of the installing holes (4 locations) with the attached screws. (The same as ⑤ of Option (A))
④ Using a crimping terminal, etc., connect the same color to the relay wiring (prepare on site) and the wiring of motion sensor.
(The same as ⑥ of Option (A))
⑤ Taking care not to pinch the wirings, slip the upper case into the lower case, and tighten the screws.
(The same as ⑨ of Option (A))
⑥ Seal the cut part at Step ② with putty.

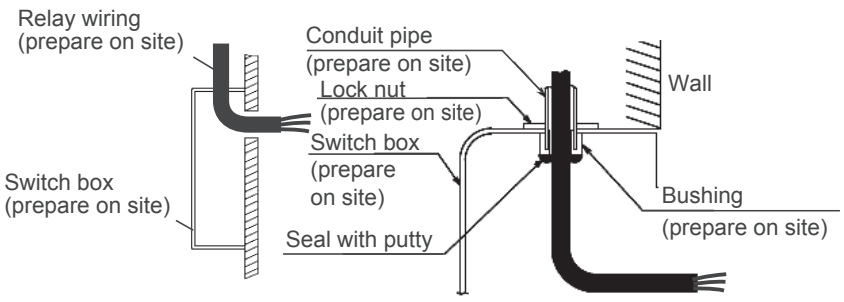


Option (C)

① Set up the switch box and relay wiring (prepare on site) in advance.
Seal the relay wiring inlet with putty.



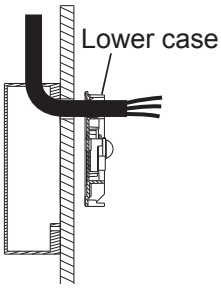
Positional relation for the switch box and installing holes



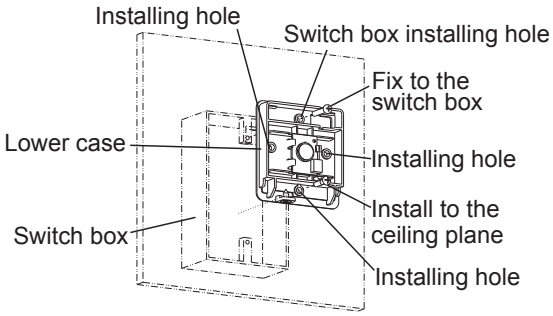
② Remove the screw at the side of the motion sensor and slide the upper case in the direction of the arrow.
(The same as ② of Option (A))

③ Pull the wiring of the motion sensor.
(The same as ③ of Option (A))

④ Pass the relay wiring through the hole on the lower case from switch box.

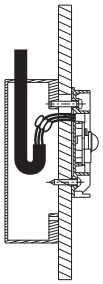


⑤ Fix the lower case to switch box using the installing hole (1 place).

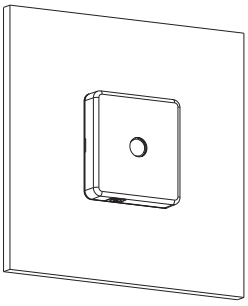


⑥ Connect the same color to the relay wiring (prepare on site) and the wiring of motion sensor.
(The same as ⑥ of Option (A))

⑦ Place the connecting part between switch box and the hole of the lower case through passed the wiring at step ④ .



⑧ Taking care not to pinch the wirings, slip the upper case into the lower case, and tighten the screws.
(The same as ⑨ of Option (A))

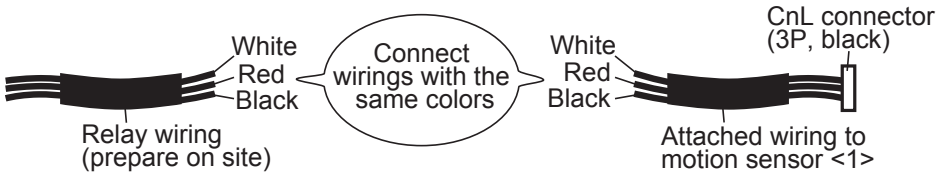


Wiring connection in the control box of indoor unit

CAUTION: Attached wirings to the motion sensor vary depending on the model of the indoor unit. Make sure your model before installing.

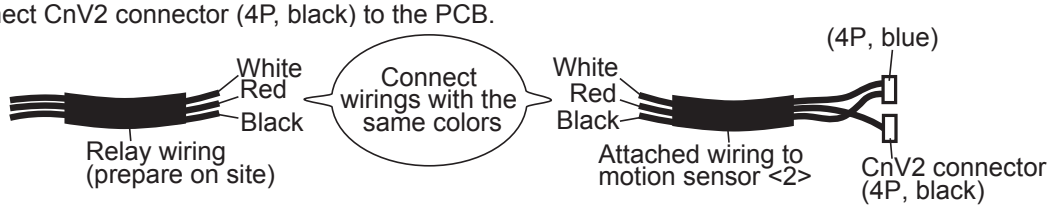
<In case of the CnL connector is on the indoor unit PCB (FDT/FDK/FDTC)>

① Connect the same color to the relay wiring (prepare on site) and the attached wiring <1>.
② Remove the control box cover from the indoor unit.
③ Connect CnL connector (3P, black) to the PCB.



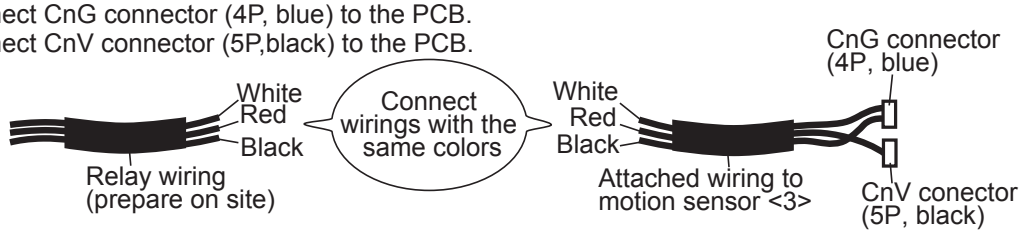
<In the case of CnV2 connector on the indoor unit PCB>

① Connect the same color to the relay wiring (prepare on site) and the attached wiring <2>.
② Remove the control box cover from the indoor unit.
③ Connect CnG connector (4P, blue) to the PCB.
④ Connect CnV2 connector (4P, black) to the PCB.

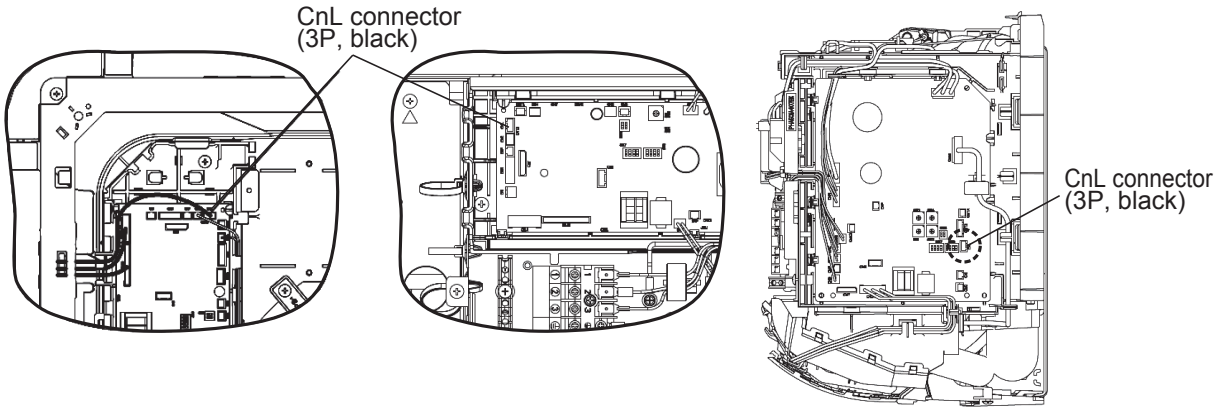


<Incase of the CnV connector is not on the indoor unit PCB (FDTQ/FDFL/FDFU)>

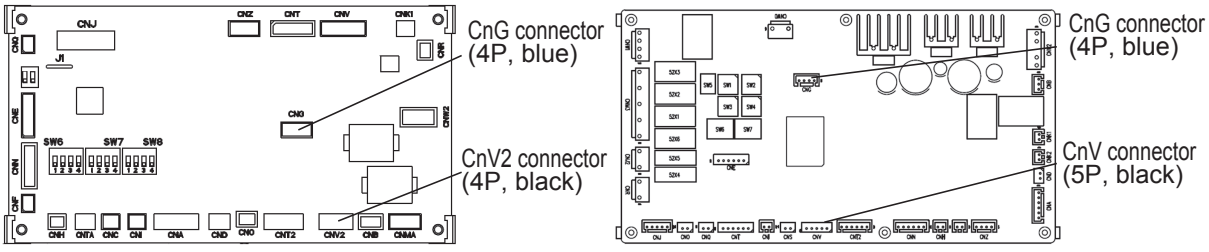
① Connect the same color to the relay wiring (prepare on site) and the attached wiring <3>.
② Remove the control box cover from the indoor unit.
③ Connect CnG connector (4P, blue) to the PCB.
④ Connect CnV connector (5P,black) to the PCB.



<For FDT> **<For FDTC>** **<For FDK>**



<For the other indoor units> **<In case of FDTQ/FDFL/FDFU>**



③ Setting the motion sensor

The motion sensor will not function if it is only installed.

Set the function of the motion sensor by the wired or wireless remote control.

Refer to the manual instruction of each remote control for the setting procedure.

Note: It is not possible to set by the following remote control models or older.

Wired:RC-EX1A, RC-E5, RCH-E3

Wireless: RCN-E1R

(3) User's manual

PJZ012D134

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

⚠ WARNING

● **If a child, person with disease or other persons needed for assist uses this product, people around the person should take sufficient care.**
A halt of the air-conditioner due to abnormal situation or motion sensor's control may cause a feeling of sickness or accident.

ATTENTION

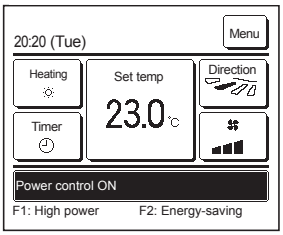
- The sensor may not detect a person near the border of detection range.
- Installation near an object with a different temperature from the surrounding may cause a false detection of human.
- Due to correction of temperature setting, some people may feel chilly.

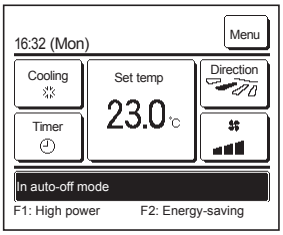
This product uses infrared sensor to detect person's activity level to support control of air-conditioner.
Please set the control you like from the remote control.

Indoor unit control	Detective situation	Description of control	Display of eco touch remote control
① Power control	Activity level is large	Lower the indoor temperature setting for comfort.	Power control ON
	Activity level is small	Raise the indoor temperature setting for energy-saving.	Power control ON
② Auto-off	No one is detected for 1 hour	Stop operation and stand by	In auto-off mode
	No one is detected for 12 hours	Stop operation	-
① + ②	Any combination of the above	Any of the above	Any of the above
All disabled (default setting)	-	Standard control	-

If the sensor is disconnected or defective, the control will be set as if it no detects (or less) activity level.

Refer to the next section for setting method.





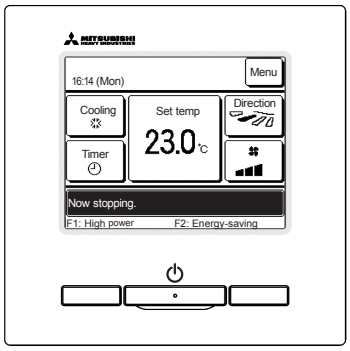
- When power control is enabled
  The amount of human motion is detected by a motion sensor to adjust the Set temperature. (The set temperature of remote control is displayed at the adjusted temperature.)
  in cooling : 33 °C, in heating : 15 °C
  adjust the set temperature seep by step up to above temperature.
  During power control, "Power control ON" will be displayed on the message display.
- When auto-off is enabled
  The unit will enter the "operation wait" state when an hour has elapsed since the last time a human presence was detected.
  And will be in "complete stop" state after 12 hour of operation wait time.

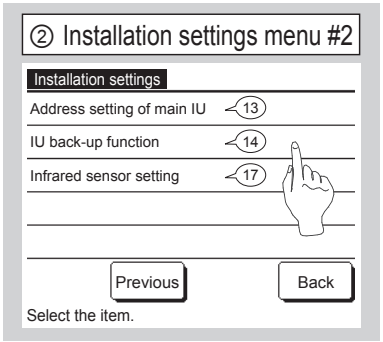
"Operation wait"...The unit stops but will resume operation when human presence is detected. When the unit is in "Complete stop", "In auto-off mode" will be displayed on the message display.

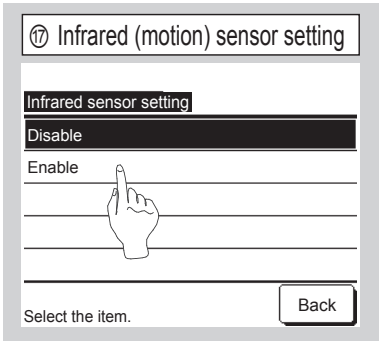
"Complete stop"...When auto-off is enabled, the unit stops. The unit will not resume operation even when human presence is detected.
The message "In auto-off mode" will disappear from the message display, and the operation lamp will turn off.

Control setting (from eco touch remote control)

● Refer to the installation manual for eco touch remote control to activate the infrared sensor (motion sensor).
TOP screen **Menu** ⇨ **Service setting** ⇨ **Installation settings** ⇨ **Service password**



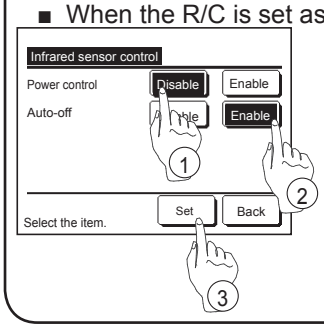




● Refer to the installation manual for eco touch remote control to set control mode.

■ Infrared sensor (motion sensor) control (for IUs with motion sensors)
Presence of humans and the amount of motion are detected by a motion sensor to perform various controls.

■ When the R/C is set as the sub R/C, the infrared sensor (motion sensor) control cannot be set.



Tap the **Menu** button on the TOP screen and select **Energy-saving setting** ⇨ **Infrared sensor control** or **Motion sensor control**.

The Infrared sensor control screen and contents of the current settings are displayed.

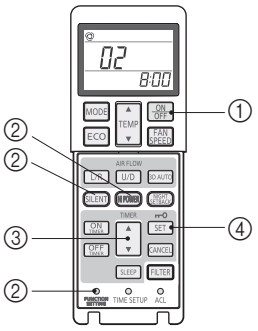
① Enable/disable power control.
② Enable/disable auto-off.
③ After you set each item, tap the **Set** button.
The display returns to the Energy-saving setting menu screen.
* This control will not be executed unless ③ is performed.

Control setting (from wireless remote control)

● Refer to the installation manual for wireless remote control to enable motion sensor in **Indoor function settings**

Indoor function settings

1. How to set indoor functions
① Press the ON/OFF button to stop the unit.
② Press the desired one of the buttons shown item **2.** while holding down the FUNCTION SETTING switch.
③ Use the selection buttons, ▲ and ▼, to change the setting.
④ Press the SET button.
The buzzer on the remote control signal receiver beeps twice, and the LED lamp flashes four times at two-second intervals.



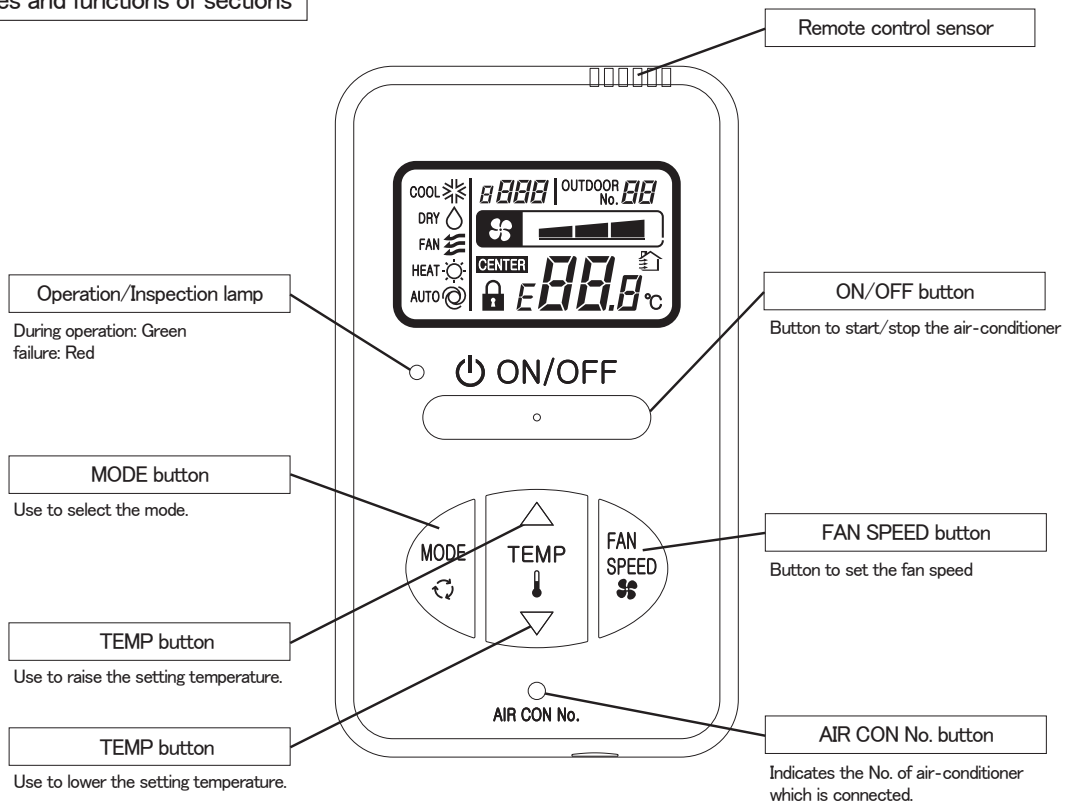
2. Setting details

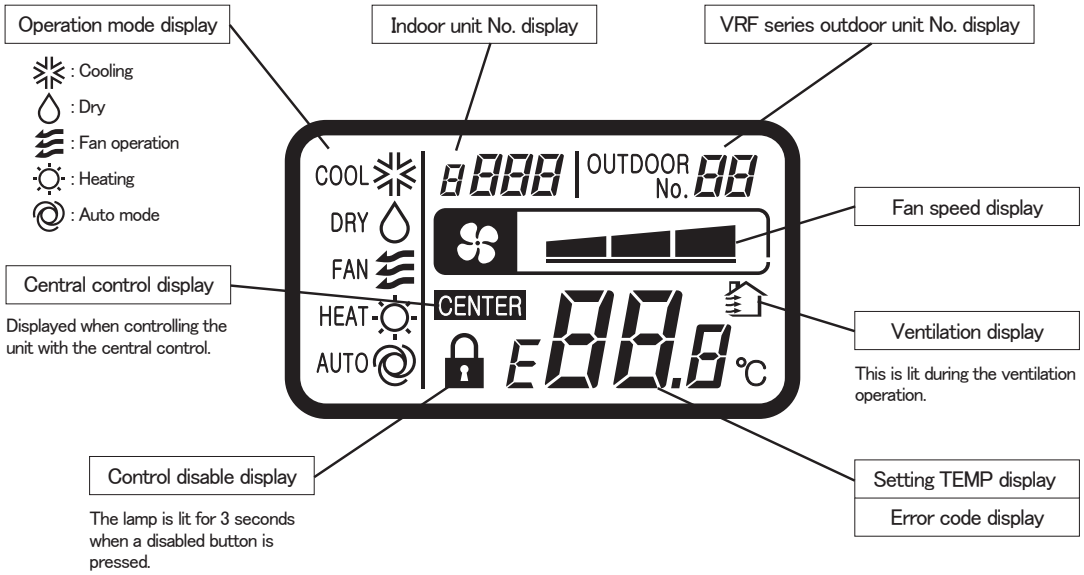
Button	Number indicator	Function setting
SILENT	00	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Enable
HI POWER	00	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control only
	02	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Auto OFF only
	03	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control and Auto OFF

13.3 Simple wired remote control (RCH-E3)

Note:
Following functions of FDU indoor unit series are not able to be set with this simple wired remote control (RCH-E3).
1. 4-fan speed setting (P-Hi/Hi/Me/Lo) → 3-fan speed setting (Hi/Me/Lo)

Names and functions of sections





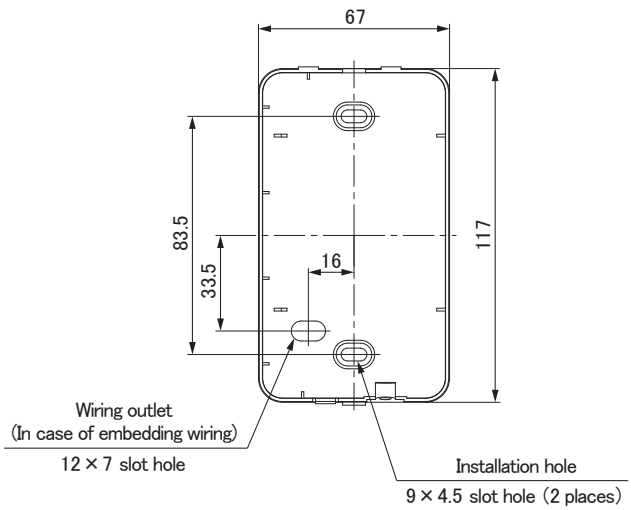
Installation of remote control

Do not install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.

(1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
(2) Places near heat devices
(3) High humidity places
(4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
(5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
(6) Uneven surface

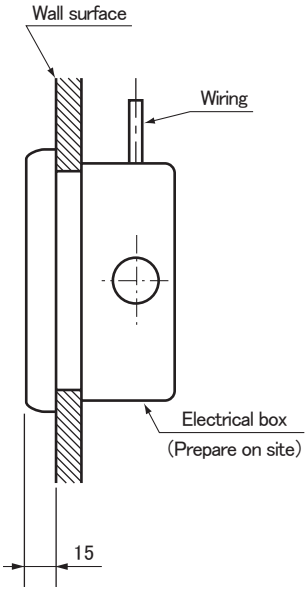
PJZ000Z272

Remote control installation dimensions

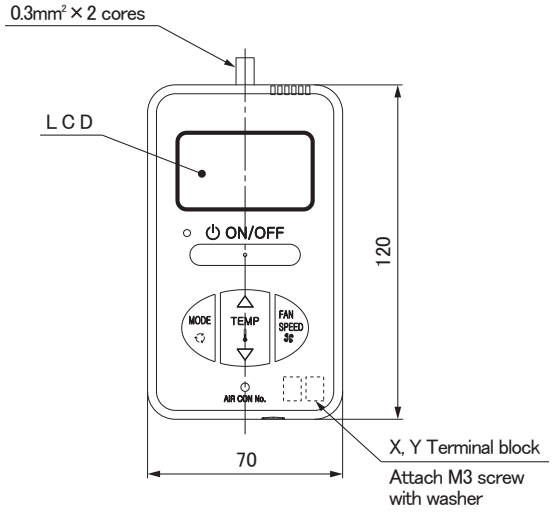


Note: Installation screw for remote control
M4 screw (2 pieces)

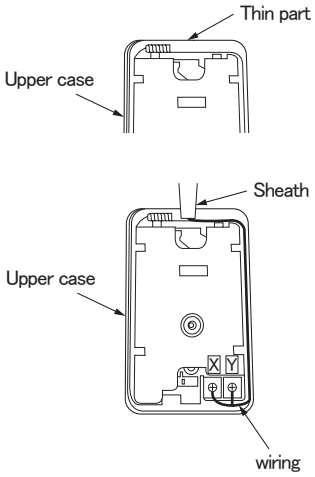
In case of embedding wiring



In case of exposing wiring

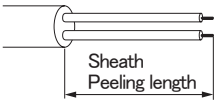


The remote control wiring can be extracted from the upper center.
After the thin part in the upper side of the remote control upper case is scraped with a nipper or knife, remove burr with a file.



The peeling length of each wiring is as follows:

X wiring : 160mm Y wiring : 150mm



Wiring specifications

(1) Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm² × 2 cores wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
(2) Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, the wiring in the remote control case should be 0.3mm² (recommended) to 0.5mm².
Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire
connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.

Unit:mm

Length	Wiring thickness
100 to 200m	0.5mm² × 2 cores
Under 300m	0.75mm² × 2 cores
Under 400m	1.25mm² × 2 cores
Under 600m	2.0mm² × 2 cores

Adapted to **RoHS** directive

Simple Remote Control Installation Manual

PJZ012D069Ⓐ

Read together with indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠WARNING

- **Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work.**
  Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

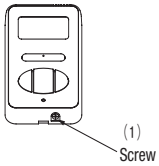
- **Do not install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.**
  (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
  (2) Places near heat devices
  (3) High humidity places
  (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
  (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
  (6) Uneven surface
- **Do not leave the remote control without the upper case.**
  In case the upper cace needs to be detached, protect the remote control with a packaging box or bag in order to keep it away from water and dust.

Accessories	Remote control, wood screw (ϕ3.5×16) 2 pieces
Prepare on site	Remote control cord (2 cores) (Refer to [2. Installation and wiring of remote control]) [In case of embedding cord] Electrical box, M4 screw (2 pieces) [In case of exposing cord] Cord clamp (if needed)

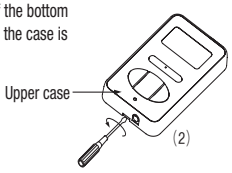
1. Installation procedure

In case of embedding cord

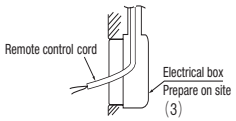
(1) Make certain to remove the screw on the bottom surface of the remote control.



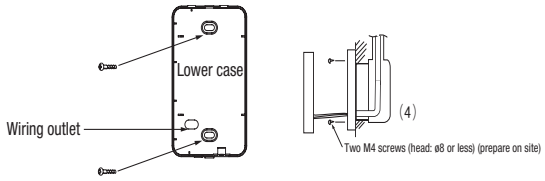
(2) Remove the upper case of the remote control.
Insert a flat-blade screwdriver to a concave portion of the bottom surface of the remote control and slightly twist it, and the case is removed.



(3) Pre-bury the electrical box and remote control cord.



(4) Prepare two M4 screws (recommended length: 12 – 16mm), and install the lower case to the electrical box.
Do not use a screw whose screw head is larger than the height of the wall around the screw hole.

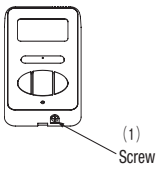


(5) Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminals (X and Y) of the remote control and the terminals (X and Y) of the indoor unit. (No polarity of X and Y)

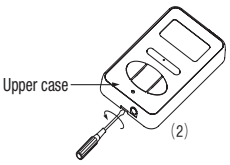
(6) Mount the upper case for restoring to its former state so as not to crimp the remote control cord, and secure with the removed screw.

In case of exposing cord

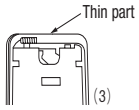
(1) Make certain to remove a screw on the bottom surface of the remote control.



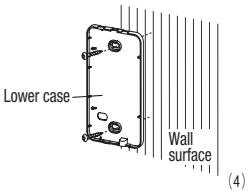
(2) Remove the upper case of the remote control.
Insert a flat-blade screwdriver to a concave portion of the bottom surface of the remote control and slightly twist it, and the case is removed.



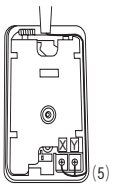
(3) The remote control cord can be extracted from the upper center.
After the thin part in the upper side of the remote control upper case is scraped with a nipper or knife, remove burr with a file.



(4) The lower case of the remote control is mounted to a flat wall with two accessory wood screws.

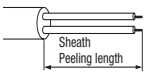


(5) Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminals (X and Y) of the remote control and the terminals (X and Y) of the indoor unit. (No polarity of X and Y)
The wiring route is as shown in the right.



The wiring in the remote control case should be 0.3 mm^2 (recommended) to 0.5 mm^2 at maximum.
Further, peel off the sheath.
The peeling length of each wiring is as follows:

X wiring : 160mm
Y wiring : 150mm



(6) Mount the upper case for restoring to its former state so as not to crimp the remote control cord, and secure with the removed screw.

(7) In the case of exposing installation, secure the remote control cord to the wall surface with a cord clamp so as not to loosen the remote control cord.

2. Installation and wiring of remote control

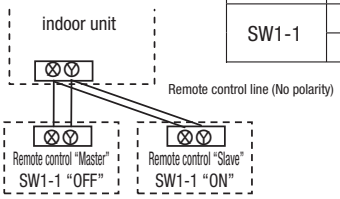
(1) Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm^2 × 2 cores wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
(2) Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, the wiring in the remote control case should be 0.3mm^2 (recommended) to 0.5mm^2.
Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.

100 - 200m·····0.5mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 300m·····0.75mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 400m·····1.25mm^2 × 2 cores
Under 600m·····2.0mm^2 × 2 cores

3. Master/ slave setting when more than one remote control are used

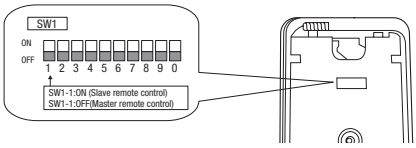
(1) Up to two remote controls can be connected to one unit (or one group) of indoor unit.

Switch	Setting	Function detail
SW1-1	ON	Slave remote control
	OFF	Master remote control



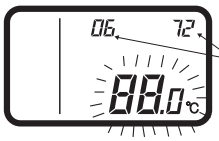
(2) Set the switch SW1-1 of the slave remote control is "Slave" (ON). The factory default is set as "Master" (OFF).

(Note) • The remote control temperature sensor enabled setting can be set only to the master remote control.
• Install the master remote control at the position to detect room temperature.
• The air-conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control in case of the master / slave setting.



4. The indication when power source is supplied

(1) At the time of turning the power source on, after the light is on for the first 2 seconds, the display becomes as shown below.
The number displayed on the upper side of LCD in the remote control is the software number, and this is not an error code.



Software number
(The number in the left is one example. Another number may be shown.)

(2) Then, "88.0 °C" blinks on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and the indoor unit is established.

(3) In the case of connecting one remote control with one unit (or one group) of indoor unit, make certain to set the master remote control (factory default).
If the slave remote control is set, a communication cannot be established.

(4) If a state where the communication between the remote control and the indoor unit cannot be established continues about for 30 minutes, "E" is displayed. Confirm the wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit and master/slave setting of the remote control.

5. Confirmation method for return air temperature

Return air temperature can be confirmed by the remote control operation.

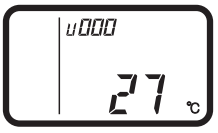
(1) **Press AIR CON No. button for over 5 seconds.**
"88" blinks on the temperature setting indicator.
("88" blinks for approximately 2 seconds while data is read.)
↓
Then, the return air temperature is displayed.
(Example) return air temperature: "27 °C" (blinking)

(Note) For the return air temperature, in the normal case, the return air temperature of the indoor unit is displayed; however, in the case that the remote control temperature sensor is effective, detected temperature by the remote control temperature sensor is displayed.

(2) **Press ON/OFF button.**
End.

[In the case that the remote temperature sensor is ineffective and plural indoor units are connected to one remote control]

(1) **Press AIR CON No. button for over 5 seconds.**
indoor unit No. indicator: "U 000" (blinking)
(Among the connected indoor units, the lowest number is displayed.)



(2) **Press TEMP△ or TEMP▽ button.**
Select the indoor unit No.

(3) **Press MODE button.**
Dectder the indoor unit No.
(Example) indoor unit No. indicator: "U 000"
"88" blinks on the temperature setting indicator. (blinking for approximately 2 to 10 seconds while data is read) Then, the return air temperature is displayed. When AIR CON No. is pressed, return to the indoor unit selection display (example, "U 000").

(4) **Press ON/OFF button.**
End.

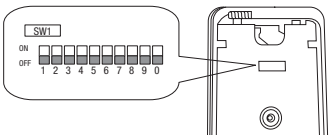
6. Function setting

Each function of the remote control and the indoor unit is automatically set to the initial setting, which is the standard use, on the occasion of connecting the remote control with the indoor unit. In the case of the standard use, the setting change is unnecessary. However, if you whould like to change the initial setting " ○ ", change the setting for only the item of the function number. **Record the setting contents and stored them.**

(1) Function setting item by switch on PCB

Switch No.	Setting	Setting detail	Initial setting
SW1-1	ON	Slave remote control	
	OFF	Master remote control	○
SW1-2	ON	Remote control temperature sensor enabled	
	OFF	Remote control temperature sensor disabled	○
SW1-3	ON	"MODE" button prohibited	
	OFF	"MODE" button enabled	○
SW1-4	ON	"ON/OFF" button prohibited	
	OFF	"ON/OFF" button enabled	○

Switch No.	Setting	Setting detail	Initial setting
SW1-5	ON	"TEMP" button prohibited	
	OFF	"TEMP" button enabled	○
SW1-6	ON	"FAN SPEED" button prohibited	※ Note 1
	OFF	"FAN SPEED" button enabled	※ Note 1
SW1-7	ON	Auto restart function enabled	
	OFF	Auto restart function disabled	○
SW1-8, 9, 0	ON	Not used	
	OFF		



- As for the slave remote control, function setting is impossible other than SW1-1.
- In the indoor unit with only one fan speed, "FAN SPEED" button cannot be enabled.

(2) Function setting item by button operation

Classification	Function No.	Function	Setting No.	Setting	Initial setting	Remarks
Remote control function	01	Indoor unit fan speed	01	Fan speed: three steps	※ Note 1	The fan speed is three steps, ❋■■■ - ❋■■ - ❋■ .
			02	Fan speed: two steps (Hi-Lo)	※ Note 1	The fan speed is two steps, ❋■■■ - ❋■ .
			03	Fan speed: two steps (Hi-Me)		The fan speed is two steps, ❋■■■ - ❋■■ .
			04	Fan: one step	※ Note 1	The fan speed is fixed to one step.
	03	Remote control thermistor at the time of cooling	01	Remote control temperature sensor: no offset	○	
			02	Remote control temperature sensor: +3.0 °C		At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at +3.0°C.
			03	Remote control temperature sensor: +2.0 °C		At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at +2.0°C.
			04	Remote control temperature sensor: +1.0 °C		At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at +1.0°C.
			05	Remote control temperature sensor: -1.0 °C		At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at -1.0°C.
			06	Remote control temperature sensor: -2.0 °C		At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at -2.0°C.
			07	Remote control temperature sensor: -3.0 °C		At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offsett temperature at -3.0°C.
	04	Remote control thermistor at the time of heating	01	Remote control temperature sensor: no offset	○	
			02	Remote control temperature sensor: +3.0 °C		At the time of heating, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at +3.0°C.
			03	Remote control temperature sensor: +2.0 °C		At the time of heating, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at +2.0°C.
			04	Remote control temperature sensor: +1.0 °C		At the time of heating, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at +1.0°C.
			05	Remote control temperature sensor: -1.0 °C		At the time of heating, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at -1.0°C.
			06	Remote control temperature sensor: -2.0 °C		At the time of heating, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at -2.0°C.
			07	Remote control temperature sensor: -3.0 °C		At the time of heating, in the case of remote control temperature sensor enabled, offset temperature at -3.0°C.
	05	Ventilation setting	01	No ventilator connection	○	
			02	Ventilator links air-conditioner		In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CNT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CND of the indoor printed circuit board), the operation of ventilation device is linked with the operation of indoor unit.
	06	"Auto" operation setting	01	"Auto" operation enabled	※ Note 1	
			02	"Auto" operation disabled	※ Note 1	"Auto" operation disabled
Indoor unit function	07	Operation permission/ prohibition	01	Disabled	○	
			02	Enabled		Operation permission/prohibition control is enabled.
	08	External input	01	Level input	○	
			02	Pulse input		
	09	Fan speed setting	01	Standard	Note2	
			02	High speed 1	Note2	
			03	High speed 2	Note2	
	10	Fan remaining operation at the time of cooling	01	No remaining operation	○	After cooling stopped, no fan remaining operation
			02	0.5 hours		After cooling stopped, fan remaining operation for 0.5 hours
			03	1 hour		After cooling stopped, fan remaining operation for 1 hour
			04	6 hours		After cooling stopped, fan remaining operation for 6 hours
	11	Fan remaining operation at the time of heating	01	No remaining operation	○	After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, no fan remaining operation
			02	0.5 hours		After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, fan remaining operation for 0.5 hours
			03	2 hours		After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, fan remaining operation for 2 hours
			04	6 hours		After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, fan remaining operation for 6 hours
	12	Setting temperature offset at the time of heating	01	No offset	○	
			02	Setting temperature offset + 3.0 °C		The setting temperature at the time of heating is offset by +3.0 °C.
			03	Setting temperature offset + 2.0 °C		The setting temperature at the time of heating is offset by +2.0 °C.
			04	Setting temperature offset + 1.0 °C		The setting temperature at the time of heating is offset by +1.0 °C.
	13	Heating fan controller	01	Low fan speed	※ Note 1	At the time of heating thermostat OFF, operate with low fan speed.
			02	Setting fan speed		At the time of heating thermostat OFF, operate with the setting fan speed.
			03	Intermittent operation	※ Note 1	At the time of heatingr thermostat OFF, intermittently operate.
			04	Fan off		At the time of heating thermostat OFF, a fan will be stopped. When the remote control thermistor is enabled, automatically set to "Fan off". Do not set at the time of the indoor unit temperature sensor.
	14	Return air temperature offset	01	No offset	○	
			02	Return air temperature offset +2.0 °C		Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by +2.0 °C.
			03	Return air temperature offset +1.5 °C		Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by +1.5 °C.
			04	Return air temperature offset +1.0 °C		Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by +1.0 °C.
			05	Return air temperature offset -1.0 °C		Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by -1.0 °C.
			06	Return air temperature offset -1.5 °C		Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by -1.5 °C.
			07	Return air temperature offset -2.0 °C		Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by -2.0 °C.

Note 1: The symbol " ※ " in the initial setting varies depending upon the indoor unit and the outdoor unit to be connected, and this is automatically determined as follows:

Swith No. Function No.	Function	Setting	Product model
SW1-6	"FAN SPEED" button	"FAN SPEED" button prohibited	Product model whose indoor fan speed is only one step
		"FAN SPEED" button enabled	Product model whose indoor fan speed is two steps or three steps
Remote control function 01	Indoor unit fan speed	Fan speed: three steps	Product model whose indoor unit fan speed is three steps
		Fan speed: two steps (Hi-Lo)	Product model whose indoor unit fan speed is two steps
		Fan speed: two steps (Hi-Me)	
		Fan: one step	Product model whose indoor unit fan speed is only one step
Remote control function 06	"Auto" operation setting	"Auto" operation enabled	Product model where "Auto" mode is selectable
		"Auto" operation disabled	Product model without "Auto" mode
Indoor unit function 13	Heating fan control	Low fan speed	Product model except FDUS
		Intermittent operation	FDUS

Note 2: Fan speed of "High speed" setting

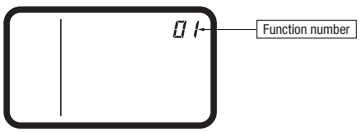
Fan speed setting	Indoor unit fan speed setting		
	❋■■■ - ❋■■ - ❋■	❋■■■ - ❋■	❋■■■ - ❋■■
Standard	Hi — Mid — Lo	Hi — Lo	Hi — Mid
High speed 1・2	UHi — Hi — Mid	UHi — Mid	UHi — Hi

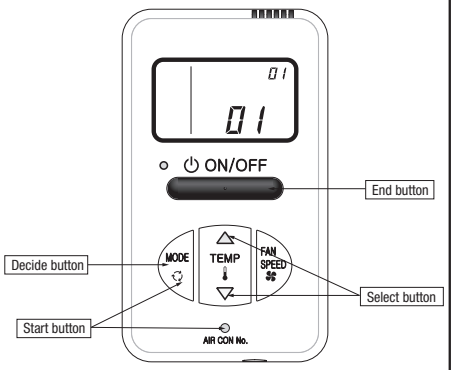
Initial setting of some indoor unit is "High speed".

Note 3: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "07 Operation permission/ prohibition" and "08 External input".

7. How to set functions by button operation

(1) **Stop air-conditioner, and simultaneously press AIR CON No. and MODE buttons at the same time for over three seconds.**
The function number "01" blinks in the upper right.

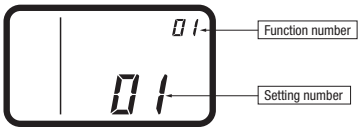




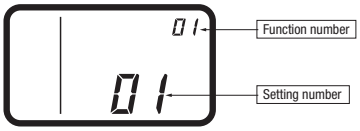
(2) **Press TEMP△ or TEMP▽ button.**
Select the function number.

(3) **Press MODE button.**
Decide the function number.

(4) **[In the case of selecting the remote control function (01-06)]**
① The current setting number of the selected function number blinks
(Example)
Function number: "01" (lighting)
Setting number: "01" (blinking)



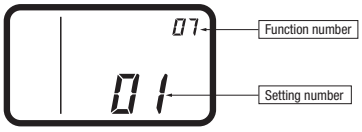
② **Press TEMP△ or TEMP▽ button.**
Select the setting number.
③ **Press MODE button.**
The setting is completed.
Light is on for approximately 3 to 20 seconds while data of the decided function No. and setting No. is transmitted.
(Example)
Function number: "01" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)
Setting number: "01" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)



Then, the screen goes back to the function number blinking indication (1), if the setting is sequentially conducted, continue with the same procedures. If the setting is finished, proceed to (5).

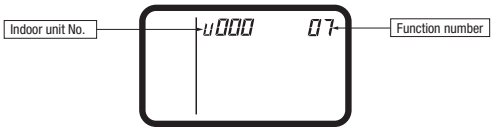
(5) **Press ON/OFF button.**
The setting is completed.

[In the case of selecting the indoor unit function (07-14)]
① **"88" blinks on the temperature setting indicators.**
(blinking for approximately 2 to 10 seconds while data are read)
↓
After that, the current setting number of the selected function number blinks.
(Example)
Function number: "07" (lighting)
Setting number: "01" (blinking)



Proceed to ②.

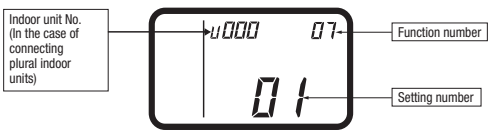
[Note]
a. In the case of connecting one remote control to plural indoor units, the display will be as follows:
Indoor unit No. display: "U 000" (blinking)
(Display the lowest number among the connected indoor units.)



b. Press TEMP△ or TEMP▽ button.
Select the indoor unit No. to be set.
If "U ALL" is selected, the same setting can be set to all units.
c. Press MODE button.
Decide the indoor unit No.
"88" blinks on the temperature setting indicators. (blinking for 2 to 10 seconds while data is read)
When AIR CON No. button is pressed, go back to the indoor unit selection display (for example, "U 000" blinking).

② **Press TEMP△ or TEMP▽ button.**
Select the setting number

③ **Press MODE button.**
The setting is completed.
Light is on for approximately 3 to 20 seconds while data of the decided function No. and setting No. is transmitted.
(Example)
Indoor unit No.: "U 000" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)
Function number: "07" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)
Setting number: "01" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)



Then, the screen goes back to the function number blinking indication (1), if the setting is sequentially conducted, continue with the same procedures. If the setting is finished, proceed to (5).

- Even if ON/OFF button is pressed during setting, the setting is ended. However, any details where the setting has not been completed will be ineffective.
- The setting contents are stored in the control, and even if the power failure occur, this will not be lost.

[Confirmation method for current setting]
According to the operation, the "setting number" displayed first after selecting "function number" and pressing MODE button is the currently set content.
(However, in the case of selecting "U ALL" (all units), the setting number of the lowest number among the indoor units is displayed.)

13.4 Base heater kit (CW-H-E1)

PCZ012D007A A

Model Name: CW-H-E1

⚠ WARNING

- Follow the instruction and installation manual for outdoor unit when installing the heater.
- This heater must be installed by authorized personnel.
- Turn off the power source when the kit is installed.
- Failure to follow the above will result in serious accident like electrical shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Follow the law or regulation of the country where it is installed.
- Do not alter the heater.
- Lay down the heater so that the edge of the sheet metal does not damage the heater.
- Bending radius must be bigger than 25mm.
- Do not use the heater near flammable substances.
- Be sure to check the electrical insulation before use.
- Be sure to check the drain is not trapped by the heater.
- Do not leave refrigerant oil on the base.

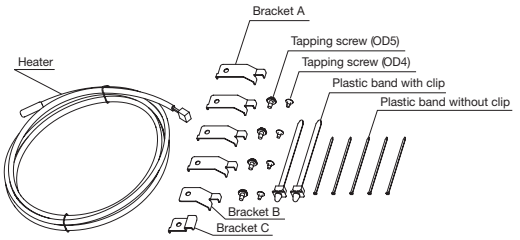
AREAS TO BE APPLIED

This kit is to be used in an area where the lowest temperature drops below zero.

⚠Caution: In case the heater is not applied on the unit which is installed in an area mentioned above, it may be regarded as installation failure and warranty may not be given.

Components

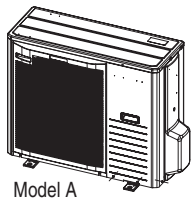
- Heater : 1 pc.
- Bracket A : 4 pcs.
- Bracket B : 1 pcs.
- Bracket C : 1 pcs.
- Tapping screw (OD5) : 4 pcs.
- Tapping screw (OD4) : 4 pcs.
- Plastic band with clip : 2 pcs.
- Plastic band : 5 pcs.



Applicable model

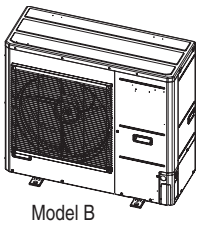
This heater kit is applicable for 3 different models.

<Model A>
Single fan with plastic fan guard model



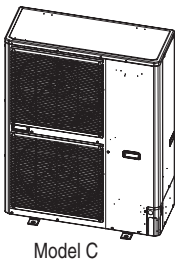
Model A

<Model B>
Single fan model



Model B

<Model C>
Double fan model



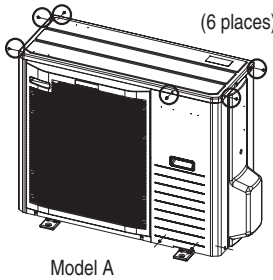
Model C

Installation procedure

Step 1

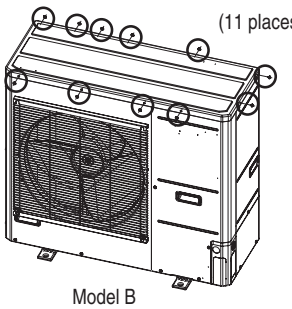
1. Remove the top panel of the outdoor unit.

(6 places)



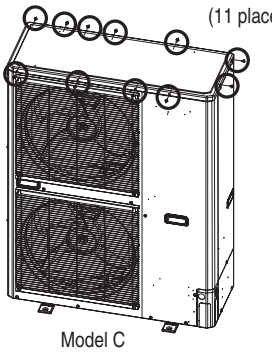
Model A

(11 places)



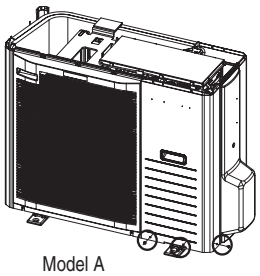
Model B

(11 places)

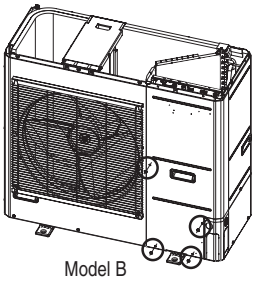


Model C

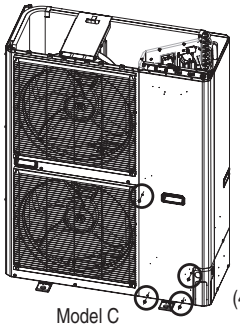
Step 2 2. Remove the service panel.



Model A (3 places)



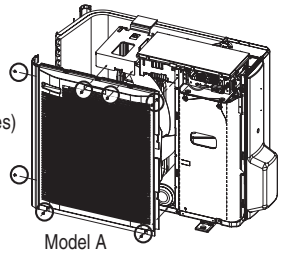
Model B (4 places)



Model C (4 places)

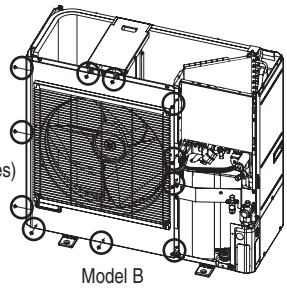
Step 3 3. Remove the front panel.
Pull the panel straightforward so that the panel doesn't touch the fan blade.

(7 places)



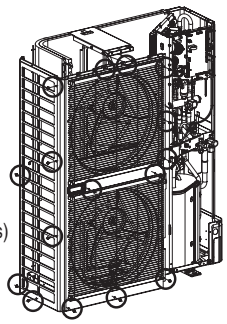
Model A

(11 places)



Model B

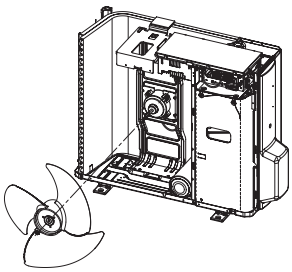
(16 places)



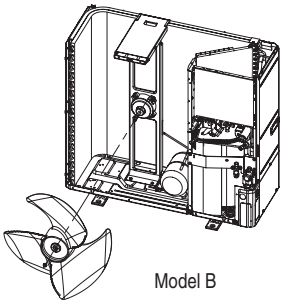
Model C

Step 4 4. Remove the fan blade if necessary.

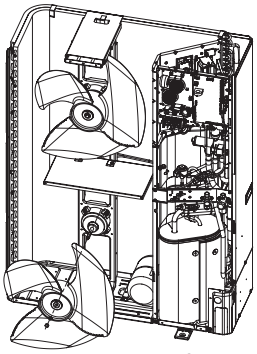
<Note>
Do not rotate the axis of fan motor when removing the fan blade.
It may cause malfunction of the fan motor.



Model A

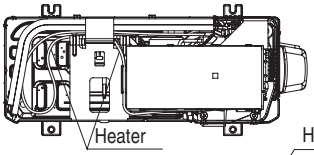


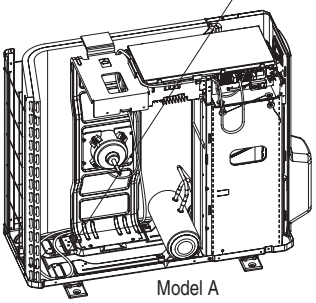
Model B



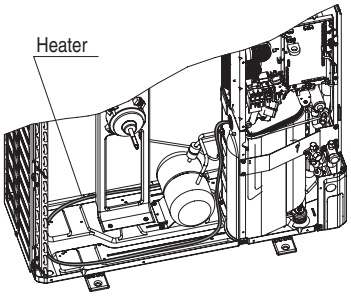
Model C

Step 5 5. Lay down the drain pan heater on the base.
For model A, put the cables rear the fan motor bracket.

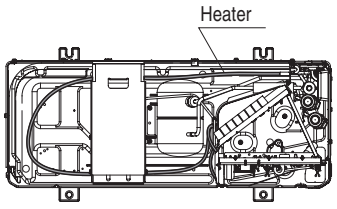




Model A

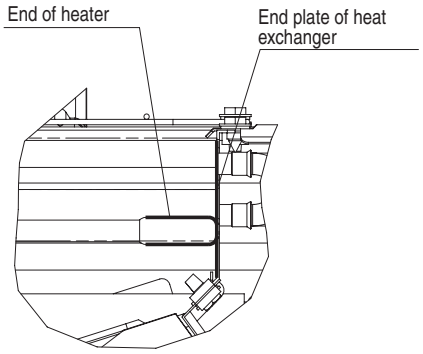


Model B, C



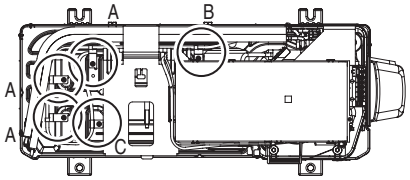
Step 6

6. Put the heater underneath the heat exchanger and align the end of heater with the end plate of heat exchanger.

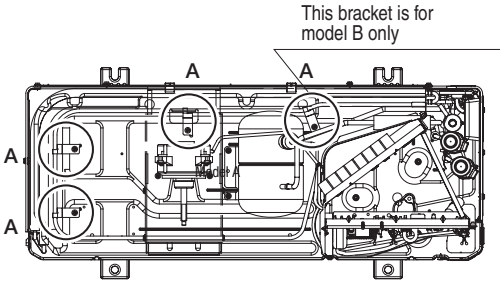


Step 7

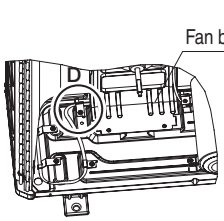
7. Fix the heater with brackets.



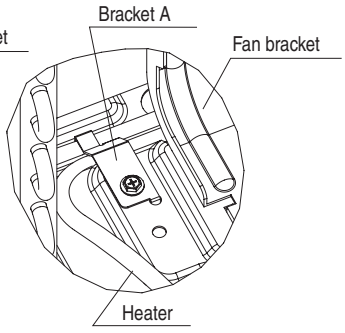
For model A, use 3 pcs of bracket A, 1pc of bracket B and C. Fix bracket A and C with the attached screw (OD4), and fix bracket B with the removed screw which is fastened at the same place.



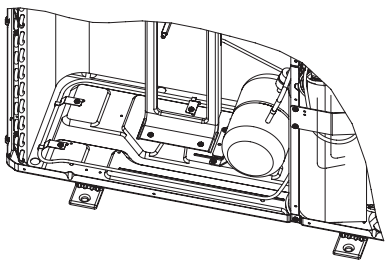
For model B and C, fix bracket A with the attached screw (OD5).



Model A



Detail view D



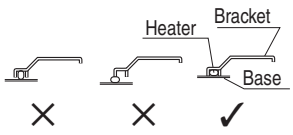
Model B, C

<Note for model A>

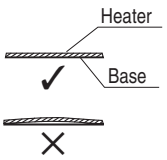
1) Put the end of heating part just after the bracket C.
2) Fix the incoming and out going cable with one bracket A on the left of fan bracket as figure shows.

<Note>

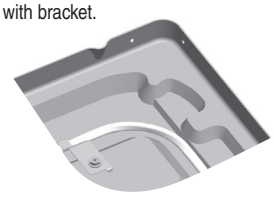
1) Fix the heater so that the bracket doesn't pinch the heater as figure shows.



2) Place the heater so as to touch the base completely.



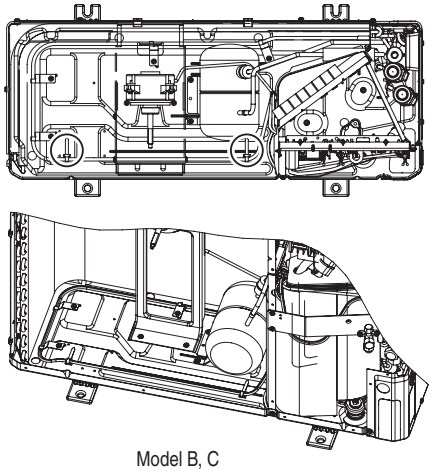
3) In bending position, twist the heater to make it easier to bend, and get back to be able to fix it with bracket.



4) Be careful not to be injured by aluminum fin when fixing the heater with screw.

Step 8

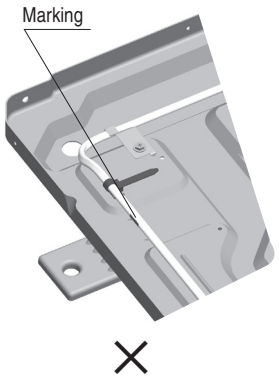
8. Insert the plastic band with clip on the designated place (2 places), and fix the heater.(Model B,C only)



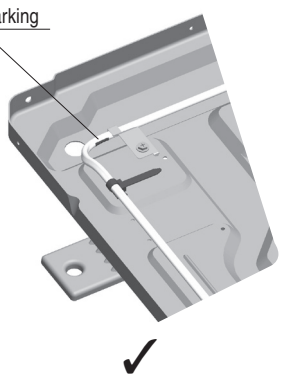
Model B, C

<Notes>

1) Do not fasten the heating part with the plastic band.
There is a marking on the end of heating part.



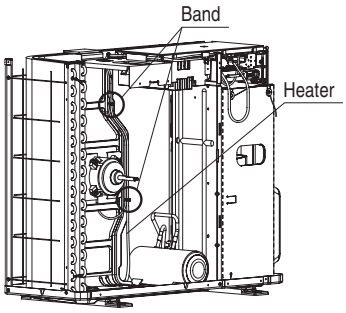
2) When the heater is laid down correctly, the end of heating part comes to the corner of the base.



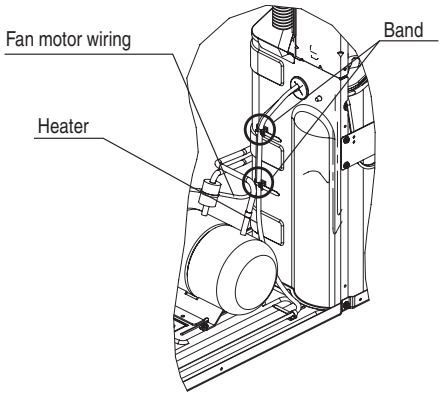
Step 9

9. Lay down the wiring on the same route of fan motor wiring, and fix the wire with attached plastic band at the same place where the fan motor wiring is banded.

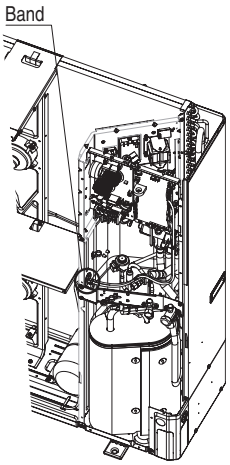
Model A

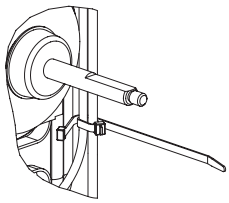


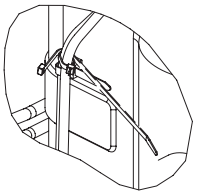
Model B

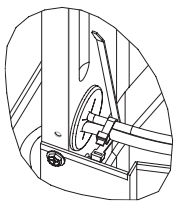


Model C









<Note>

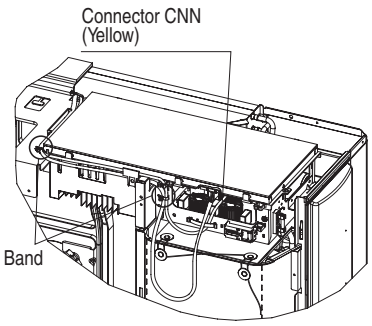
Fan motor wiring is banded on the bracket so that it doesn't loosen.
Do not loose the band for the motor wiring to band the heater wire together but use the attached plastic band.

Step 10

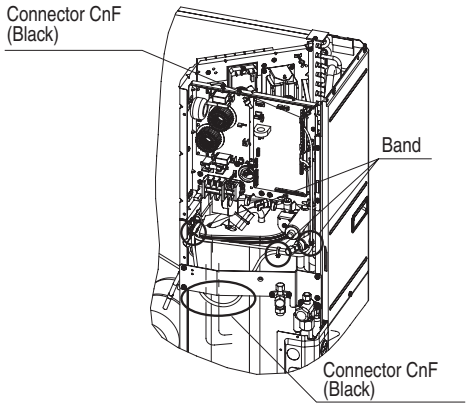
10.Insert the connector to the port (Model A: CNN, Model B,C:CNF) on the PCB, and fix the wire with bands. Excess part of the wire should be dropped naturally.

<Note>

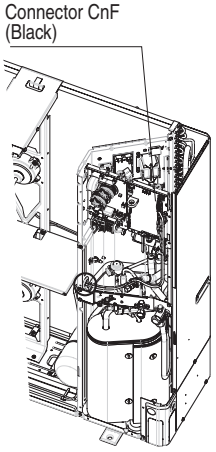
Be sure to cut the excess part of plastic band.
It may cause abnormal noise when hit by fan blade or misassembling of panels.
Do not bundle excess part of the wire. It may damage the heater.



Model A



Model B



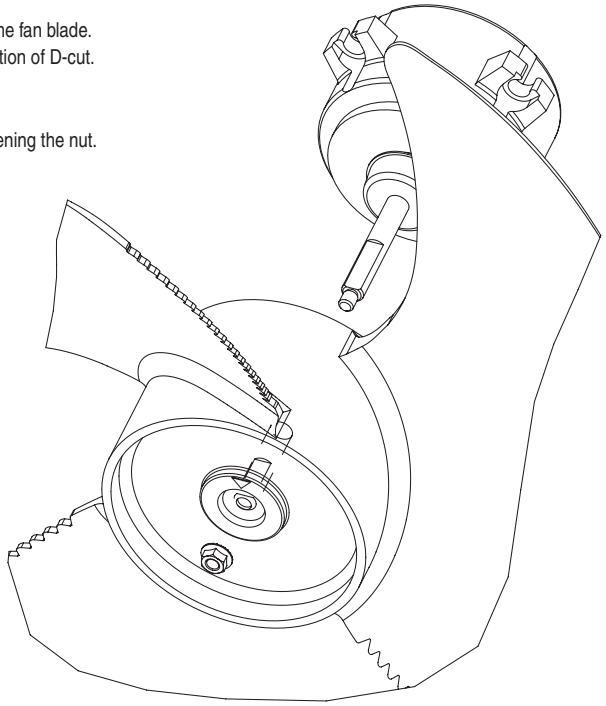
Model C

Step 11

11. Reassemble the fan blade.
Take care to align the D-cut of motor shaft and the fan blade.
▽ mark on the center of the fan shows the position of D-cut.

<Notes>

1. Tightening torque of the nut is 4.0-4.9 N·m.
2. Do not rotate the axis of fan motor when tightening the nut. It may cause malfunction of the fan motor.



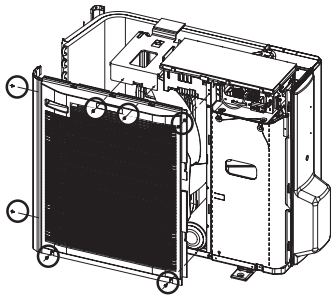
<Notes>

- This heater should have bending radius of at least 25mm including non-heating part. Do not bundle the excess part of the wire. It may cause disconnection of the heater or insufficient capacity.
- Be sure to prevent the heater from touching any refrigerant piping.
  Especially, pay close attention not to make it touch with pipes which are close to the wiring route such as suction pipe, check valve and check joint.

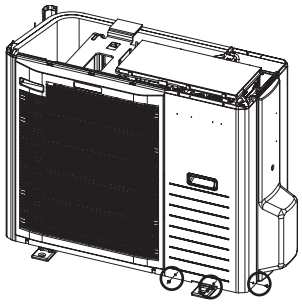
Step 12

12. Reassemble the panels.

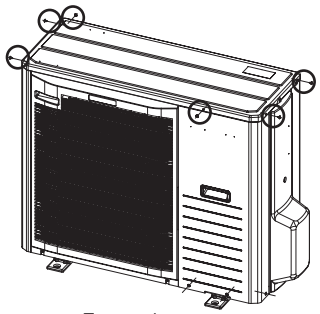
[Model A]



Front panel

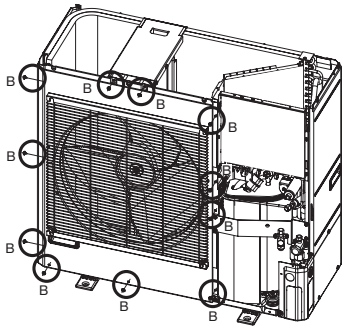


Service panel

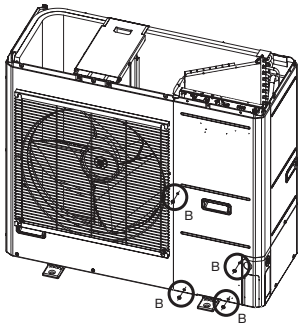


Top panel

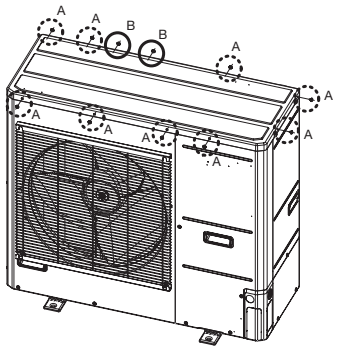
[Model B]



Front panel

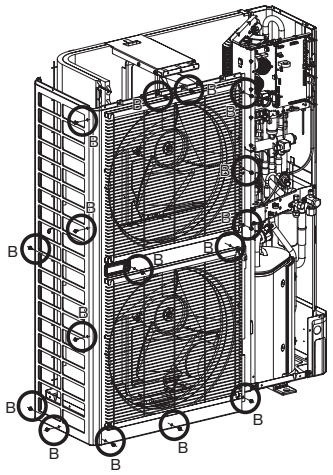


Service panel

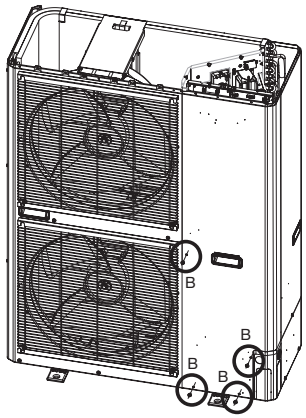


Top panel

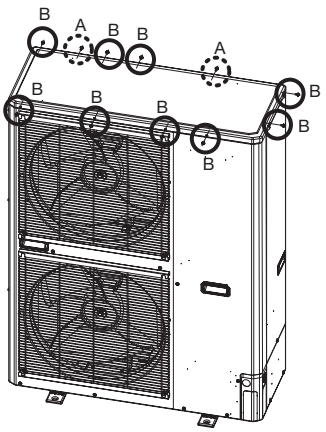
[Model C]



Front panel



Service panel

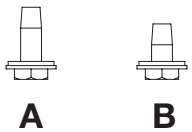


Top panel

<Notes>

1) When reassembling the service panel, take care not to damage the front panel with the edge.

2) Top panel of model B and model C is fixed with two different screws.
Be sure to use correct screw as figure shows.



A **B**

13.5 Superlink E board (SC-ADNA-E)

PJZ012D029K

- Read and understand the instructions completely before starting installation.
- Refer to the instructions for both indoor and outdoor units.

Safety precautions

- Carefully read "Safety precautions" first. Follow the instructions for installation.
- Precautions are grouped into "Warning⚠" and "Caution⚠". The "Warning⚠" group includes items that may lead to serious injury or death if not observed. The items included in the "Caution⚠" group also may lead to serious results under certain conditions. Both groups are crucial for safety installation. Read and understand them carefully.
- After installation, conduct the test operation of the device to check for any abnormalities. Describe how to operate the device to the customer following the installation instruction manual. Instruct the customer to keep this installation instruction for future reference.

⚠Warning

- This device should be installed by the dealer where you purchase the device or a licensed professional shop. If the device is incorrectly installed by the customer, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- Install the device carefully following the installation instruction. If the device is incorrectly installed, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- Use the accessory parts and specified parts for installation. If any parts that do not match the specifications are used, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- A person with the electrical service certification should conduct the service based on the "Technical standards for electrical facilities", "Electrical Wiring Code", and the installation instruction. If the work is done incorrectly, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- Wiring should be securely connected using the specified types of wire. No external force on the wire should be applied to any terminals. If a secure connection is not achieved, it may result in electric shock or fire.

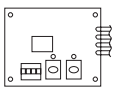
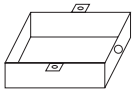
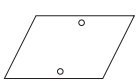
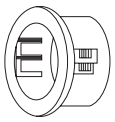
⚠Caution

- Provide ground connection.
  The ground line should never be connected to the gas supply piping, the water supply piping, the lightning conductor rod, nor the telephone ground.If the grounding is improper, it may result in electric shock.
- Do not install the device in the following locations.
  1.Where there is mist/spray of oil or steam such as kitchens.
  2.Where there is corrosive gases such as sulfurous acid gas.
  3.Where there is a device generating electromagnetic waves.
  These may interfere with the control system resulting in the device becoming uncontrollable.
  4.Where flammable volatile materials such as paint thinner and gasoline may exist or where they are handled. This may cause a fire.

1 Application

Indoor-to-outdoor three core communication specification type 3 (since October 2007)

2 Accessories

SL E board	Metal box	Metal cover	Screw for ground
			M4 × 8 2 pieces 
Pan head screws	Locking supports	Binding band	Grommet
M4 × 8 2 pieces 	To secure the print board and the metal box Made of nylon 4 pieces 		

3 Function

Allowing the central control SL1N-E, SL2NA-E, and SL4-AE/BE to control and monitor the commercial air-conditioner unit.

4 Control switching

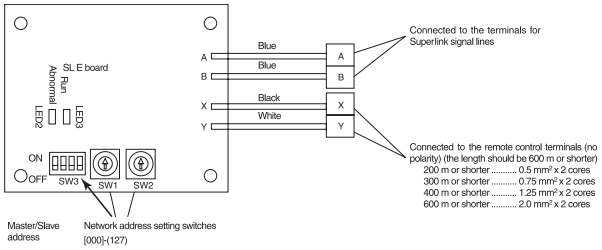
Settings can be changed by the DIP switch SW3 on the SL E board as in the following.

Switch	Symbol	Switch	Remarks
SW3	1	ON	Master
		OFF (default)	Slave
	2	ON	Fixed previous protocol
		OFF (default)	Automatic adjustment of Superlink protocol
	3	ON	Indicates the forced operation stop when abnormality has occurred.
		OFF (default)	Indicates the status of running/stop as it is, when abnormality has occurred.
	4	ON	The hundredth address activated "1"
		OFF (default)	The hundredth address activated "0"

5 Connection outline

Note for setting the address

- Set the address between 00 and 47 for the previous Superlink connection and between 000 and 127 for the new Superlink connection. (*1)
- Do not set the address overlapping with those of the other devices in the network. (The default is 000)



(*1) Whether the actual link is either the new Superlink or the previous Superlink depends on the models of the connected outdoor and indoor units. Consult the agent or the dealer.

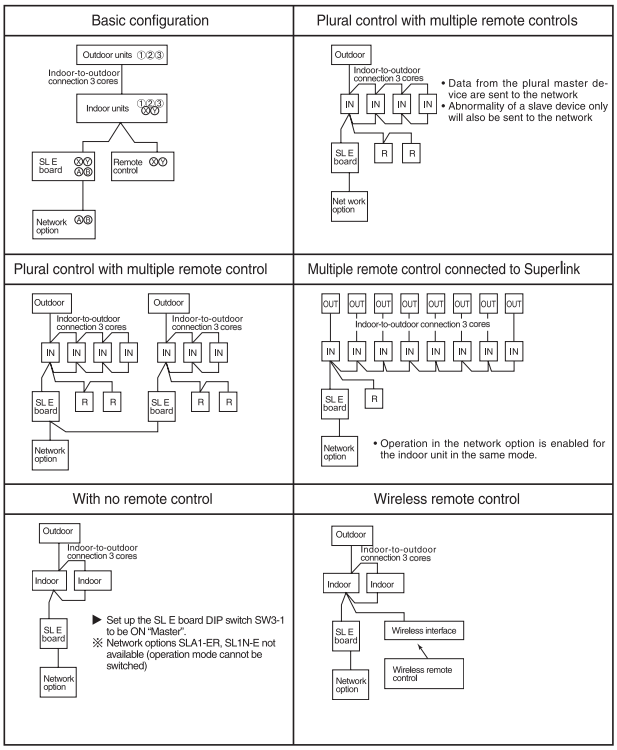
Signal line specification

Communication method	Previous Superlink	New Superlink
Line type	MVVS	MVVS
Line diameter	0.75 - 1.25mm²	0.75/1.25mm²
Signal line (total length)	up to 1000m	up to 1500/1000m (*2)
Signal line (maximum length)	up to 1000m	up to 1000m

(*2) Up to 1500 m for 0.75 mm², and up to 1000 m for 1.25 mm².
Do not use 2.0 mm². It may cause an error.

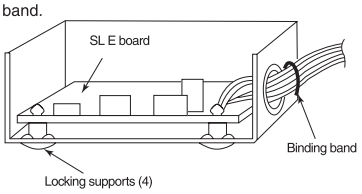
(*3) Connect grounding on both ends of the shielding wire.
For the grounding method, refer to the section "6 Installation".

(1) Set the Superlink network address with SW1 (tens place), SW2 (ones place), and SW3 (hundreds place).
(2) Set the SL E board SW3-1 to be ON (Master) when using this without any remote control (no wired remote controller nor wireless remote control).
(3) Set up the plural master/slave device using the DIP switches on the indoor unit board.
(4) Set up the remote control master/slave device using the slide switch on the remote control board.
(5) Set up "0" to "F" using the address rotary switch on the indoor unit board when controlling the indoor unit with the multiple remote control.

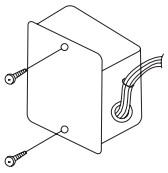


6 Installation

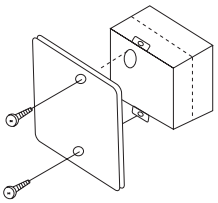
1. When using the metal box (mounted on the indoor unit / mounted on the back of the remote control):
   (1) Mount the SL E board in the metal box using the locking supports.
   (2) Wiring should go through the provided grommet since then through the wiring to the hole on the Metal box.
   Secure the grommet after inserting the grommet into the Metal box as shown in below figure, then tie the wiring at the outlet of the unit using a binding band.



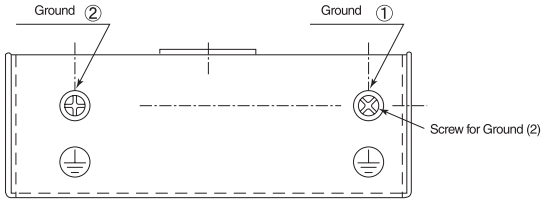
▲ When installed outside the indoor unit, put the metal cover on.



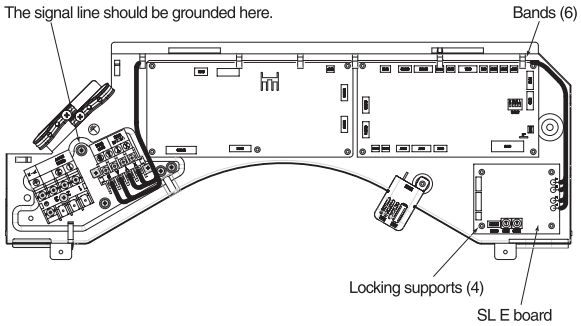
▲ When installed on the back of the remote control, mount it directly on the remote control bottom case.



Connect grounding. Connect grounding for the power line to Ground ①, and grounding for the signal line to Ground ② or to the Ground on the indoor unit control box.



2. When connecting to the indoor unit control box (ceiling-concealed type and FDT type only):
   (1) Mount the SL E board in the control box using the locking supports.
   (2) Remove 6 bands from the box and put the wiring through the bands to be secured.



Electrical shock hazard! make sure to turn the power off for servicing. Be cautious so that no abnormal force should be applied to the wiring. Do not let the SL E board hung by the wiring. Do not damage the board with a screw driver.
The board is sensitive to static electricity. Release the static electricity of your body before servicing.
(You can do this by touching the control board which is grounded).

Location of installation

Install the device at the location where there are no electromagnetic waves nor where there is water and dust. The specified temperature range of the device is 0 to 40°C. Install the device at the location where the ambient temperature stays within the range. If it exceeds the specification, make sure to provide solution such as installing a cooling fan. When used outside of the range, it may cause abnormal operation.

7 Indicator display

Check the LED 3 (green) and LED 2 (red) on the SL E board for flashing.

SL E board LEDs		Inspection mode	Display on the integrated network control device
Red	Green		
Off	Flashing	Normal communication	
Off	Off	• Disconnection in the remote control communication line (X or Y) • Short-circuit in the remote control communication line (between X and Y) • Faulty indoor unit remote control power • Faulty remote control communication circuit • Faulty CPU on SL E board	No corresponding unit number
One flash	Flashing	• Disconnection in the Superlink signal line (A or B) • Short-circuit in the Superlink signal line (between A and B) • Faulty Superlink signal circuit	
Two flashes	Flashing	• Faulty address setting for the SL E board (Set up the address for previous SL E board : more than 48 new SL E board : more than 128)	
Three flashes	Flashing	• SL E board parent not set up when used without a remote control • Faulty remote control communication circuit	E1
Four flashes	Flashing	• Address overlapping for the SL E board and the Superlink network connected indoor unit	E2
Off	Flashing	• Number of connected devices exceeds the specification for the multiple indoor unit control	E10

MICRO INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.
2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, 100-8332, Japan
http://www.mhi-mth.co.jp/en/